



Carl Culberg

Broadway High School

Oh! you fresh.

~~fresh~~  
upper middle

Miss Wakefield

Period 2 - 1912-13.

1913-14

Phil P Phillips

"Sambo" '15'

Belmont Jail.

11-15 in this hole.

gasto  
obrero.  
cantidad  
almuerzos

Mon., Wed., Fri.







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2025



Heath's Modern Language Series

---

# A SPANISH GRAMMAR

BY

E. C. HILLS AND J. D. M. FORD

COLORADO COLLEGE

HARVARD UNIVERSITY

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1904.  
**By** D. C. HEATH & Co.

## PREFACE.

IN this grammar the authors have aimed to present to English-speaking students the more important facts of pronunciation, inflection, and syntax in a clear and adequate way. No attempt has been made to separate inflection and syntax: it is hardly necessary to keep them asunder in an elementary text-book. An abundance of exercise material has been given, and the exercises have been made as practical as possible. The verb list is very full, and has been provided with ample references, in the hope that it may encourage drill upon one of the most difficult divisions of elementary Spanish grammar.

To no slight degree drill work has been made a conscious feature in the preparation of the composition material. It will be seen, particularly in the later exercises of the book, that the sentences of the English part are based on the words and the turns of phrase occurring in the Spanish part preceding. On this account the student needs to resort but rarely to the Vocabulary, when translating from English into Spanish.

The grammar has been prepared with a view to facilitating the early reading of easy Spanish texts. Teachers do not agree as to when reading should begin, and there can be



no fixed rule where conditions vary so greatly. But experience has led us to believe that in most college classes it is best to begin reading almost immediately, and certainly not later than the end of the fourth week, and to give to reading at least one-half of the time thereafter during the school year. Accordingly, the most essential elements of inflection and syntax are set forth, in so far as it seemed practicable, in the first few lessons, the inflection of verbs, for instance, being taken up with the first lesson, and an explanation of the use and meaning of each tense being given along with the inflection.

In classes composed of advanced college students it may be well to take an entire lesson at a time; but in many college classes it will be best to divide each lesson into two parts, and in high and preparatory school classes it may be best to divide each lesson into three parts. The divisions may be made as follows:—

- |     |   |                                                                                        |
|-----|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I.  | { | <i>First part</i> ,—inflection and syntax, and Spanish-English exercises.              |
|     | { | <i>Second part</i> ,—English-Spanish exercises, and a review of inflection and syntax. |
| II. | { | <i>First part</i> ,—inflection and syntax, with much oral drill based thereon.         |
|     | { | <i>Second part</i> ,—Spanish-English exercises, and a review of inflection and syntax. |
|     | { | <i>Third part</i> ,—English-Spanish exercises.                                         |

In each lesson-period there should be as much oral drill as time will permit.

In some lessons there are rules, usually in small type, that may well be omitted on going through the grammar the first time. It has not been indicated definitely which rules should be thus omitted, as it was thought best to leave it to the good judgment of the individual teacher. As an illustration, in Lesson XXIII the following could be omitted : §§ 109, *c* and *e*; 111; 115; and 116.

Teachers will differ as to whether it is best to take or omit the English-Spanish exercises, on going through the grammar the first time. Some successful teachers prefer to omit them at first and to take them up with a review. By following this method, the student is the sooner prepared for reading, and he may have an abundance of written work by copying dictated passages taken from the text that is read. After going through the grammar once, the student may then review it, taking at a lesson one or more of the English-Spanish exercises.

We wish to acknowledge our indebtedness to Professor E. S. Joynes, of South Carolina College, for reading the first proofs and making many valuable suggestions; and we cannot sufficiently express our thanks to Mr. S. W. Clary, whose kindly and helpful interest in our book has far transcended mere business considerations.

E. C. H. AND J. D. M. F.

JULY, 1904.

In revising for the second edition (March, 1905), we gratefully acknowledge valuable suggestions from a number who have used the book, in particular Dr. N. F. Hall, of Simmons College, Boston.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>PRONUNCIATION</b> . . . . .	<b>I</b>
 <b>LESSONS</b>	
I. Gender of nouns. Indefinite article. Present indicative of regular verbs . . . . .	21
II. Plural of nouns. Definite article. Negation . . . . .	24
III. Feminine and plural of adjectives. Present indicative of radical-changing verbs of the first and second conjugations . . . . .	28
IV. Present indicative of radical-changing verbs of the third conjugation, and of <i>tener</i> and <i>haber</i> . Meaning and use of <i>tener</i> and <i>haber</i> . Participles. Idioms . . . . .	32
V. Personal subject-pronouns. <i>Usted</i> . Possessive and demonstrative adjectives . . . . .	36
VI. Present indicative of <i>ser</i> and <i>estar</i> . Meaning of <i>ser</i> and <i>estar</i> . Idioms . . . . .	39
VII. Possessive case. Indirect object. Personal <i>d</i> . Interrogative sentences . . . . .	42
VIII. Imperfect and preterite indicative of regular verbs. Use of imperfect and preterite indicative . . . . .	46
IX. Neuter article <i>lo</i> . Use of the definite article . . . . .	49
X. Omission of the definite and indefinite articles. Preterite of radical-changing verbs. Idioms . . . . .	54
XI. Position of descriptive adjectives. Agreement of adjectives . . . . .	58
XII. Imperfect and preterite indicative of <i>tener</i> , <i>haber</i> , <i>ser</i> , and <i>estar</i> . Pluperfect and preterite perfect. Idioms . . . . .	62
XIII. Apocopation of adjectives. Numerals . . . . .	66

LESSONS	PAGE
XIV. Future and conditional indicative of regular verbs. Idioms. Present, imperfect, and future indicative to denote an act or state that continues from one period into another . . . . .	69
XV. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. "Than." <i>Tan</i> . . . <i>como</i> . . . . .	74
XVI. Adjectives used substantively. Plural number. Future and conditional indicative of <i>tener</i> , <i>haber</i> , <i>ser</i> , and <i>estar</i> . Future perfect. Future of probability . . .	79
XVII. Imperative mood and present subjunctive. Present subjunctive to express command or entreaty . . . .	84
XVIII. Personal pronouns . . . . .	89
XIX. <i>Tú</i> and <i>usted</i> . <i>Ello</i> and <i>lo</i> . Imperative and present subjunctive of <i>tener</i> , <i>haber</i> , <i>ser</i> , and <i>estar</i> . Perfect subjunctive . . . . .	93
XX. Subjunctive in dependent clauses. Idioms . . . .	98
XXI. Prepositional forms of personal pronouns. Imperfect subjunctive of regular and radical-changing verbs. Use of imperfect subjunctive. Sequence of tenses . .	102
XXII. Personal pronoun-objects. Imperfect subjunctive of <i>tener</i> , <i>haber</i> , <i>ser</i> , and <i>estar</i> . Pluperfect subjunctive. Conditions "contrary to fact." Idioms . . . .	109
XXIII. <i>Se</i> and <i>sí</i> . Reflexive construction. Hypothetical subjunctive. Use of hypothetical subjunctive. Commoner forms of conditional sentences . . . .	114
XXIV. Possessive adjectives. Infinitive. Present participle. Past participle. Idioms . . . . .	123
XXV. Possessive pronouns. Regular verbs. Orthographic changes . . . . .	128
XXVI. Demonstratives. Radical-changing verbs, first class . .	131
XXVII. Relative pronouns. Radical-changing verbs, second and third classes . . . . .	135
XXVIII. Relative pronouns. Inceptive and <i>-uir</i> verbs . .	139
XXIX. Interrogative pronouns. <i>Ir</i> and <i>venir</i> . Idioms . .	143



# CONTENTS

ix

LESSONS	PAGE
XXX. Indefinite adjective pronouns. Negation. <i>Querer</i> and <i>poder</i> . Idioms . . . . .	147
XXXI. Numerals. <i>Hacer</i> and <i>decir</i> . Idioms . . . . .	155
XXXII. Adverbs. <i>Por</i> and <i>para</i> . Nouns used adjectively. Preposition <i>á</i> with verbs meaning "to take from," "to ask of," etc. Preposition retained before a substantive clause. Idioms. <i>Dar</i> , <i>saber</i> , <i>oir</i> , and <i>ver</i> . Meaning of <i>conocer</i> and <i>saber</i> . Idioms . . . . .	162
XXXIII. Conjunctions. Agreement of subject and verb. Word order. <i>Andar</i> , <i>caber</i> , <i>poner</i> , <i>asir</i> , <i>valer</i> , <i>salir</i> , <i>caer</i> , <i>traer</i> , and <i>-ducir</i> . Meaning of <i>andar</i> and <i>ir</i> . Idioms	170
XXXIV. Qualifying suffixes. Idioms . . . . .	176
THE VERB . . . . .	184
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS . . . . .	232
VOCABULARY . . . . .	245
INDEX . . . . .	287



# SPANISH GRAMMAR

---

## PRONUNCIATION

### THE ALPHABET

1. The Spanish alphabet has thirty different signs :

a, b, c, ch, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, ll, m, n, ñ, o, p, q, r, rr, s,  
t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

The Castilian pronunciation of these is taken as the norm by cultured speakers in Spain. It is therefore the pronunciation adopted here. It is fair to state, however, that certain dialect peculiarities (especially Andalusian) have passed over to the former Spanish colonies in America and the Philippines and now represent the pronunciation of the larger proportion of the Spanish-speaking peoples. The signs *k* and *w* occur mainly in words from foreign languages, and in them receive their foreign values.

2. The following table is intended to convey a general idea of the Spanish sounds. Hardly any of the English or other equivalents mentioned are more than approximate ; yet, taken in connection with the more exact description to be given later, they should aid the student to acquire a good Spanish pronunciation.

a	varies in quality between the <i>a</i> of <i>far</i> and that of <i>fat</i> .	c	like <i>k</i> , when the Spanish letter stands before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> or a consonant, or is final.
b	usually like German (bilabial) <i>w</i> : try to pronounce English <i>b</i> and <i>v</i> in one breath.		like <i>th</i> of <i>thin</i> , when the Spanish letter stands before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> .

<b>ch</b> like <i>ch</i> of <i>church</i> .	<b>ll</b> approximate to <i>lli</i> of <i>million</i> .
<b>d</b> usually approximate to the <i>th</i> of <i>that</i> .	<b>m</b> like English <i>m</i> .
<b>e</b> varies between the vowel sound in <i>mate</i> and that in <i>met</i> .	<b>n</b> like English <i>n</i> pronounced on or close to the teeth.
<b>f</b> usually like English <i>f</i> .	<b>ñ</b> approximate to <i>ni</i> of <i>onion</i> .
<b>g</b> usually like "hard" <i>g</i> of <i>gate</i> , <i>gilt</i> , etc., when the Spanish letter stands before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , or a consonant.	<b>o</b> varies between the vocalic sound in <i>note</i> and that in <i>not</i> .
like a strong English <i>h</i> produced far back in the mouth (or like German <i>ch</i> of <i>nach</i> ), when the Spanish letter stands before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> .	<b>p</b> like English <i>p</i> .
<b>h</b> usually silent. Before <i>ue</i> it may be pronounced like a weak English <i>h</i> .	<b>q</b> found only with a following <i>u</i> : <i>qu</i> = English <i>k</i> .
<b>i</b> varies between the vocalic sound in <i>meet</i> and that in <i>mit</i> .	<b>r</b> like English <i>r</i> carefully uttered.
<b>j</b> like the variety of Spanish <i>g</i> occurring before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> . The <i>j</i> has this value everywhere.	<b>rr</b> like English <i>r</i> much prolonged.
<b>k</b> like English <i>k</i> .	<b>s</b> usually like English <i>ss</i> .
<b>l</b> like English <i>l</i> pronounced on or close to the teeth.	<b>t</b> like English <i>t</i> pronounced on or close to the teeth.
	<b>u</b> varies between the vocalic sound in <i>pool</i> and that in <i>pull</i> .
	<b>v</b> the same in sound as Spanish <i>b</i> .
	<b>w</b> as in foreign languages.
	<b>x</b> usually like English <i>x</i> ; occasionally like <i>s</i> .
	<b>y</b> like English <i>y</i> ; occasionally a vowel like Spanish <i>i</i> .
	<b>z</b> like English <i>th</i> of <i>thin</i> ; cf. Spanish <i>c</i> before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> .

**3. Vowels.**—The vowel sounds of the speech are denoted by *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and occasionally *y* (which is a vowel in the conjunction *y*, 'and,' as well as at the end of a word, as in *rey*, 'king'). The vowel *y* has the same sound as Spanish *i*. There is in English a tendency to convert all long vowels into diphthongs; that is, to add a final glide sound to the original vowel. This tendency must be avoided in Spanish, where the individual vowel denotes a simple vocalic sound.

*a* is approximate to English *a* in 'far,' or to a sound between the *a* of 'far' and that of 'fat': it is never so "broad" as English *a* (open back

variety of the vowel) in 'all' nor so "flat" as *a* (close forward variety of the vowel) in 'fat.'

*e* is usually closed, but is moderately open in most closed syllables, or when followed by *ll* or *rr*, as in *él*, *ser*, *ten*, *este*, *ella*, *perro*, etc., and very open in the diphthong *ue* (here *e* approximates the French *eu* of *seul*).

*i* in stressed syllables is always closed; in unstressed syllables it approximates English *i* in 'pin.'

Open *o* is the only one that is normal in Castilian, but it is not so open as open Italian *o*. It is like French *o* in *nord*, and not very different from English *o* in 'north.' It is more closed after labials (as in *amor*) and in open syllables, but is never so closed as in French *beau*.

Stressed *u* is almost equal to English *oo* in 'food' (not so rounded as French *ou*); in a closed syllable it generally approximates to English *oo* in 'book.' The caution is to be given that Spanish *u* should never be pronounced like the diphthongal *u* of English 'tune' or 'cube.'

It would be futile to attempt to give here any more precise definition of the vowel sounds than has been given. As has been intimated, each vowel may have an open or a close value, similar to the open and close qualities of the vowels in French and Italian. But in Spanish these differences of quality are not of so marked importance as in those other languages.

Moreover, Spanish vowels are not so "rounded" or "closed" as in French, but more so than in English.

*Quantity*. — In Castilian there are no long vowels, properly speaking, all being short or of medium length. English-speaking students must avoid prolonging vowels, especially final vowels, as occurs so generally in English when the vowel is stressed.

*Elision*. — Elision is common in spoken Spanish, where a vowel is repeated, as in *de él* (pronounced *d'el*), *la altura* (*l'altura*), *de este* (*d'este*), *ya lo oigo* (*ya l'oigo*).

**4. Diphthongs and Triphthongs.** — The vowels may be divided into two chief classes: the strong, *a*, *e*, *o*; and the weak, *i* (*y*) and *u*.

A combination of two or three adjacent vowels may form a single syllable in pronunciation; such a combination constitutes



a diphthong or a triphthong. The individual elements of a diphthong or a triphthong are all to be pronounced, but more rapidly than when they stand outside such a combination.

1. *Diphthongs*.—A Spanish diphthong, properly so called, consists of a combination into a single syllable of one of the strong vowels (a, e, o) with one of the weak vowels (i or y, u), or of one (i) of the weak vowels with the other (u). The stress, if the syllable be the accented one of the word, will fall upon the strong vowel, or upon the second of the weak vowels where the diphthong consists of two of these latter.

The possible combinations, governed by the relative position of the vowels, are given in the following list. The vowel of the diphthong that may bear the stress is the one in heavy type.

ai (ay), as in baile, <i>dance</i> (hay, <i>there is</i> , there are).	ia, as in fiar, <i>to trust</i> (often a dissyllable).
au, as in flauta, <i>flute</i> .	ua, as in cuatro, <i>four</i> .
ei (ey), as in reina, <i>queen</i> (rey, <i>king</i> ).	ie, as in sien, <i>temple</i> .
eu, as in deuda, <i>debt</i> .	ue, as in fuerte, <i>strong</i> .
oi (oy), as in oigo, <i>I hear</i> (doy, <i>I give</i> ).	io, as in naciones, <i>nations</i> .
ou, as in bou, <i>fishing-boat</i> (a rare diphthong).	uo, as in cuota, <i>quota</i> .
iu, as in triunfo, <i>triumph</i> .	ui, as in huir, <i>to flee</i> .

a. The vowels of these combinations are of approximately equal force in a diphthong not bearing the accent of the word, as in *bailar*, 'to dance'; *flautero*, 'flute-player'; *reinar*, 'to reign'; *deudor*, 'debtor'; *oigamos*, 'let us hear'; *triunfar*, 'to triumph'; *fiaremos*, 'we shall trust,' etc.

b. Two adjacent strong vowels are normally regarded as forming two distinct syllables, and not a diphthong; as in *faena*, 'labor'; *caoba*, 'mahogany'; *loa*, 'prologue'; *reo*, 'defendant'; *leer*, 'to read'; *roer*, 'to gnaw,' etc. So also a combination of two weak vowels with the stress on the first of them (as in *fluido*, 'fluid'), or of a strong and a weak vowel with the stress on the weak vowel (as in *traído*, 'bought'; *roído*, 'gnawed'), forms not a diphthong, but two separate syllables. In these two latter

cases the stress is usually indicated by a written accent. For metrical purposes even these adjacent vowels may occasionally count as a single syllable.

2. *Triphthongs*. — A triphthong consists of a combination of a *stressed* strong vowel with two weak vowels, between which it is always placed. There are but four possible combinations, all of which end in *i* (written *y* in the final position or before the vowel of another syllable).

*iai*, as in *fiais*, *you trust*.

*iei*, as in *lieis*, *may you bind*.

*uai* (*uay*), as in *fraguáis*, *you forge* (*guay*, *woe*).

*uei* (*uey*), as in *continuéis*, *may you continue* (*buey*, *ox*; *bueyes*, *oxen*).

NOTE. — Spanish words cannot properly begin with a diphthong or a triphthong. Where the normal development of a Latin word into Spanish involved the passage of initial stressed *ē* to *ie*, or of initial stressed *ū* to *ue* (for Spanish usually broke up the short Latin vowels into these diphthongs), the *i* was changed to *y* and an *h* was prefixed to the *u*: e.g. Latin *ērrat*, Spanish *yerra* (for *ierra*), 'he errs' (cf. Latin *errāre*, Spanish *errar*, 'to err'); Latin *ōvum*, Spanish *huevo*, 'egg.'

5. *Consonants*.<sup>1</sup> — For the sake of convenience the consonants will be considered in several groups, determined, in the main, by the kind of organs that produce the sounds in question.

6. *Labials and labio-dentals*, that is, sounds produced by the action, upon a current of air, of the lips alone or of the upper teeth and the lower lip working together :

**b, v, p, f, m, w** (*u* in hiatus).

<sup>1</sup> The Spanish names of the consonants are these: *be, ce, che, de, efe, ge, hache, jota, ka, ele, elle, eme, ene, eñe, pe, cu, ere, erre, ese, te, ve* (also called *u de corazón* or *u consonante*), *ve doble, equis, ye* (also called *y griega*), *zeta*. To the consonants and vowels of these names are, of course, to be given their Spanish value.

**b** and **v** denote the same sound. This (a voiced<sup>1</sup> bilabial spirant) is ordinarily one not used in English, but is akin to the German (bilabial) *w*. It is most easily pronounced by seeking to utter the English *b* without closing the lips entirely (as is requisite in the true English *b*), and permitting the air to pass out constantly through a narrow slit between the lips; as in **beber**, 'to drink'; **vivir**, 'to live.' The sound of the English *v* (labio-dental) does not exist in Castilian.

After **m** or **n** (whether **n** be in the same word or at the end of the preceding word) both the **b** and the **v** receive a sound like that of the English *b* (a voiced labial stop); as in **también**, 'as well,' 'also'; **envidia**, 'envy' (often spelled *embidia* in Old Spanish); **con valor**, 'with courage.' In such cases the **n**, even though retained in spelling, receives the value of **m**. Moreover, the English sound of *b* is often given to both **b** and **v** when initial and emphatic, as in ¡**basta**! 'enough!' ¡**villano**! 'villain!' Before **t** or **s**, a **b** approximates sometimes to **p** in sound (*i.e.* becomes voiceless), as in **subterráneo**, 'subterranean'; **abstenerse**, 'to abstain,' etc.; and in such cases it is often slighted entirely in popular speech, as in **substancia**, **obscur**,<sup>2</sup> etc.

**p**. Approximately the English sound (a voiceless labial stop); as in **papel**, 'paper.'

**f**. Usually like the English *f* (a voiceless labio-dental spirant); as in **favor**, 'favor.'

Although the fact is denied by some observers, it is a question whether the **f** does not occasionally have a voiceless value corresponding to the voiced one of **b** and **v** (*i.e.* whether it is not a voiceless bilabial spirant).

**m** resembles the English *m* (a voiced labial nasal); as in **mimar**, 'to fondle.'

<sup>1</sup> A voiced consonant is one in the production of which the vocal cords vibrate, as may be ascertained by touching the throat in front of the larynx during the utterance of *b*, *d*, *g* in English. There is no such vibration in the production of the corresponding voiceless stop consonants, *p*, *t*, *k*.

<sup>2</sup> The **b** of **obscur**, **substancia**, etc., is commonly omitted in writing, and is pronounced only by the pedantic.

**w** occurs usually in words from foreign languages, and in them it has the foreign pronunciation: thus it has the English sound in *Wellington* and the German sound in *Wagner*. Unaccented **u** in hiatus, as in **fuerte**, 'strong,' or **cuando**, 'when,' is, in Castilian pronunciation, only a semi-vowel; that is, it is partly a consonant, and as such it approximates in value to the English *w*.

**W** is found in Spanish in a few proper names that are by no means recent importations, but go back to the period of Visigothic dominion in Spain: **Wamba**, **Witiza**. In these it receives the usual value of Spanish **b** and **v**: cf. the spellings **Vamba** and **Vitiza** sometimes found.

**7. Dentals** or lingua-dentals, that is, sounds produced by the united action of the tongue and the teeth upon a current of air.

**t, d, c** (followed by **e** or **i**), **z, l, n**. Along with these may be considered **ll, ñ**, and a variety of **n** occurring before "hard" **c, qu**, or "hard" **g**, etc., although these **l** and **n** sounds are not properly dentals.

**t**. Not unlike English *t*, except that it, as well as all the Spanish dentals, is produced farther forward in the mouth than the English dentals.

In Spanish the point of the tongue often touches the teeth when the **t** and other dentals are produced, whereas in English the tongue is allowed to touch the roof of the mouth somewhat back of the roots of the upper teeth. There is, therefore, a very appreciable difference between the sounds of *t* and *n* in English *ten* and those in Spanish **ten**, 'hold.'

**d**. There is a marked difference between the sound of English *d* and that of Spanish **d**, for the latter, without being interdental, somewhat resembles the *th* of English *then*. It may be compared to an English *d prolonged*, and uttered with the tongue touching the upper teeth. Ex., **seda, nadie, todo**.

The English *d* (a voiced dental *stop*) is produced by the escape of air from the mouth after the passage of the air has first been stopped by contact between the tongue and the roof of the mouth back of the upper teeth. The common Spanish sound (a voiced dental *spirant*) is produced during contact between the tongue and the teeth, and the passage of the air is not wholly cut off.

At the beginning of a breath-group, or after **l** or **n**, **d** has some of the explosive effect of the English *d*, as in ¡**diablo!** 'the deuce!'; **espalda**, 'shoulder'; **andando**, 'walking.' At the end of a word the Castilian sound of **d** resembles that of *th* in English *thin* (a voiceless dental spirant, = *s*), as in **sed**, 'thirst'; while in Andalusia and Spanish America it tends to disappear entirely, as in **usted**, 'you,' which is usually pronounced *usté*. Between vowels, **d** has disappeared largely in the pronunciation of untrained speakers, and even those who pronounce carefully show a decided tendency to suppress this intervocalic **d**, saying, for example, *amao* for **amado**, 'loved.' Moreover, both the written and the spoken language have already accepted the loss of the intervocalic **d** of the reflexive imperative second person plural: e.g. **amaos**, 'love one another' (for **amad**, 'love,' + **os**, 'you,' 'each other').

**c** followed by **e** or **i** ;  
**z** in all positions. ) These have a common value (a voiceless dental spirant) in Castilian speech, viz. a lisping sound approximate to that of *th* in English *thin*, as in **cielo**, 'heaven'; **cena**, 'supper'; **zapato**, 'shoe.' Compare the value of final Spanish **d** as already described. In Southern Spain and in Spanish America and the Philippines, both **c** (**e**, **i**) and **z** are pronounced like **s**.

According to some observers, a **z** followed by a voiced consonant (*i.e.* such a consonant as **n**, **l**, **g**, etc.) may itself become voiced and have approximately the value of English *th* in *then*; as in **portazgo**, 'toll'; **hazlo**, 'do it'; **gozne**, 'hinge.'

**l** and **n** have usually values resembling the English values (**l**, a voiced lateral fricative; **n**, a voiced dental nasal), but they are produced farther forward in the mouth than the English sounds, so that there is a perceptible difference between the



sounds of *l* and *n* in English *lance* and those in its Spanish equivalent *lanza*, as there is between the *n* of English *ten* and that of Spanish *ten*, 'hold.'

Final *l* in Spanish never has the semi-vocalic, "hollow" sound of final English *l*. Compare English 'dell' with Spanish *del*.

When followed by the so-called "hard" *g* or *k* sound, by *g* (before *e* or *i*), by *j*, or by aspirated *h* (in *hue-*), as in *vengo*, 'I come'; *blanco*, 'white'; *banquero*, 'banker'; *rengífero*, 'reindeer'; *naranja*, 'orange'; *un hueso*, 'a bone,' *n* ceases to be dental, and acquires a value similar to that of *ng* in English *sing* (*i.e.* a velar nasal value).

In some parts of Spain and of Spanish America the velar sound of final *n* is common, as in *pan* (pronounced *pang*); but this pronunciation should be avoided.

*ll* has a sound most nearly represented in English by that of *lli* in *million* (*i.e.* it is a palatalized form of *l*, not a doubled *l*, in sound).

It should be noted that while the English sound of *lli* in *million* is that of *l* followed by that of *y*, the Spanish sound is that of *l* inflected by *y* throughout the duration of its enunciation; *i.e.* it is *l* no longer dental, but produced with the tongue in the *y* position, or, in other words, with the middle of the tongue touching the hard palate. There is, therefore, some difference between the pronunciation of *lli* in *million* and that of *ll* in its Spanish equivalent *millón*. In some parts of Spain and Spanish America, *ll* has become *iy* in sound, *e.g.* *caballo*, 'horse,' is pronounced *cabaiyo*; in the vulgar speech of certain regions, this *y* has disappeared entirely when immediately following the stressed syllable, *e.g.* *cabai-o* for *caballo*, *si-a* for *silla*, etc. (but *cabai-yito* for *caballito*, *si-yita* for *sillita*, etc.). This omission of *y*, while very common in some parts of Mexico, the Argentine Republic, etc., is everywhere considered as vulgar.

*ñ*. This (a palatalized form of *n*) is similarly *n* produced with the tongue in the *y* position. It is only approximately rendered by the *ni* of *onion* or the *ny* of *canyon*: this latter expresses in a measure, but yet not perfectly, the *ñ* of the Spanish original *cañón*. The mark over the *n* is termed the *tilde*

# 8. Gutturals,<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* throat sounds.

**c** { followed by **a, o, or u** ;  
 { followed by any consonant except **h** ;  
 { at the end of a word.

**qu** always followed by **e** or **i**.

**k** in foreign words.

**g** { followed by **a, o, or u** ;  
 { followed by a consonant.

**gu** when followed by **e** or **i**.

The first three of these, *i.e.* **c** in the positions indicated, **qu**, and **k**, have approximately the sound of English *k* or "hard" *c* (a voiceless guttural or palatal stop); as in **carro**, 'cart'; **conde**, 'count'; **culto**, 'cult'; **creador**, 'creator'; **frac**, 'frock coat'; **quedo**, 'quiet'; **quilla**, 'keel'; **kiosko**, 'kiosk'; **kilómetro**, 'kilometre.'

The last two in the list, *i.e.* **g** before **a, o, u**, or a consonant, and **gu** before **e** or **i**, have approximately the sound of the "hard" English **g** (a voiced guttural or palatal stop) of *got* or *get*; as in **galante**, 'gallant'; **golfo**, 'gulf'; **gutural**, 'guttural'; **gruta**, 'grotto'; **guarda**, 'guard'; **guerrilla**, 'guerrilla'; **guía**, 'guide.'

In such cases as these last two (**guerrilla**, **guía**) the **u** is not itself pronounced, but is merely a sign that the **g** has the "hard" sound before the following **e** or **i**. Where the **gu** is followed by another vowel than these, the **g** has its "hard" sound, but the **u** is now pronounced, having to some degree the value of English **w**, as in **guano**, 'guano.' Occasionally, even before **e** or **i**, the **u** has a pronounceable value, but in such cases it must be written with a dieresis, as in **antigüedad**, 'antiquity'; **lingüístico**, 'linguistic.'

<sup>1</sup> Conventionally called gutturals, the **k** (*i.e.* Spanish **qu**) and "hard" **g** sounds may be more properly termed palatal stops when they are followed by **e** or **i**.

In the speech of many, perhaps most, Spaniards and Spanish Americans, intervocalic "hard" **g** tends to become slightly spirant (*i.e.* a prolonged **g**: cf. **b** and **d**), except after **n**, as in **hago**, 'I make'; **hormiga**, 'ant'; **droga**, 'drug,' etc. (but not in **tengo**, 'I have,' etc.). In some parts of southern Spain and Spanish America, **g** before **u** + vowel, and **gu** before **i** + vowel, tend to disappear in the vulgar speech, as **awa** for **agua**, 'water,' **siyendo** for **siguiendo**, 'following,' etc.

**9. Sibilants, i.e.** hissing sounds. In Castilian **s** is the only simple sign denoting a sibilant value, but there are two signs denoting a compound sound into which an *s* value enters, viz. **ch** and **x**.

**s.** The Spanish **s** commonly has the sharp hissing sound of English initial *s*, as in 'sing,' and of English *ss*, as in 'hiss'; thus, **saco**, 'sack'; **sal**, 'salt'; **pasar**, 'to pass'; **notas**, 'notes.'

Caution must be taken not to give to Spanish **s** between vowels the sound of English *z* (a voiced sibilant) or of intervocalic English *s* as in 'rose.'

With regard to the **s** before a voiced consonant, usage varies. In some parts of the Spanish-speaking world it remains unvoiced, in other parts it becomes voiced, as in **desde**, 'since'; **sesgo**, 'slope'; **mismo**, 'same,' 'self,' etc.

In Andalusia and parts of Spanish America, **s** before a consonant, and final in stressed syllables, becomes in the vulgar speech a soft aspirate, approximating to, but softer than, German *ch* in *ich*. Ex.: **las bonitas muchachas** becomes **la' bonita' muchachas**; **el compás, el compa'**; **dos niños, do' niños**, etc. This pronunciation is rather widespread.

**ch**, a compound sound (a voiceless dental plus a voiceless palatal sibilant), not much unlike the *ch* of 'church.' It is made up of the sound of the Spanish dental **t**, followed by a sound similar to that of English *sh*; as in **mucho**, 'much.'

**x**, a compound sound (a voiceless guttural stop plus a voiceless sibilant *s*), usually quite like the *x* of English 'six' or 'lax.' It consists of a **k** sound followed by the sibilant **s**

sound, as in **axioma**, 'axiom.' When the **x** stands before a consonant, the Spanish Academy insists that it be still pronounced as **ks** ; but the generality of speakers pronounce it there as **s** simply ; thus, in **extranjero**, 'stranger' ; **sexto**, 'sixth.' In such cases there is a manifest tendency to write **s** instead of **x**, *i.e.* **estranjero**, **sesto**, etc.

Between vowels **x** is, according to certain authorities, sometimes pronounced like English *gs* (*i.e.* as a voiced guttural stop plus a sibilant), so that the **x** of Spanish **examen** may resemble the *x* of its English equivalent 'examination.'

## 10. Aspirates, or well-breathed sounds.

**j** in all positions.

**g** followed by **e** or **i**.

**h** followed by **ue**.

**j** in all positions and **g** before **e** or **i** denote the one sound (a voiceless guttural or velar spirant) which is most closely approximated in English by pronouncing the *h* of 'hot' very far back in the mouth and in a very forcible way ; as in **jamás**, 'never' ; **gente**, 'people' ; **girar**, 'to turn.' The sound of the German *ch* in *nach*, *doch*, etc., affords a still closer parallel to the Spanish sound.

In the production of this Spanish sound, the velar (or soft) palate vibrates against the back of the tongue, which is withdrawn as much as possible into the rear of the mouth. The Castilian sound is a harsh one, but it is softened in Andalusia and Spanish America to the value of a strong English *h* or the German *ch* of *ich*.

**h** followed by the diphthong **ue** may have a slight aspiration, equal to that of a weak utterance of English *h* ; as in **huerto**, 'garden' ; **hueso**, 'bone.' By many speakers, however, this **h** is not pronounced at all, and, in fact, for the generality of Castilians **h** never denotes a sound.

**11. Tongue-trilled Consonants :** *r* and *rr*. These denote a sound not very dissimilar to that of the English *r* carefully pronounced, and, upon occasion, having a well-prolonged trill.

The sound is produced by making the forward part of the tongue vibrate against the palate, just back of the upper teeth. The point of contact between the tongue and the palate is a little farther forward than in English.

Final *r* in Spanish never has the semivocalic glide sound of final English *r*. Compare English *ther*(*e*) and Spanish *ser*.

There are two varieties of the sound :

*a.* A weaker variety, *i.e.* one not very forcibly trilled, and yet fully as strong as a carefully pronounced English *r*. This is denoted in Spanish by a single *r* between vowels, as in *pero*, 'but,' and by a single *r* after the consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *t* ; as in *bravo*, 'wild' ; *cristiano*, 'Christian' ; *ladrón*, 'robber' ; *fresno*, 'ash tree' ; *grano*, 'grain' ; *prado*, 'meadow' ; *trato*, 'behavior.' The final *r*, as in *amar*, 'to love,' may be of this variety, or it may be a trifle more prolonged in its trill. In any event it is to be carefully uttered, and not slurred as it so often is in English ; cf. 'paper,' 'mother,' etc., in which the *r* sound is barely discernible.

*b.* A reënforced variety, *i.e.* one with a well-prolonged trill. It is not a doubled consonant, but rather a prolongation of the other variety. It is denoted by *rr* between vowels, as in *perro*, 'dog' ; *parra*, 'vine' (cf. *pero*, 'but,' and *para*, 'for,' in which the weaker variety occurs), and by single *r* at the beginning of a word, as in *roble*, 'oak,' or within a word after *n* or *s*, as in *enredo*, 'entanglement' ; *Israelita*, 'Israelite.' Within a word, after *b* or *l* marking the end of a prefix, this same strong *r* occurs, as in *subrayar*, 'to underline' (cf. *raya*, 'line,' with initial strong *r*), and *malrotar*, 'to squander.' The fact that initial single *r* denotes the same reënforced variety as intervocalic *rr* is shown by words like *rota*, 'rout,' and its derivative *derrota*.

**12. Spirant *y*** (a voiced palatal spirant or fricative), not much unlike English *y* in sound, except that its enunciation is somewhat stronger, as in **ya**, 'already'; **yo**, 'I'; **yeso**, 'gypsum.'<sup>1</sup>

Unaccented **i** in hiatus is often but a semivowel; *i.e.*, it is partly consonantal and tends to become **y**. This is especially so in the case of the diphthong **ie**: cf. **yerra**, 'he errs,' for **ierra**, and the spelling **yerba**, 'herb,' and **hierba**, side by side. As already stated, **y** is a vowel in the conjunction **y**, 'and'; it is a vowel (or at least a semivowel) wherever it occurs in a diphthong or triphthong, as in **bocoy**, 'hogshead'; **buey**, 'ox.'

### 13. Non-phonetic Orthography.

(1) Spanish orthography is not consistently phonetic, though much more so than English orthography. According to the rules of the Spanish Academy, only two letters are ever mute, viz. **h** and **u**, as follows:

**h** is regularly silent, as in **hado**, 'fate'; **hilo**, 'thread'; but before **ue** it may be slightly aspirated, as in **hueso**, 'bone.' In the digraph **ch** it has no individual value.

**u** is silent, or at least has no individual value, in the combination **qu**. It is also not pronounced in the combination **gu** followed by **e** or **i**; it is there but a sign of "hard" **g**: cf. **sigue**, 'he follows,' **siguió**, 'he followed,' with **sigo**, 'I follow,' **siga**, 'let me follow.' If it happen that the **u** of the combination **gue** or **gui** is actually pronounced, a diæresis is written over it; *e.g.* **argüir**, 'to argue'; **averigüé**, 'I ascertained' (cf. the infinitive **averiguar**, in which the **u** is of course pronounced).

(2) In addition to **h** and **u**, there are several letters that, in certain combinations, are usually not pronounced in colloquial Spanish, viz.:

---

<sup>1</sup> The tongue should not touch the palate, in the production of Spanish **y**, in such a way as really to stop the breath. In dialect pronunciation it does so, and the result is a sound similar to that of English *j*.

**b** is mute in *obsuro*, *obscuro*, *obstáculo*, *obstinarse*, etc.; *abstracción*, *abstener*, etc.; *substancia*, *subscribir*, etc. That is, **b** before **s** is usually silent; if it is pronounced, it is as **p**, e.g. *absoluto* > *apsoluto* (cf. *bt* > *pt*, as in *subterráneo*). In written Spanish also this **b** is commonly omitted in *obsuro*, *substancia*, etc.

**c**, before a consonant, is often mute, as in *diccionario*, *lección*, *afectísimo*, etc. Students are advised to pronounce this **c**.

**d** is often silent in the final position, and between vowels when it follows stressed **a**, **o**, or **u** (less often after **e** or **i**), as in *Madrid*, *amado*, *nada*, *todo*, *toda*, *d menuda*, etc.; also before **s**, as in *adscribir*, *adstringir*, etc. The student should pronounce medial **d**. As to final **d**, see § 7.

**g**, before a consonant, is often mute, as in *digno*, *magnánimo*, etc. The student had best pronounce this **g**.

**j** is mute only in *reloj* (occasionally written *relló*). In the plural, *relojes*, **j** is pronounced.

**n** is usually mute in the prefix *trans-* before a consonant, as in *transcribir*, *transmitir*, etc.; but it is often pronounced in *transatlántico*, etc.

**p** is mute usually in *subscripción*, *séptimo*, *Septiembre*, *pseudo*, *psicología*, etc. (i.e., before **t** or **s**, **p** is usually silent). In written Spanish also this **p** is commonly omitted in *séptimo*, *Septiembre*, etc.

**t** is usually mute in *istmo*.

(3) Some other non-phonetic peculiarities of Spanish orthography are as follows:

**b = v**. See § 6.

**n**, before **p** or **v**, has the sound of **m**, as in *un perro*, *un vaso*, etc.; cf. § 7.

**x**, before a consonant, is usually pronounced as **s**, as in *extremo*, *exposición*, etc. Regularly between vowels, and often before **c**, **x** = **cs**, as in *éxito*, *excelente*, etc. (but in *exacto*, **x** = **s**).

NOTE. — The Spanish Academy has attempted of late years to put back into Spanish many sounds that had disappeared or changed, as the *x* of *experiencia* in place of *s*, the *b* of *obsuro*, the *p* of *séptimo*, the *d* of *adscribir*, the *t* of *istmo*, etc., and the Academy has asked the Spanish people to use these restored sounds in their speech. To some extent the sounds have been adopted, and they may be heard on the stage and in the pulpit, but practically never in colloquial Spanish (except *x*, which is making headway), and in some cases their use would be considered ridiculously pedantic. Similarly, the Academy asks that *b* and *v* be pronounced like English or



French *b* and *v*, but no Spaniard can do this unless he knows English or French. The coming together of **b** and **v** into one sound is very odd in Spain, for even in the days of ancient Rome a Latin wit said that for the Spaniards *vivere* was the same as *bibere*.

**14. Doubled letters.**—The general statement may be made that the doubling of consonants is not favored in Spanish. **ll** and **rr** do not represent double sounds, and they figure in the alphabet as distinct signs, for **ll** denotes a peculiar quality of **l** (the palatalized **l**), and **rr** denotes a prolongation of the simple **r** sound. Two consonants, however, may be written double, viz. **c** and **n**, and in the *refined* pronunciation of Castile each of the two **c**'s or two **n**'s is carefully articulated: as in **accidente**, 'accident' (of which the first **c** sounds like *k*, and the second like *th* of *thin*), and in **innoble**, 'ignoble.'

No other consonant is doubled in writing or pronunciation in modern Spanish. To the frequent *mm* of English (mostly in words of Latin and Romance origin) there corresponds the Spanish **nm**; as in **inmenso**, 'im-mense.' Of the vowels only **e** occurs doubled with any frequency, and each **e** is pronounced in a distinct syllable: as in **creer**, 'to believe'; **leer**, 'to read.' Some of the double **e**'s of early Spanish are now reduced to single **e**: cf. **ser**, 'to be,' for original **seer**; **ver**, 'to see,' for original **veer**. We occasionally find **a** and **o** doubled and pronounced accordingly; the first **a** or **o** usually belongs to a prefix, as in **contraalmirante**, 'rear admiral'; **cooperar**, 'to coöperate.'

### ACCENTUATION

**15.** For certain words it is necessary to indicate the place for the stress of the voice by a written accent put over the vowel of the syllable bearing it; for many others this written accent is not necessary, as, in accordance with rules laid down by the Spanish Academy, the mere aspect of the word clearly indicates the place of the chief stress. The leading rules are these:

(1) Words ending in a vowel, or in the consonants **n** or **s**, normally stress the second last syllable (the penult), and they require no written accent, as in :

<i>carta, letter.</i>	<i>respiro, I breathe.</i>	<i>hablan, they speak.</i>
<i>palabra, word.</i>	<i>sollozo, sob.</i>	<i>cartas, letters.</i>
<i>dulce, sweet.</i>	<i>tribu, tribe.</i>	<i>naciones, nations.</i>
<i>hijo, son.</i>		

Words ending in **n** or **s** normally receive the same treatment as those ending in a vowel, because the **n** or **s** is often but a sign of pluralization, or of verbal inflection, and is added to forms that regularly end in a vowel : cf. *carta*, 'letter,' and *cartas*, 'letters'; *ama*, 'he loves,' and *aman*, 'they love.'

(2) Words ending in a consonant except **n** or **s** (cf. Rule 1) normally stress the last syllable and need no written accent, as :

<i>verdad, truth.</i>	<i>igual, equal.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------

For accentual purposes, final **y** (which can never be accented itself) may be regarded as a consonant : hence, *bocoy*, 'hogshead'; *muy*, 'very.'

(3) All words stressed on a syllable preceding the second last, and all not obeying the two rules already given, must have a written accent over the vowel bearing the stress ; e.g. :

<i>ejército, army.</i>	<i>mamá, mamma.</i>	<i>interés, interest.</i>
<i>hígado, liver.</i>	<i>rubí, ruby.</i>	<i>lápiz, lead pencil.</i>
<i>telégrafo, telegraph.</i>	<i>nación, nation.</i>	<i>mármol, marble.</i>
<i>sofá, sofa.</i>	<i>amáis, you love (cf. <i>amas</i>, thou lovest).</i>	

As a result of the addition of the plural sign **-es** (but not **-s**), a word not bearing a written accent in the singular may now have to take one; as in *crimen*, 'crime' (cf. Rule 1), pl. *crímenes* (cf. Rule 3); or, again, an accent written in the singular may not need to be written in the plural, as in *nación* (cf. Rule 3), pl. *naciones* (cf. Rule 1). It is the general principle that the addition of the plural sign should not affect the place of the accent. This principle is violated in the case of *carácter*, 'character' (cf. Rule 3), and *régimen*, 'régime' (cf. Rule 3), which in the plural shift their accent one syllable farther on: *caracteres* (Rule 1) and *regímenes* (Rule 3).

**16. Diphthongs and Triphthongs.** — If the stressed syllable of the word have a diphthong, this will bear the accent (written or unwritten) on the strong vowel, if there be one, or on the second of two weak vowels, as in :

baile, <i>dance.</i>	buitre, <i>vulture.</i>	argüís, <i>you argue.</i>
amáís, <i>you love.</i>	huís, <i>you flee.</i>	

A triphthong will always bear the accent (written or unwritten) on the strong vowel :

averiguáis, <i>you ascertain.</i>	fieís, <i>may you trust.</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

**17. Monosyllables normally take no written accent :**

huís, <i>you flee.</i>	plan, <i>plan.</i>
ruin, <i>vile.</i>	fieís, <i>may you trust.</i>

Occasionally, however, a written accent is found in monosyllables (or in some dissyllables), where its use is (1) that of a diacritic, intended to distinguish the sense or the particular employment of words written and pronounced identically alike, as in **cómo**, 'how,' as distinguished from **como**, 'as'; in **mí**, 'me,' as distinguished from **mi**, 'my'; in **éste**, 'this one' (a pronoun), as distinguished from **este**, 'this' (an adjective); in **quién**, 'who' (an interrogative), as distinguished from **quien**, 'who' (a relative), etc.; or (2), merely arbitrary, as **ú**, 'or,' and **á**, 'at,' and **é**, 'and' (which do not need the accent to distinguish them from **ha**, 'he has,' and **he**, 'I have.'). The analogy of other preterites explains the use of the accent in certain monosyllabic preterites, such as **fuí**, 'I was,' **fué**, 'he was.' When **aun**, 'still,' 'yet,' is emphatic, it may become a dissyllable, and will then stress its **u**, which (cf. § 15, Rule 3) must bear a written accent, **aún**.

**18. Compound words**, felt as such, normally stress the proper syllable of each component part, especially in the case of adverbs in **-mente** (the Spanish equivalent of English adverbial **-ly**) and of compound numerals; and any accent that had to be written in one of the parts standing alone will continue to be written in the compound :

fácilmente, <i>easily</i> (cf. <b>fácil</b> , <i>easy</i> ).	décimoséptimo, <i>seventeenth</i> (cf. <b>dé-</b>
dulcemente, <i>sweetly</i> .	<b>cimo</b> , <i>tenth</i> , and <b>séptimo</b> , <i>seventh</i> ).

The addition of a pronoun-object to a verb form will not lead to the omission of any written accent that the verb form had when standing alone, as in *améle*, 'I loved him' (cf. *amé*, 'I loved'), even though without the writing of the accent its position is clear enough.

On the other hand, a verb form which does not normally need a written accent will take one if, by the addition of one or more object-pronouns, its stress is placed more than two syllables from the end of its whole combination, thus: *diciendo*, 'saying,' but *diciéndomelo*, 'saying it to me'; *haga*, 'do' (polite imperative), but *hágalo*, 'do it.'

NOTE. — The accent of the stressed syllable of a word is as strong as in English; but the unstressed vowels must not be slurred in pronunciation, as they so often are in English.

### SYLLABIFICATION

19. A single consonantal character and the digraphs **ch**, **ll**, **rr** (these three being inseparable combinations) are, in a syllabic division, passed over to the following vowel; so, also, are most combinations of a consonant with an ensuing **l** or **r** (except **rl**, **sl**, **tl**, and **sr**, which are separable):

la-bio, <i>lip</i> .	cu-brir, <i>to cover</i> .	cua-tro, <i>four</i> .
ja-ca, <i>pony</i> .	su-frir, <i>to suffer</i> .	no-ble, <i>noble</i> .
la-do, <i>side</i> .	re-pri-mir, <i>to repress</i> .	mo-fle-tu-do, <i>chubby-cheeked</i> .
ne-xo, <i>knot</i> .	la-cre, <i>sealing-wax</i> .	su-plir, <i>to supply</i> .
mu-cho, <i>much</i> .	ma-gro, <i>meagre</i> .	te-cla, <i>key</i> .
bu-llir, <i>to boil</i> .	ma-dre, <i>mother</i> .	si-glo, <i>century</i> .
pa-rra, <i>vine</i> .		

Cf. mer-lu-za, <i>cod</i> .	es-la-bón, <i>link</i> .
At-lán-ti-co, <i>Atlantic</i> .	Is-ra-e-li-ta, <i>Israelite</i> .

20. With the exception of the inseparable combinations mentioned in the foregoing rule, two consonants between vowels are so divided that one remains with the preceding, the other goes to the following vowel:

ap-to, <i>fit</i> .	más-til, <i>mast</i> .	in-no-ble, <i>ignoble</i> , etc.
cor-te, <i>court</i> .	ac-ci-den-te, <i>accident</i> .	

Where the combination of consonants between vowels is of more than two, there is a tendency to pass over to the second vowel only a single consonant or one of the inseparable combinations mentioned in § 19; *e.g.*:

par-che, *plaster*.

cons-truc-ción, *construction*.

pers-pi-ca-cia, *perspicacity*.

21. Prefixes felt as such are usually kept intact, contrary to the rule in § 19; *e.g.*:

des-es-pe-rar, *to despair* (cf. *esperar*, *to hope*).

sub-le-var-se, *to rebel* (cf. *levar*, *to raise*).

ab-ro-ga-ción, *abrogation* (cf. *rogar*, *to ask*).

## PUNCTUATION

22. The only notable points here are the double use of question marks and exclamation points, which not only end their clause, but in an inverted form usually precede it (*e.g.* ¿Cómo está Vd.? 'How are you?' ¡Qué hermosa mujer! 'What a beautiful woman!') and the frequency of suspension points ( . . . ) in narrative or dramatic style.

## CAPITALIZATION

23. Capitals are less commonly used in Spanish than in English. Unless they begin a sentence, a line of verse, or a quotation, proper adjectives and the pronoun *yo*, 'I,' are not capitalized. National or other locative adjectives used as nouns may take a capital when they denote persons (although usage varies in this respect): when they denote languages, they usually take no capital, even though used substantively: **los Franceses** (*or franceses*) **hablan francés**, 'Frenchmen speak French.'

## LESSON I

**24. Gender of Nouns.**—All Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine; thus, grammatically speaking, *árbol*, 'tree,' is masculine, and *casa*, 'house,' is feminine.

(1) Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings are feminine, as in English.

(2) Names of things are masculine if they end in *o*, and feminine if they end in *a*. If they end otherwise, it is usually best to learn the gender of each noun separately.

*libro*, *masc.*, book.

*pluma*, *fem.*, pen.

*plato*, *masc.*, plate.

*taza*, *fem.*, cup.

*a.* But *mano*, 'hand,' is feminine; and *día*, 'day,' *mapa*, 'map,' and several words of Greek origin ending in *-ta* and *-ma* are masculine.<sup>1</sup>

**25.** Many names of living beings have both a masculine and a feminine form, the latter ending in *a*.

*hijo*, son.

*hija*, daughter.

*hermano*, brother.

*hermana*, sister.

*gato*, cat (male).

*gata*, cat (female).

*monje*, monk.

*monja*, nun.

*huésped*, guest (male).

*huésped*, guest (female).

**26. Indefinite Article.**—The Spanish indefinite article is *un* before a masculine, *una* before a feminine noun.

*un hombre*, a man.

*una mujer*, a woman.

*un árbol*, a tree.

*una casa*, a house.

<sup>1</sup> *E.g.* : *cometa*, comet; *planeta*, planet; *poema*, poem; *programa*, programme; *sistema*, system.

a. In Spanish the indefinite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers: **una casa y un jardín**, 'a house and garden.'

b. **Una** sometimes loses its **a** before a noun beginning with stressed **a** or **ha**: **un alma**, 'a soul.' In Spain the full form is more usual.

**27. The Regular Conjugations.**—Spanish verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings **-ar**, **-er**, and **-ir**, into three conjugations:

I	II	III
<b>hablar</b> , (to) speak.	<b>temer</b> , (to) fear.	<b>vivir</b> , (to) live.

Like these are inflected all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

## 28. Indicative. Present Tense.

### Hablar

#### SINGULAR

- |                    |                                                |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>hablo</b> ,  | I speak, I do speak, I am speaking.            |
| 2. <b>hablas</b> , | you speak, do speak, are speaking.             |
| 3. <b>habla</b> ,  | he, she, or it speaks, does speak, is speaking |

#### PLURAL

- |                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>hablamos</b> , | we speak, do speak, are speaking.   |
| 2. <b>habláis</b> ,  | you speak, do speak, are speaking.  |
| 3. <b>hablan</b> ,   | they speak, do speak, are speaking. |

### Temer

#### SINGULAR

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <b>temo</b> , | I fear, do fear, etc. |
| 2. <b>temes</b>  |                       |
| 3. <b>teme</b>   |                       |

#### PLURAL

- |                   |
|-------------------|
| 1. <b>tememos</b> |
| 2. <b>teméis</b>  |
| 3. <b>temen</b>   |

### Vivir

#### SINGULAR

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <b>vivo</b> , | I live, do live, etc. |
| 2. <b>vives</b>  |                       |
| 3. <b>vive</b>   |                       |

#### PLURAL

- |                   |
|-------------------|
| 1. <b>vivimos</b> |
| 2. <b>vivís</b>   |
| 3. <b>viven</b>   |



Note that the Spanish verb may be expressed in English in three different ways; thus, **hablo** means 'I speak,' 'I do speak,' or 'I am speaking.' Note also that the subject-pronouns may be omitted in Spanish though required in English.

## Vocabulary

á, to.	— leer, (to) read.
amigo, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , friend.	mal, badly.
Antonio, <i>m.</i> , Anthony.	María, <i>f.</i> , Mary.
— aprender, (to) learn.	mucho, much, a-great-deal.
bien, well.	muy, very.
carta, <i>f.</i> , letter.	papel, <i>m.</i> , paper.
— comprar, (to) buy.	papel secante, <i>m.</i> , blotting paper.
con, with.	para, in-order-to.
en, in.	pero, but.
— escribir, (to) write.	pluma, <i>f.</i> , pen.
Español, -ola, <i>m. and f.</i> , Spaniard,	poco, little.
Spanish woman.	Señor, -ora, <i>m. and f.</i> , Sir, Madam.
español, -ola, Spanish.	sí, yes.
— estudiar, (to) study.	sobre, <i>m.</i> , envelope.
inglés, -esa, English.	también, also.
Juan, <i>m.</i> , John.	tinta, <i>f.</i> , ink.
lápiz, <i>m.</i> , pencil.	— trabajar, (to) work.

## Exercise I

- A. 1. Escribimos mucho. 2. Compro papel y un lápiz.  
 3. Juan compra tinta y una pluma. 4. María compra papel  
 secante y un sobre. 5. ¿Escribes<sup>1</sup> una carta? 6. Sí, señor;  
 escribo una carta á un amigo. 7. María escribe también  
 una carta á una amiga. 8. Escribo á un Español. 9. María  
 escribe á una Española. 10. Escribo con una pluma.  
 11. María escribe con un lápiz. 12. ¿Leéis mucho?  
 13. Sí, señora; leemos mucho para aprender. 14. ¿Aprendéis  
 mucho? 15. Sí, señora; aprendemos á leer y á escribir.  
 16. Leemos y escribimos mucho para aprender á leer y á  
 escribir. 17. Juan, ¿estudias mucho? 18. Sí, señor; estudio

mucho y aprendo bien. 19. Antonio estudia poco y aprende mal. 20. Juan trabaja mucho, pero Antonio trabaja muy poco. 21. Hablo inglés y español.<sup>2</sup> 22. Aprendemos á leer en español.

B. 1. I speak Spanish.<sup>2</sup> 2. Do you speak English? 3. Yes, sir; I speak English and Spanish. 4. Mary reads and writes in English. 5. John and Anthony read and write in Spanish. 6. Are you (*pl.*) writing a letter? 7. Yes, sir: we are writing a letter to a Spaniard. 8. Are you (*sing.*) buying a pen and ink? 9. Yes, madam; I am buying a pen, ink, and paper. 10. Mary is buying an envelope and blotting paper. 11. We are writing a letter to a friend (*fem.*). 12. Do you (*pl.*) write much? 13. We write very little. 14. John writes with a pencil and Anthony writes with a pen. 15. We study much in-order-to learn to<sup>3</sup> speak Spanish. 16. Mary studies much and learns well. 17. Anthony studies little and learns badly. 18. We work a great deal in-order-to learn. 19. We learn much and we work much.

<sup>1</sup> Note that an inverted interrogation mark is required in Spanish at the beginning of an interrogative sentence or clause. <sup>2</sup> Note that a Spanish name of a language, like a Spanish proper adjective, is written with a small initial letter. <sup>3</sup> Use *á*, see § 120 (1), *a*.

## LESSON II

**29. Plural of Nouns.** — The plural of nouns is formed by adding **s** or **es** to the singular.

(1) If the noun ends in an unstressed vowel or diphthong, **s** is added.

**amigo**, friend.

**rosa**, rose.

**labio**, lip.

**especie**, species, *sg.*

**amigos**, friends.

**rosas**, roses.

**labios**, lips.

**especies**, species, *pl.*

(2) If the noun ends in a consonant or in a stressed vowel or diphthong, **es** is added.<sup>1</sup>

**flor**, flower.

**mes**, month.

**rubí**, ruby.

**bajá**, pashaw.

**rey**, king.

**flores**, flowers.

**meses**, months.

**rubíes**, rubies.

**bajaes**, pashaws.

**reyes**, kings.

*Exceptions:—*

*a.* Nouns ending in stressed **-e** add **s** to form the plural: **pie**, 'foot'; **pies**, 'feet.'

*b.* Nouns ending in unstressed **-es** or **-is** have the same form in the plural as in the singular: **lunes**, 'Monday'; **lunes**, 'Mondays'; but **Inglés**, 'Englishman'; **Ingleses**, 'Englishmen'; **crisis**, 'crisis'; **crisis**, 'crises.' Family names, especially those ending in **z**, generally remain unchanged in the plural; *e.g.*, **González**, **los González**.

*c.* Some nouns ending in stressed **o** or **u** take either **-s** or **-es**. **Papá** and **mamá** add **-s**. There are a few other exceptions, which are best learned by observation.

NOTE.—Final **z** is changed to **c** before **es**: **cruz**, 'cross'; **cruces**, 'crosses'; **voz**, 'voice'; **voces**, 'voices.'

**30. Definite Article.**—In Spanish the definite article changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Masculine:</i>	<b>el</b>	<b>los</b>
<i>Feminine:</i>	<b>la (el)</b>	<b>las</b>
<b>el padre</b> , the father.		<b>los padres</b> , the fathers.
<b>la madre</b> , the mother.		<b>las madres</b> , the mothers.
<b>el plato</b> , the plate.		<b>los platos</b> , the plates.
<b>la taza</b> , the cup.		<b>las tazas</b> , the cups.

<sup>1</sup> In pluralizing, *y* final may be regarded as a consonant: it is really the last element of a stressed diphthong or triphthong, as in **bocoy**, 'hogshead,' and **buey**, 'ox.'

a. When **el** is preceded by **de**, 'of,' or by **á**, 'to,' the preposition and the article are contracted into one word: **de** and **el** become **del**, and **á** and **el** become **al**: **del padre**, 'of the father'; **al padre**, 'to the father.'

b. **El** is used instead of the form **la** before a feminine singular noun beginning with *stressed a* or *ha*: **el agua**, 'water'; **el hacha**, 'the axe.'

NOTE. — Observe that **el** is not used before a feminine noun beginning with *a* or *ha* unless the first syllable is stressed, nor is it used before a feminine adjective: **la hacienda**, 'the estate'; **la alta casa**, 'the high house.'

**31. Negation.** — A sentence is made negative by placing **no**, 'not,' before the verb.

**no hablo**, I do not speak, *or* I am not speaking.

**no vendo flores**, I do not sell flowers, *or* I am not selling flowers.

**32.** The English auxiliary 'do,' which is usual in negative or interrogative constructions, is ordinarily not translated into Spanish. Compare **hablas**, 'you speak'; **no hablas**, 'you *do* not speak'; **¿hablas?** '*do* you speak?' In past tenses, 'did' is similarly not expressed in Spanish.

### Vocabulary

**agua**, *f.*, water.  
**aritmética**, *f.*, arithmetic.  
**beber**, (to) drink.  
**café**, *m.*, coffee.  
**comer**, (to) eat.  
**con**, with.  
**desear**, (to) desire, wish.  
**enseñar**, (to) teach.  
**escuela**, *f.*, school.  
**España**, *f.*, Spain.  
**francés**, *-esa*, French.  
**geografía**, *f.*, geography.  
**gramática**, *f.*, grammar.  
**huevo**, *m.*, egg.  
**Inglaterra**, *f.*, England.  
**leche**, *f.*, milk:

**libro**, *m.*, book.  
**llevar**, (to) carry, take.  
**maestro**, *m.*, teacher.  
**mantequilla**, *f.*, butter.  
**manzana**, *f.*, apple.  
**ni**, nor.  
**no**, no, not.  
**ó**, or.  
**Pablo**, *m.*, Paul.  
**pan**, *m.*, bread.  
**pizarra**, *f.*, slate.  
**por**, for, through.  
**qué**, what (*interrog.*).  
**también**, also.  
**té**, *m.*, tea.  
**viajar**, (to) travel.

## Exercise II

*A.* 1. Compramos lápices y plumas. 2. ¿Escribís las cartas con las plumas ó con los lápices? 3. Escribimos las cartas con pluma y tinta. 4. Juan y María compran libros para leer. 5. Leen los libros para aprender á leer. 6. Deseo aprender á hablar español. 7. Deseamos viajar por España. 8. Hablamos inglés y aprendemos á leer y á escribir en inglés. 9. En España hablan español: en Inglaterra hablan inglés. 10. Deseamos aprender á hablar español para viajar por España. 11. Llevo á la<sup>1</sup> escuela libros, una pizarra, y un lápiz. 12. Leo en los libros. 13. Escribo en la pizarra con el lápiz. 14. También llevamos á la escuela pan y mantequilla, huevos, y manzanas. 15. Comemos el pan, la mantequilla, los huevos, y las manzanas. 16. Bebemos agua ó leche: no bebemos café ni té. 17. ¿Qué estudiáis en la<sup>1</sup> escuela? 18. Estudiamos inglés, aritmética, gramática, y geografía. 19. Pablo, ¿no estudias el<sup>1</sup> español? 20. Sí, señor; el maestro enseña el<sup>1</sup> español y el<sup>1</sup> francés. 21. Aprendo el<sup>1</sup> español, pero no aprendo el<sup>1</sup> francés. 22. Juan aprende también el<sup>1</sup> francés.

*B.* 1. Do you (*pl.*) wish to travel through Spain? 2. We wish to speak Spanish in-order-to travel through Spain. 3. A Spanish woman is learning to speak English. 4. She is learning to speak English in-order-to travel through England. 5. Do they speak English or Spanish in Spain? 6. They speak English in England and Spanish in Spain. 7. We take bread, butter, and apples to school.<sup>2</sup> 8. We eat the bread, the butter, and the apples, and drink milk. 9. Paul and John take bread and eggs to school.<sup>2</sup> 10. They eat the bread and the eggs, and drink water. 11. I drink milk. 12. We do not drink tea nor coffee. 13. Do you (*pl.*) not take books to school?<sup>2</sup> 14. Yes, sir; we take books, slates, and pencils. 15. Do you (*pl.*) write letters at school?<sup>2</sup> 16. No, sir; we do not write letters. 17. We read in the books in order to learn to<sup>3</sup> read. 18. We write on the

slates in order to learn to <sup>3</sup> write. 19. What do you (*sing.*) study at school? <sup>2</sup> 20. I study Spanish, grammar, arithmetic, and geography.

<sup>1</sup> Do not translate. <sup>2</sup> Use the definite article. For the article before the name of a language, cf. § 55 (4). <sup>3</sup> Use *d*.

## LESSON III

**33. Feminine of Adjectives.** — Many Spanish adjectives change their form according as the noun they modify is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

(1) Adjectives ending in **-o** in the masculine singular change **-o** to **-a** to form the feminine.

**un caballo blanco**, a white horse.    **una vaca blanca**, a white cow.

(2) But adjectives ending in a consonant or in a vowel other than **-o** have the same form for the masculine and the feminine.

**un libro azul**, a blue book.

**una casa azul**, a blue house.

**un hombre cortés**, a polite man.

**una mujer cortés**, a polite woman.

**un muchacho inteligente**, an intelligent boy.

**una muchacha inteligente**, an intelligent girl.

*Exceptions: —*

*a.* Adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant add **-a** to form the feminine: **inglés, inglesa**, 'English'; **español, española**, 'Spanish.'

*b.* Adjectives ending in **-an, -on, or -or** (except comparatives in **-or**) add **-a** to form the feminine: **holgazán, holgazana**, 'lazy'; **burlón, burlona**, 'roguish'; **traidor, traidora**, 'treacherous.'

Note that in Spanish a qualifying adjective usually follows its noun.

**34. Plural of Adjectives.**—The plural of adjectives, like the plural of nouns, is formed by adding **-s** or **-es** to the singular.

blanco, blancos, blanca, blancas, white.      azul, azules, blue.

**35. Radical-changing *e* and *o* Verbs.<sup>1</sup>**—Many verbs of the first and second conjugations, while otherwise regular, change the radical vowels **e** and **o** to **ie** and **ue** respectively, whenever the stress falls on the stem. The following will serve as models of these verbs.

**Present Indicative.**

Temblar, (to) tremble		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. tiemblo		1. temblamos
2. tiembras		2. tembláis
3. tiembla		3. tiemblan
Perder, (to) lose		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. pierdo		1. perdemos
2. pierdes		2. perdéis
3. pierde		3. pierden
Contar, (to) count		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. cuento		1. contamos
2. cuentas		2. contáis
3. cuenta		3. cuentan
Volver, (to) return		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. vuelvo		1. volvemos
2. vuelves		2. volvéis
3. vuelve		3. vuelven

Note that **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** only in the singular and the third person plural, since the stress falls on the inflectional endings of the first and second persons plural, and not on the stem.

<sup>1</sup> All verbs that make these phonetic changes will be found in the list of verbs, § 271.



## Vocabulary

amarillo, -a, yellow.	Inglés, -esa, <i>m. and f.</i> , Englishman, Englishwoman.
correr, (to) run.	Juana, <i>f.</i> , Jane.
cuando, when.	jugar, <sup>1</sup> (to) play.
Cuba, <i>f.</i> , Cuba.	lección, <i>f.</i> , lesson.
Cubano, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , Cuban.	Mejicano, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , Mexican.
deber, ought (to), should.	Méjico, <i>m.</i> , Mexico.
demasiado, too, too much.	negro, -a, black.
difícil, difficult.	Norte-Americano, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , American, North-American.
discípulo, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , pupil.	palabra, <i>f.</i> , word.
ejercicio, <i>m.</i> , exercise.	pequeño, -a, small.
encarnado, -a, (bright) red.	querer, <sup>2</sup> (to) wish.
error, <i>m.</i> , mistake.	rojo, -a, red.
escuchar, (to) listen.	señalar, (to) mark.
Estados Unidos, <i>m. pl.</i> , United States.	tanto, so much, as much.
fácil, easy.	tiempo, <i>m.</i> , time.
frío, <i>m.</i> , cold.	verde, green.
grande, large.	vivir, (to) live.
hallar, (to) find.	

## Exercise III

- A. 1. Tiemblo de (*with*) frío. 2. No estudio: pierdo el<sup>1</sup> tiempo. 3. Deseo estudiar: no deseo perder el<sup>1</sup> tiempo. 4. Cuento los libros, las plumas y los lápices. 5. Vivo en una casa blanca. 6. Juan y María viven en una casa amarilla. 7. Escribes mucho con el lápiz azul. 8. Juan escribe con tinta negra en papel blanco. 9. Los Españoles, los Mejicanos, y los Cubanos hablan español. 10. Quiero aprender el<sup>2</sup> español para viajar por España, Méjico, y Cuba. 11. Los Ingleses y los Norte-Americanos<sup>3</sup> hablan inglés. 12. Los Españoles, los Mejicanos, y los Cubanos aprenden el

<sup>1</sup> Radical-changing: see note 4 on page 32.

<sup>2</sup> Radical-changing in the present tenses, and also otherwise irregular in some other tenses.

inglés para viajar por Inglaterra y por los Estados Unidos.  
 13. Los Ingleses y los Norte-Americanos viajan mucho, pero los Españoles no viajan tanto. 14. Los discípulos de la escuela no quieren estudiar mucho. 15. Quieren correr y jugar. 16. Corren y juegan<sup>4</sup> mucho, pero trabajan poco. 17. El discípulo no debe estudiar demasiado. 18. Debe correr y jugar, pero debe también estudiar. 19. El discípulo corre y juega mucho: la discípula corre y juega poco. 20. Cuando no trabajo, juego; y cuando no juego, trabajo. 21. No quiero estudiar demasiado, ni jugar demasiado. 22. Juana escribe con una pluma pequeña, y Juan escribe con una pluma grande. 23. Estudia mucho, pero no aprende la lección. 24. Cuando el maestro de español habla, escuchamos para aprender las palabras. 25. Escribimos los ejercicios con tinta negra, pero el maestro señala los errores con tinta encarnada (roja).

*B.* 1. I am buying a white horse and a black cow. 2. An intelligent boy learns to count. 3. I study a-great-deal, but John loses his<sup>5</sup> time. 4. I live in a white house and John lives in a green house. 5. Are you trembling with the cold? 6. I am not trembling with the cold. 7. I buy English books and Spanish books in-order-to read in English and Spanish. 8. Paul does not study Spanish;<sup>5</sup> he studies French.<sup>5</sup> 9. The teachers teach French<sup>5</sup> and Spanish.<sup>5</sup> 10. I study Spanish<sup>5</sup> and French.<sup>5</sup> 11. Do they speak French or Spanish in Cuba? 12. They speak Spanish in Cuba and Mexico. 13. The Cubans and the Mexicans do not speak English. 14. They wish to learn English<sup>5</sup> in order to travel through the United States. 15. The Americans wish to learn Spanish<sup>5</sup> in order to travel through Cuba and Mexico. 16. The pupils run and play too much, but they do not study too much. 17. The pupil (*fem.*) should not study too much. 18. We run and play and study a great deal, but not too much. 19. The Spanish books are<sup>9</sup> yellow, blue, or red. 20. Are you (*sing.*) writing the Spanish exercises?<sup>6</sup> 21. Yes, sir; and I find the Spanish exercises very difficult. 22. I find the Spanish<sup>10</sup>

lessons very easy. 23. The Spanish teacher speaks, reads, and writes Spanish<sup>7</sup> well. 24. He does not speak, read, and<sup>8</sup> write English well.

<sup>1</sup> Translate 'my.' <sup>2</sup> Do not translate. <sup>3</sup> In Spanish-America the people of the United States are usually called *Norte-Americanos* ("North Americans").

<sup>4</sup> In *jugar* the *u* becomes *ue* when stressed. <sup>5</sup> Use the definite article.

<sup>6</sup> Say: 'the exercises in Spanish.' <sup>7</sup> Translate: 'well the Spanish.' <sup>8</sup> Use *ni* (lit. 'nor'). <sup>9</sup> *son*. <sup>10</sup> Say: 'of Spanish.'

## LESSON IV

**36. Radical-changing Verbs.** — Some verbs of the third conjugation change the radical *e* to *ie* or to *i*, and *o* to *ue*, whenever the stress falls on the stem.<sup>1</sup> The following will serve as models of these verbs: —

### Present Indicative.

#### Sentir, (to) feel

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>siento</b>	1. <b>sentimos</b>
2. <b>sientes</b>	2. <b>sentís</b>
3. <b>siente</b>	3. <b>sienten</b>

#### Pedir, (to) ask for

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>pido</b>	1. <b>pedimos</b>
2. <b>pides</b>	2. <b>pedís</b>
3. <b>pide</b>	3. <b>piden</b>

#### Dormir, (to) sleep

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>duermo</b>	1. <b>dormimos</b>
2. <b>duermes</b>	2. <b>dormís</b>
3. <b>duerme</b>	3. <b>duermen</b>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. §§ 229, 230.

37. The Irregular Verbs *Tener* and *Haber*.

Indicative. Present Tense.

**Tener, (to) have**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>tengo</b>	1. <b>tenemos</b>
2. <b>tienes</b>	2. <b>tenéis</b>
3. <b>tiene</b>	3. <b>tienen</b>

**Haber, (to) have**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>he</b>	1. <b>hemos</b>
2. <b>has</b>	2. <b>habéis</b>
3. <b>ha (hay)</b>	3. <b>han</b>

38. Meaning and Use of *Tener* and *Haber*.

(1) **Tener** means ' (to) have ' in the sense of ' (to) possess ' ; **tengo una pluma**, ' I have a pen. ' It also retains its Latin sense of ' (to) hold. '

(2) **Haber** is chiefly used as an auxiliary verb with past participles in the formation of compound tenses. Thus, the perfect tense of **hablar** is :

' I have spoken, ' or ' I have been speaking. '

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>he hablado</b>	1. <b>hemos hablado</b>
2. <b>has hablado</b>	2. <b>habéis hablado</b>
3. <b>ha hablado</b>	3. <b>han hablado</b>

*a.* **Hay**<sup>1</sup> means ' there is, ' or ' there are ' ; **hay uno**, ' there is one ' ; **hay dos**, ' there are two. ' The form **hay** is used only as an impersonal verb ; **ha**, not **hay**, is used in the formation of compound tenses, as, **ha habido**, ' there has been, ' and in temporal expressions, as **mucho tiempo ha**, ' there is much time, ' *i.e.* ' long ago. '

<sup>1</sup> Composed of *ha*, ' it has, ' and *y*, an old adverb meaning ' there. ' Cf French *il y a*.

## 39. Participles.

hablar :	hablando, speaking,	hablado, spoken.
temer :	temiendo, fearing,	temido, feared.
vivir :	viviendo, living,	vivido, lived.
tener :	teniendo, having,	tenido, had.
haber :	habiendo, having,	habido, had.

## 40. Idiomatic Expressions.

- (1) tengo que, I have to, *or* I must.  
 tengo que estudiar mucho, I have to (or 'I must') study a great deal.  
 he de, I am to, I shall.<sup>1</sup>  
 ha de partir mañana, he is to leave tomorrow.
- (2) tengo calor, I am warm.                      tengo cuidado, I am careful.  
 tengo mucho calor, I am very              tengo los ojos cansados, my eyes  
       warm.                                              are tired.  
 tengo frío, I am cold.                      tengo rota la pierna derecha, my  
 tengo hambre,<sup>3</sup> I am hungry.              right leg is broken.  
 tengo sed,<sup>3</sup> I am thirsty.                      tengo diez años, I am ten years  
 tengo sueño, I am sleepy.                      old (lit., 'I have ten years').  
 tengo miedo, I am afraid.                      ¿cuántos años tienes? how old  
 tengo prisa, I am in a hurry.                      are you?

Note that these expressions refer to the physical or mental condition of a person or animal, not of inanimate objects; e.g. 'the water is hot,' *el agua está* (from *estar*, 'to be') *caliente*, and not *el agua tiene calor*.

## Vocabulary

corregir, <sup>2</sup> (to) correct.	preferir, <sup>2</sup> (to) prefer.
empezar, <sup>2</sup> (to) begin.	todavía, still, yet.
lengua, <i>f.</i> , language.	vender, (to) sell.
muchos, -as, many.	

## Exercise IV

- A. 1. Tengo papel blanco y tinta negra.              2. Tenemos plumas grandes y plumas pequeñas.              3. Tengo una lección fácil, pero tengo un ejercicio difícil.              4. ¿Habéis comprado

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'I have to,' not indicating external obligation.

<sup>2</sup> Radical-changing.

<sup>3</sup> *hambre* and *sed* are feminine.

un libro español? 5. Sí, señor; hemos comprado un libro español y un libro inglés. 6. Tengo libros españoles muy difíciles y libros ingleses muy fáciles. 7. ¿Hallas la lengua española muy difícil? 8. Para aprender á hablar español, he tenido que estudiar mucho. 9. Hemos aprendido muchas palabras españolas, pero no hablamos bien: hablamos muy mal. 10. Juan tiene un libro azul, y María tiene un libro amarillo. 11. Hemos comprado muchos libros, y tenemos libros azules, amarillos, rojos, verdes, y negros; pero no tenemos libros blancos. 12. He vendido los libros ingleses, pero tengo todavía los libros españoles. 13. ¿Has escrito<sup>1</sup> la carta con tinta negra ó con tinta encarnada (roja)? 14. He escrito la carta con tinta negra: no tengo tinta encarnada (roja). 15. Cuando tengo sueño, no puedo<sup>2</sup> estudiar mucho: quiero dormir. 16. Juan duerme mucho, y trabaja poco. 17. No puedo leer ni escribir cuando tengo los ojos cansados. 18. María ha leído mucho, pero no tiene los ojos cansados. 19. Antonio tiene diez años, y no puede leer bien. 20. Tengo hambre y sed, y quiero comer y beber. No tengo calor: tengo mucho frío.

*B.* 1. I am cold, hungry, and thirsty. 2. I must eat and drink. 3. When I have eaten, I am sleepy. 4. You are ten years old, and you do not speak Spanish. 5. I must learn Spanish<sup>3</sup> in order to read Spanish books. 6. I have sold the English books, and I have bought Spanish books. 7. I have white paper and blue paper. 8. I have bought black ink and red ink. 9. I write on the white paper and on the blue paper with black ink. 10. The teacher must correct the mistakes with red ink. 11. We have found the English exercises very easy. 12. Do you (*pl.*) find the Spanish lessons<sup>4</sup> difficult? 13. When the teacher speaks Spanish, I listen in order to learn to speak well. 14. Have you (*pl.*) written a Spanish letter<sup>5</sup> to the Spaniard? 15. Yes; and we have written an English letter to the Englishwoman. 16. John writes with a large pen, but Mary writes with a small pen. 17. I

study much ; but, when I am sleepy, I cannot study. 18. I do not eat a great deal ; but, when I am hungry, I wish to eat. 19. When I am thirsty, I drink water or milk ; I do not drink tea or <sup>6</sup> coffee.

<sup>1</sup> *Escrito*, past part. of *escribir*. <sup>2</sup> *Poder*, 'to be able,' 'can,' is irregular (cf. § 243). <sup>3</sup> Use def. art. <sup>4</sup> Say: 'lessons of Spanish.' <sup>5</sup> Say: 'letter in Spanish.' <sup>6</sup> Use *ni*.

## LESSON V

### 41. Personal Subject-Pronouns.

yo, I.	nosotros (-as), we.
tú, you.	vosotros (-as), you.
él, he. }	ellos (-as), they.
ella, she. }	

a. Note that **nosotros**, **vosotros**, and **ellos** have the feminine forms **nosotras**, **vosotras**, and **ellas**.

b. **El** and **ella** also mean 'it' when referring to things ; thus, speaking of **árbol**, 'it' is **él** ; and speaking of **casa**, 'it' is **ella**.

c. In Spanish, the subject-pronouns may usually be omitted.

42. *Usted*. — In familiar address, 'you' is **tú** (sing.), or **vosotros** (pl.) ; but in formal address, 'you' is **usted** (sing.), or **ustedes** (pl.), used with the third person singular or plural of the verb. Thus, in the singular, 'you have' is **tú tienes**, or **usted tiene**, and in the plural it is **vosotros tenéis**, or **ustedes tienen**. **Usted** is usually not omitted, although with a series of verbs of address it occurs only at intervals.

### 43. Possessive Adjectives.

mi (mis), my.	nuestro (-a, -os, -as), our.
tu (tus), your.	vuestro (-a, -os, -as), your.
su (sus), his, her, its, your.	su (sus), their, your.

a. 'Your': **tu** corresponds to **tú**, **vuestro** to **vosotros** (-as), and **su** to **usted** or **ustedes**.



## 44. Demonstrative Adjectives.

**este** (-a, -os, -as), this, these (*near to or appertaining to the speaker or writer*), this . . . of mine, *etc.*

**ese** (-a, -os, -as), that, those (*near to or appertaining to the person addressed*), that . . . of yours, *etc.*

**aquel** (aquella, -os, -as), that, those (*remote from the person addressed*), that . . . of his, hers, *etc.*, or that . . . over there.

*a.* The possessive and demonstrative adjectives are usually repeated before each noun to which they refer.

**mi padre y mi madre**, my father and mother.

**este hombre y esta mujer**, this man and woman.

## Vocabulary

**alto**, -a, high.

**ancho**, -a, wide.

**bola**, *f.*, marble.

**cantar**, (to) sing.

**dibujo**, *m.*, drawing.

**edificio**, *m.*, building.

**flor**, *f.*, flower.

**hablador**, -ora, talkative.

**música**, *f.*, music.

**niño**, -a, *m. and f.*, (small) boy, girl; child.

**pelota**, *f.*, ball.

**piano**, *m.*, piano.

**tío**, -a, *m. and f.*, uncle, aunt.

**tocar**, (to) play (a musical instrument).

**tomar**, (to) take.

**ventana**, *f.*, window.

## Exercise V

*A.* 1. Yo estudio, pero tú pierdes el tiempo. 2. Usted cuenta bien, pero yo cuento mal. 3. Juan y María hallan la lección difícil. 4. Ellos no estudian mucho. 5. Nosotros estudiamos mucho y hallamos la lección fácil. 6. Esta muchacha grande corre y juega mucho. 7. Ella no desea estudiar sus libros. 8. Pero la niña pequeña estudia mucho y aprende bien. 9. Usted escribe sus cartas con tinta encarnada. 10. María y yo escribimos nuestras cartas con tinta negra. 11. Este hombre lee mucho y tiene los ojos cansados.

12. Aquella mujer habladora habla mucho. 13. Este hombre inteligente habla poco. 14. Mi padre y mi madre han vivido en España. 15. Ellos hablan español, inglés y francés. 16. Yo tomo lecciones de dibujo; tú tomas lecciones de música. 17. Él toca bien el piano, pero ella toca mal. 18. Este edificio tiene ventanas altas y anchas. 19. Hay muchas flores en aquellas ventanas. 20. ¿Quieres tú también jugar á la pelota? 21. No; yo prefiero jugar á las bolas. 22. Mi padre y mis tíos han estudiado en esta escuela. 23. Esta mujer canta muy bien, pero aquella mujer canta mal.

B. 1. You (*fam., sing.*<sup>1</sup>) run and play, but he studies. 2. You (*form., sing.*) talk much, but she talks little. 3. You (*fam., pl.*) study much, and we study little. 4. You (*form., pl.*) count well, and they count badly. 5. This large man does not wish to play with that small boy. 6. This large woman plays with that small girl. 7. I lose my books, but you (*fam., sing.*) do not lose your books. 8. I write with black ink, but you (*form. sing.*) write with red ink. 9. We speak Spanish well, but you (*fam., pl.*) speak badly. 10. We buy Spanish books, but you (*form., pl.*) buy French books. 11. My father and mother are cold and hungry. 12. When my father has eaten, he is sleepy. 13. When I am thirsty, I drink milk. 14. When you (*fam., sing.*) are thirsty, you drink water. 15. This boy plays much, but that boy plays little. 16. This book (of mine) is <sup>2</sup> English; that book (of yours) is French; and that book (of his) is Spanish. 17. We (*masc.*) play ball, and you (*fem. pl., fam.*) play the piano. 18. These boys prefer to play marbles. 19. He wishes to take drawing lessons, but she prefers to take music lessons.

<sup>1</sup> 'Familiar singular' refers to the 2d pers. sing., with or without *tú*; 'familiar plural' to the 2d pers. pl., with or without *vosotros* (-as); 'formal singular' to *usted*, and 'formal plural' to *ustedes*. <sup>2</sup> *es*

## LESSON VI

45. The Irregular Verbs *Ser* and *Estar*.

## (1) Indicative. Present Tense:

Ser, (to) be		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. soy		1. somos
2. eres		2. sois
3. es		3. son
Estar, (to) be		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. estoy		1. estamos
2. estás		2. estáis
3. está		3. están

## (2) Participles:

ser:	siendo, being,	sido, been.
estar:	estando, being,	estado, been.

46. Meaning of *Ser* and *Estar*.

*Ser* and *estar* both mean ' (to) be.' *Ser* expresses what is inherent or permanent; *estar*, what is accidental or temporary.

- Ex.    *la taza es de oro*, the cup is of gold.  
       *la taza está limpia*, the cup is clean.  
       *soy viejo y estoy enfermo*, I am old and ill.  
       *es cojo*, he is (permanently) lame.  
       *hoy está cojo*, he is lame today.  
       *soy libre*, I am free (a free man).  
       *ahora estoy libre*, I am now free (disengaged).

*a. Estar* is also used to express position, whether temporary or permanent: *mi hermano está en Méjico*, 'my brother is in Mexico'; *Méjico está en la América del Norte*, 'Mexico is in North America.'

*b. Ser* alone permits of a predicate *noun* with it: *su hermano es soldado*, 'his brother is a soldier.'

c. Some adjectives have one meaning when used with **ser** and another meaning when used with **estar**.

**ser bueno**, (to) be good.

**ser malo**, (to) be bad.

**ser cansado**, (to) be tiresome.

**estar bueno**, (to) be well.

**estar malo**, (to) be ill.

**estar cansado**, (to) be tired.

## 47. Idiomatic Expressions.

(1) **yo soy**,<sup>1</sup> it is I.

**tú eres**, it is you.

**él es**, it is he. }

**ella es**, it is she. }

**usted es**, it is you.

(2) **es lástima**, it is a pity.

**es mentira**, it is false.

**es verdad** or **es cierto**, it is true.

**nosotros (-as) somos**, it is we.

**vosotros (-as) sois**, it is you.

**ellos (-as) son**, it is they.

**ustedes son**, it is you.

**¿no es verdad?** isn't it so?

**está bien**, it is well, all right.

**¡está bueno!** good!

## Vocabulary

**á causa de**, on account of.

**activo**, -a, active.

**alegre**, merry, joyous.

**amable**, kind, lovable.

**cómo**, how (*interrog.*).

**decidido**, -a, decided, determined.

**dejar**, (to) leave.

**dónde**, where (*interrog.*).

**fresco**, -a, fresh.

**frío**, -a, cold.

**fuerte**, strong.

**gracias**, *f. pl.*, thanks, thank you.

**haragán**, -ana, lazy.

**hermano**, -a, *m. and f.*, brother, sister.

**hijo**, -a, *m. and f.*, son, daughter.

**inválido**, -a, disabled.

**invierno**, *m.*, winter.

**joven**, young.

**Julio**, *m.*, Julius.

**llamar**, (to) call.

**llegar**, (to) arrive.

**otro**, -a, other, another.

**pais**, *m.*, country.

**perezoso**, -a, idle.

**porque**, because.

**preguntar**, (to) ask.

**preguntón**, -ona, inquisitive.

**puesto**, *m.*, situation, position.

**que**, that.

**quién**, who (*interrog.*).

**regalo**, *m.*, present, gift.

**severo**, -a, severe.

**si**, if.

**siempre**, always.

**soldado**, *m.*, soldier.

**triste**, sad.

**viento**, *m.*, wind.

**viudo**, -a, *m. and f.*, widower, widow

<sup>1</sup> Or, soy yo, eres tú, etc.

## Exercise VI

A. 1. Los maestros de nuestra escuela son muy severos.  
 2. Los discípulos de la escuela no son malos. 3. El maestro pregunta si tú estás enfermo. 4. Nosotros estudiamos mucho, pero vosotras sois muy perezosas. 5. Él es viejo, y está hoy muy triste. Ella es joven y está alegre. 6. Este soldado es viejo y está inválido. 7. Esta señora es viuda y está enferma. 8. Este pan no está fresco: es demasiado viejo. 9. Estoy decidido á dejar el puesto que tengo. 10. Julio es muy fuerte y activo, y quiere jugar con los otros niños. 11. Antonio es haragán, y dice<sup>1</sup> siempre que está cansado. 12. Esa niña es haragana, habladora, y preguntona. 13. ¿Cómo<sup>2</sup> está usted? Estoy muy bien; gracias. 14. ¿Quién<sup>2</sup> es? Soy yo. ¿Quién llama? Es ella. 15. Tengo un regalo para su hijo, señora. Gracias; es usted<sup>3</sup> muy amable. 16. ¿Dónde ha estado usted, señor, este invierno? He estado en Madrid. 17. ¿Cómo están ustedes, señoras? Estamos buenas, señor. 18. Somos americanas, y en nuestro país estamos siempre buenas. 19. Pero en Madrid hemos estado muy malas á causa del viento frío.

B. 1. Are you (*sing., form.*) sad today? 2. Yes, sir; I am sad because I am old. 3. He is old and (is) ill. 4. She is young and (is) well. 5. This water is very cold. 6. I am very cold and very hungry. 7. He is lazy, but he says that he is tired. 8. Are you (*fem. sing., fam.*) well today? No, I am ill. 9. How are your (*pl., fam.*) friends? They are very well, thank you. 10. Who has arrived? It<sup>4</sup> is my father. 11. Who is it<sup>4</sup>? It<sup>4</sup> is he. 12. We are English, but we are always ill in England. 13. You (*pl., form.*) work much and play little, do you not?<sup>5</sup> 14. Those windows are high and wide. 15. This building is large and high. 16. I am a pupil (*masc.*) in<sup>6</sup> this school, and you (*sing., fam.*) are a pupil (*fem.*) in<sup>6</sup> that school. 17. This teacher is very severe when I am bad. 18. Your (*sing., fam.*) brother

has a gift for your sister. He is very kind. 19. My friend has been in Madrid this winter. 20. He has been very ill, but he is now well.

<sup>1</sup> *dice*, pres. ind. of *decir*, 'to say.' <sup>2</sup> Note that interrogative adverbs and interrogative pronouns take the accent mark. <sup>3</sup> In Spanish, the subject often follows its verb. <sup>4</sup> This 'it' cannot be translated into Spanish. <sup>5</sup> Say: 'is it not so?' <sup>6</sup> Use *de*.

## LESSON VII

**48. Possessive Case (Genitive).** — Spanish nouns have only one form for the singular and one for the plural: they have no ending that corresponds to the English 's. Possession is denoted by the preposition **de**, 'of.'

**el libro del hombre**, the man's book (lit., 'the book of the man').

**la hermana de María**, Mary's sister (lit., 'the sister of Mary').

*a.* The English possessive case is sometimes elliptical for 'the house, church, or shop of'; in Spanish the full construction occurs.

**está en casa de mi tío**, he is at my uncle's.

**voy á la iglesia de San Pablo**, I am going to Saint Paul's.

**en la tienda de García**, at Garcia's.

**49. Indirect Object (Dative Case).** — The indirect object is always expressed by **á** before the noun, without regard to its position.

**María dió un libro á Pedro**, Mary gave Peter a book, *or* Mary gave a book to Peter.

*a.* In Spanish, verbs meaning to *take from* or *ask of* are followed by the dative of the person.

**pido un favor á mi madre**, I ask a favor of my mother.

**compré el caballo á mi primo**, I bought the horse of my cousin.

**50. Personal á.** — In Spanish the preposition **á**, 'to,' is often required before the direct object of a verb. It is so required whenever the object is a proper noun, or any noun or pronoun<sup>1</sup> that denotes a **specific** person, higher animal, or personified thing.

Ex.        **Pablo ama á Sofía**, Paul loves Sophia.  
              **he visitado á París**, I have visited Paris.  
              **llama á su hijo**, he is calling his son.

Compare the following :

**hallé el libro**, I found the book.

**hallé al niño**, I found the child.

**busco un hombre** (not specific) **que hable<sup>2</sup> español**, I am looking for a man who speaks Spanish.

**conozco á un hombre que habla español**, I know a man who speaks Spanish.

*a.* The "personal **á**" is usually omitted after **tener**, 'to have': **tengo un padre y una madre**, 'I have a father and a mother.' Observe also the following :

**querer**, to wish.

**querer á**, to like, to love.

**perder**, to lose.

**perder á**, to ruin.

*b.* The "personal **á**" is sometimes omitted when the verb governs an indirect object also : **llevo el niño á su papá**, 'I am taking the child to his father.' Also before a word beginning with the *a* sound: **conozco aquel hombre**, 'I know that man.'

*c.* The preposition **á** is sometimes placed before the direct object merely to distinguish the latter from the subject: **á la guerra sigue la paz**, 'peace follows war.'

**51. Interrogative Sentences.** — In an interrogative sentence the subject, if expressed, usually follows the

<sup>1</sup> Except the personal pronouns **me**, **te**, etc., and the relative **que**.

<sup>2</sup> Present subjunctive.



verb, and if a compound tense is used, the subject usually follows the past participle.

- Ex. ¿habla Juan? does John speak? is John speaking?  
 ¿habló Pablo? did Paul speak?  
 ¿ha vendido usted su caballo? have you sold your horse?

### Vocabulary

<b>barato</b> , -a, cheap.	<b>molestia</b> , <i>f.</i> , trouble.
<b>biblioteca</b> , <i>f.</i> , library.	<b>muebles</b> , <i>m. pl.</i> , furniture, pieces-of-furniture.
<b>casa</b> , <i>f.</i> , house; <b>en casa</b> , at home.	<b>nuevo</b> , -a, new.
<b>ciudad</b> , <i>f.</i> , city.	<b>pasar</b> , (to) pass.
<b>cocina</b> , <i>f.</i> , kitchen.	<b>pedir</b> , <sup>2</sup> (to) ask (a favor, etc.).
<b>comedor</b> , <i>m.</i> , dining room.	<b>pensar</b> , <sup>2</sup> (to) think, intend.
<b>cómodo</b> , -a, comfortable.	<b>perdón</b> , <i>m.</i> , pardon.
<b>contener</b> , <sup>1</sup> (to) contain.	<b>piso</b> , <i>m.</i> , floor, story.
<b>cosa</b> , <i>f.</i> , thing.	<b>primer(o)</b> , -a, first.
<b>costoso</b> , -a, costly, expensive.	<b>rico</b> , -a, rich.
<b>criado</b> , -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , servant.	<b>segundo</b> , -a, second.
<b>cuadro</b> , <i>m.</i> , picture.	<b>Sevilla</b> , <i>f.</i> , Seville.
<b>demás</b> , others.	<b>sombrero</b> , <i>m.</i> , hat.
<b>estatua</b> , <i>f.</i> , statue.	<b>todo</b> , -a, all.
<b>estudio</b> , <i>m.</i> , study.	
<b>magnífico</b> , -a, magnificent, splendid.	

### Exercise VII

- A. 1. Tienes tu libro? — No; tengo el libro de mi hermano. 2. ¿Dónde está tu madre? — Está en casa de mi tío. 3. ¿Dónde compra usted sus sombreros? 4. Compro mis sombreros en la tienda de Herrera. 5. Él vende los sombreros muy baratos. 6. ¿No podéis hallar á vuestro padre? 7. Sí; hemos hallado á nuestro padre, pero no á nuestra madre. 8. He perdido todos mis libros. 9. Yo he hallado tus libros en la biblioteca. 10. ¿Busca usted á sus her-

<sup>1</sup> Inflected like **tener**.

<sup>2</sup> Radical-changing.

manos? 11. No; busco una pluma que he perdido.  
 12. ¿Está Juan en casa?—No, señor; está en casa de Pablo Martínez.  
 13. Pido á usted perdón por la molestia.  
 14. Tengo en Sevilla un amigo muy rico. 15. Este amigo tiene una casa magnífica.  
 16. En su casa hay muchas cosas costosas. 17. Ha viajado mucho. 18. Siendo muy inteligente, ha comprado libros, muebles, cuadros y muchas estatuas.  
 19. La casa de mi amigo es grande y cómoda. 20. La biblioteca está en el segundo piso. 21. El comedor y la cocina están en el primer piso. 22. La biblioteca contiene muchos libros en inglés, español y francés.  
 23. Mi amigo prefiere los libros en español á todos los demás libros.

B. 1. Have you (*fam., sing.*) found your books? 2. Yes; I have found my books, but I can't<sup>1</sup> find my father. 3. Where do you buy your pens? 4. I buy my pens at Montejo's. 5. I buy my pens from my uncle John. 6. Where is your brother? 7. He and my sister are at their aunt's. 8. Paul loves his brother and sister, but he does not love his books. 9. How is your (*form., sing.*) friend, sir? 10. He is very well. He is in this city, and he is buying many things. 11. Your friend is rich, is he not? 12. Yes; he has a costly house. 13. Being rich, he has travelled and has bought many pieces-of-furniture and books. 14. He is an<sup>2</sup> American, and he intends to pass this winter in America. 15. He has splendid pictures, it is true; but I prefer his statues. 16. He has books in many languages. 17. But he prefers the English and French books to all the others. 18. His library is on the first floor; it is large and comfortable. 19. Have you (*fam., sing.*) a servant that speaks<sup>3</sup> Spanish? 20. No, sir; I have a servant who speaks English. 21. John loves his father and his mother; but he does not love his studies. 22. Where is your (*form., pl.*) brother? He is at our uncle's.

<sup>1</sup> no puedo.<sup>2</sup> Omit.<sup>3</sup> Use *hable* (pres. subj.).

## LESSON VIII

## 52. Indicative. Imperfect and Preterite.

## Hablar :

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **hablaba**, I was speaking *or* used to speak.
2. **hablabas**
3. **hablaba**

## PLURAL

1. **hablábamos**
2. **hablabais**
3. **hablaban**

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **hablé**, I spoke *or* did speak.
2. **hablaste**
3. **habló**

## PLURAL

1. **hablamos**
2. **hablasteis**
3. **hablaron**

## Temer :

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **temía**, I was fearing *or* used to fear.
2. **temías**
3. **temía**

## PLURAL

1. **temíamos**
2. **temíais**
3. **temían**

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **temí**, I feared *or* did fear.
2. **temiste**
3. **temió**

## PLURAL

1. **temimos**
2. **temisteis**
3. **temieron**

## Vivir :

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **vivía**, I was living *or* used to live.
2. **vivías**
3. **vivía**

## PLURAL

1. **vivíamos**
2. **vivíais**
3. **vivían**

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **viví**, I lived *or* did live.
2. **viviste**
3. **vivió**

## PLURAL

1. **vivimos**
2. **vivisteis**
3. **vivieron**

Note that the accent remains on the same vowel throughout the imperfect tense; and that, in both tenses, the stress never falls on the stem.

### 53. Use of the Imperfect and Preterite Indicative. —

The imperfect indicative is used (1) to tell what was happening when something else intervened, or (2) to represent a state or action as protracted or habitual. The preterite is used to tell what happened on one or more occasions in the past without involving duration or extension of time.

**llovía, y los caminos estaban malos**, it was raining, and the roads were bad.

**el año pasado fumaba mucho**, last year I used to smoke a great deal.  
**no fumé ayer**, I did not smoke yesterday.

**vendí mi casa y compré otra**, I sold my house and bought another.

**yo escribía cuando Juan entró**, I was writing when John entered.

**mi padre tenía dos hermosos perros, pero los vendió**, my father had two handsome dogs, but he sold them.

a. Sometimes 'I spoke,' 'I did speak,' or 'I would speak,' mean 'I used to speak.' They are then to be expressed in Spanish by the imperfect: **hablaba español todos los días cuando estaba en Cuba**, 'I spoke ('did speak,' 'would speak,' or 'used to speak') Spanish every day when I was in Cuba.'

b. In Spanish the perfect indicative is sometimes used instead of the preterite to express an act that occurred recently: **ayer he matado un lobo**, 'I killed a wolf yesterday'; **ha partido anteayer**, 'he left day before yesterday'; **he creído que usted era francés**, 'I thought that you were French.' This construction is not so common in Spanish America as it is in Spain.

### Vocabulary

**alemán, -ana**, German.

**avariento, -a, m. and f.**, miser.

**ayudar**, (to) help.

**bicicleta, f.**, bicycle.

**calle, f.**, street.

**cinco**, five.

**como, as**.

**común**, common; **por lo común**, commonly, usually.

**cortar**, (to) cut.

**cuarto, m.**, room.

**día, m.**, day; **todos los días**, every day.

**dinero, m.**, money.

**encontrar**,<sup>1</sup> (to) meet.

**favor**, *m.*, favor.

**idioma**, *m.*, language.

**ladrón**, *-ona, m. and f.*, thief.

**lavar**, (to) wash.

**leña**, *f.*, wood.

**partir**, (to) depart ; *trans.*, to split.

**planchar**, (to) iron.

**primo**, *-a, m. and f.*, cousin.

**profesor**, *-ora, m. and f.*, professor.

**prometer**, (to) promise.

**remendar**,<sup>1</sup> (to) mend, repair.

**ropa**, *f.*, clothes.

**tren**, *m.*, train.

**varios**, *-as*, several, various.

<sup>1</sup> Radical-changing.

### Exercise VIII

*A.* 1. Juan escribía cuando yo entré en el cuarto.  
 2. Ahora no fumo, pero he fumado mucho. 3. Cuando vivía en Cuba, fumaba demasiado. 4. Vendí mi bicicleta y compré otra al señor Martínez. 5. Ella leía un libro cuando llegué.<sup>1</sup> 6. Por lo común comía mucho, pero ayer no comió nada.<sup>2</sup> 7. Mi padre llamó al criado un ladrón.  
 8. Buscábamos un hombre que hablase<sup>3</sup> español. 9. Hallamos á un hombre que hablaba alemán. 10. Buscamos un criado. 11. Ayer buscamos á un criado por toda la ciudad.<sup>4</sup>  
 12. Los ladrones mataron varios hombres, ¿no es verdad?  
 13. Sí, señor; mataron á dos hombres que iban<sup>5</sup> á tomar el tren. 14. El profesor de idiomas ha llegado ayer.  
 15. Él habló ayer con mi padre. 16. El profesor y yo hablábamos español todo el tiempo. 17. Estudiábamos las lecciones cuando tú llegaste. 18. Por lo común, el avariento contaba todos los días su dinero; pero ayer no lo<sup>6</sup> contó.  
 19. Como pasábamos por la calle de Peregrinos, encontramos á nuestro tío. 20. Todos trabajaban: el padre cortaba y partía leña. 21. La madre remendaba la ropa. 22. Las hijas lavaban y planchaban.

*B.* 1. I was not working when you (*form., sing.*) entered.  
 2. When I lived in Mexico, I smoked every day. 3. I did not smoke yesterday. 4. I sold my French books, and bought Spanish

books at García's. 5. I bought the book from a Spaniard. 6. When she entered (into) the room, I was writing a letter. 7. Did you (*form., pl.*) find your father? 8. Yes, we found our father and mother at our cousin's. 9. I was looking for a friend who promised to help me.<sup>10</sup> 10. He was looking all over town for the child. 11. He found many children; but he did not find the child that he was looking for. 12. My father used to call me<sup>11</sup> at six o'clock in the morning.<sup>7</sup> 13. But yesterday he called me<sup>11</sup> at five o'clock. 14. I was reading a Spanish book when my cousin arrived. 15. I spoke Spanish when I lived in Mexico, and I spoke English when I lived in England. 16. I used to smoke a great deal: but I do not smoke now. 17. Did you (*fam., pl.*) not have<sup>\*</sup> expensive pieces-of-furniture? 18. Yes; but we sold them<sup>9</sup> to our rich friend. 19. Have you sold your house also? 20. No, sir: we have sold the furniture, but not the house. 21. Did you (*form., sing.*) buy your new hat at García's? 22. No; I bought the hat of a friend. 23. John used to ask many favors of his teacher. 24. But today the teacher has asked a favor of John.

<sup>1</sup> Pret. of *llegar* (see § 214 (2)).    <sup>2</sup> 'anything.'    <sup>3</sup> 'spoke,' imp. subj. of *hablar*.    <sup>4</sup> 'all over town.'    <sup>5</sup> 'were going,' imp. ind. of *ir*.    <sup>6</sup> 'it,' *á las seis de la mañana*.    <sup>8</sup> *teníais*.    <sup>9</sup> *los vendimos*.    <sup>10</sup> 'help me,' *ayudarme*.    <sup>11</sup> Put *me* before the verb.

---

## LESSON IX

**54. Neuter Article *Lo*.** — In addition to the forms of the definite article already given, there is another form, **lo**, which is required before the masculine form of an adjective, when the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color or as an abstract noun. This is generally called the neuter article, since it cannot be used with a masculine or a feminine noun.

**se ruborizó hasta lo blanco de los ojos**, he colored to the white of his eyes.

**lo infinito y lo eterno**, the infinite and the eternal.

a. Note also the following idiomatic expressions:

**conocemos lo buenas que son ellas**, we know how good they are.  
**sabemos** <sup>1</sup> **lo mucho que nos quiere**, we know how much he loves us.

**55. Use of the Definite Article.** — The definite article is used oftener in Spanish than in English. It is required in the following cases:

(1) Before an abstract noun, or one used in a general sense to denote all of the thing or class it names.

**la ambición es peligrosa**, ambition is dangerous.      **el hierro es útil**, iron is useful.  
**ama las flores**, he loves flowers.

But, if 'some' or 'any' is expressed or understood before the English noun, the article is omitted in Spanish.

**no tiene ambición**, he hasn't any ambition.  
**compra hierro**, he is buying (some) iron.  
**compra flores**, he is buying flowers.

(2) Before a title, or a proper noun modified by a descriptive adjective.

**el señor Morales**, Mr. Morales.      **la pequeña María**, little Mary.  
**el general Martínez**, General Martinez. **el Asia rusa**, Russian Asia.

But in direct address the article is omitted, and **señor**, **señora**, or **señorita** is usually prefixed to a title.

**buenos días, señor general Martínez**, good day, General Martinez

a. The article is never used before **Don** or **Doña** <sup>2</sup>: **Don Antonio habla**, 'Anthony is speaking.'

<sup>1</sup> **Conocer** means 'to know' in the sense of 'to be acquainted with,' 'to realize'; **saber** is 'to know' in the sense of 'to be aware of,' 'to have learned by study.'

<sup>2</sup> **Don** and **Doña** are used only before the Christian or given name (**nombre de bautismo**), as **Doña María**, 'Miss (or Mrs.) Mary.' One also meets with **Señora Doña María**, **Señora Doña María Martínez**, etc.



b. The article is required before a noun used in apposition with a personal pronoun (expressed or understood): **nosotros los americanos creemos**, or **los americanos creemos**, 'we Americans believe.'

(3) Before a word or expression of time that is modified.

**llegó el martes de la semana pasada**, he arrived (on) Tuesday of last week.

**la semana próxima**, next week.

(4) Before an adjective of nationality used to denote a language.

**el inglés no es difícil**, English is not difficult.

**¿enseña usted el español?** do you teach Spanish?

But after **hablar**, 'to speak' (sometimes after **aprender**), the article is usually omitted except before **castellano**.<sup>1</sup> After **en**, 'in,' the article is usually omitted.

**hablamos francés**, we speak French: **en alemán**, in German; but, **¿hablas el castellano?** do you speak Spanish?

(5) Usually before the names of countries and continents, except when the name is used with **en**, **á**, **de**, **para**, etc., to form an adjectival or adverbial phrase.

**la Inglaterra**, England;

**la Francia**, France, etc.;

but,

**vivo en España**, I live in Spain; **voy á Italia**, I am going to Italy.

a. The article is always required before the names of some countries and cities.

**el Brasil**, Brazil.

**la China**, China.

**el Canadá**, Canada.

**la Florida**, Florida.

**el Ecuador**, Ecuador.

**la Gran Bretaña**, Great Britain.

**el Japón**, Japan.

**la Habana**, Havana.

**el Paraguay**, Paraguay.

**la Suiza**, Switzerland.

**el Perú**, Peru.

<sup>1</sup> Several languages are spoken in Spain: Castilian (**el castellano**), Catalan (**el catalán**), Galician (**el gallego**), etc.; but Castilian is the official language of Spain, and is therefore often called Spanish (**el español**), although in most Spanish-speaking countries the name Castilian (**el castellano**) is considered more correct.

(6) Usually before a noun denoting a bodily characteristic, when the object of **tener**, 'to have.'

**tiene el pelo negro**, he has black hair.

**tengo los pies fríos**, my feet are cold.

(7) The masculine article sometimes modifies an infinitive or a subject clause.

**el comer demasiado es malo**, it is bad to eat too much.

**no puede ser mera casualidad el que sean todas bonitas**, it cannot be mere chance that they are all pretty.

(8) The definite article is sometimes used instead of a possessive (see § 119), as in

**he perdido el sombrero**, I have lost my hat.

### Vocabulary

**agradable**, pleasing, agreeable.

**agradar**, (to) please.

**alguno**, -a, some.

**bello**, -a, beautiful.

**brazo**, *m.*, arm.

**creer**, (to) believe.

**dedo**, *m.*, finger.

**deleitar**, (to) delight.

**desgracia**, *f.*, misfortune.

**familia**, *f.*, family.

**felicidad**, *f.*, happiness.

**feo**, -a, ugly.

**fuego**, *m.*, fire.

**guantes**, *m. pl.*, gloves.

**guerra**, *f.*, war.

**izquierdo**, -a, left.

**juez**, *m.*, judge.

**lirio**, *m.*, lily.

**lunes**, *m.*, Monday.

**mano**, *f.*, hand.

**mañana**, tomorrow.

**mundo**, *m.*, world; **todo el mundo**, everybody.

**odiar**, (to) hate.

**oro**, *m.*, gold.

**paz**, *f.*, peace.

**pobre**, poor.

**presente**, present.

**probar**,<sup>1</sup> (to) prove, test.

**salud**, *f.*, health.

**saludable**, healthful.

**sano**, -a, healthy.

**uno**, -a, one.

**uña**, *f.*, finger-nail.

**vano**, -a, vain.

**vecino**, -a, *m. and f.*, neighbor.

**visitar**, (to) visit.

**ya**, already.

<sup>1</sup> Radical-changing verb.

## Exercise IX

*A.* 1. El señor Martínez enseñaba el castellano y el francés.  
 2. Hablaba el castellano, pero no hablaba francés. 3. El castellano es fácil, pero el alemán es difícil. 4. Puedo escribir cartas en español (castellano), pero no en alemán.  
 5. He vivido en Inglaterra y en Francia, pero no he vivido en el Canadá. 6. Visité á Cuba, pero no á la Habana.  
 7. Los Cubanos y los Mejicanos hablan el castellano.  
 8. Los Norte-Americanos y los Ingleses hablan inglés.  
 9. El francés es el idioma de Francia. 10. Cuando uno sabe ya algunas lenguas, no es difícil aprender el castellano.  
 11. Amo la paz, y odio la guerra. Déjame<sup>1</sup> en paz.  
 12. El fuego prueba el oro; la desgracia prueba al hombre y á los amigos. 13. La paz y la salud, y no el dinero, constituyen<sup>2</sup> la felicidad de la familia. 14. Tengo las manos y los pies fríos. 15. El pobre muchacho se ha caído,<sup>3</sup> y tiene roto el brazo izquierdo. 16. El discípulo tiene que escribir dos ejercicios en francés para mañana, y ya tiene los ojos cansados. 17. El señor Siguerroa ha perdido el sombrero.  
 18. En lo pasado estudiaba poco: en lo presente estudio mucho. 19. Lo bueno agrada: lo bello deleita. 20. Prefiero lo bueno á lo malo, lo bello á lo feo. 21. Odiaban lo malo, y amaban lo bueno. 22. Todo el mundo deja lo útil, y busca lo vano.

*B.* 1. Have you lived in Cuba? 2. Yes; I have lived in Cuba, but not in Havana. 3. In England and in Canada they speak English. 4. In Mexico and in Peru they speak Spanish. 5. Spanish is an easy language, but German is difficult. 6. Mr. Herrera and his daughter Jane speak English and Spanish. 7. When I lived at Mr. Herrera's, I spoke Spanish every day. 8. Mr. Herrera departed for<sup>4</sup> Spain last Tuesday. 9. His son and daughter are in France. 10. Mr. Herrera does not speak French. 11. Women love flowers. This little girl sells flowers.

12. He prefers what is beautiful and agreeable<sup>5</sup> to what is good and useful. 13. The North Americans desired<sup>6</sup> peace, and not war. 14. They desired to live in peace with their neighbors. 15. The judge feared wickedness<sup>7</sup> and loved goodness. 16. Lilies are beautiful flowers. 17. Little Paul is the son of Mrs. Morales. 18. He arrived last Tuesday, and leaves next Monday. 19. He has found his hat; but he has not found his gloves. 20. My finger is broken,<sup>8</sup> and I have lost the finger-nail. 21. Do you (*fam., sing.*) not drink tea or<sup>9</sup> coffee? 22. No; I drink water.

<sup>1</sup> 'leave me.'    <sup>2</sup> Pres. Ind. of *constituir*, 'to constitute.'    <sup>3</sup> 'has fallen.  
<sup>4</sup> *para*.    <sup>5</sup> Say: 'the beautiful and the agreeable.'    <sup>6</sup> Use Imp. Ind.  
<sup>7</sup> Say: 'The wicked (= bad) and the good.'    <sup>8</sup> Say: 'I have the finger  
 broken.'    <sup>9</sup> *ni*.

## LESSON X

**56. Omission of the Definite Article.** — The definite article is omitted in Spanish, although required in English.

(1) Usually before a noun in apposition.

**Wáshington, capital de los Estados Unidos**, Washington, the capital of the United States.

(2) Before a numeral modifying a title.

**Carlos quinto**, Charles the Fifth.

**Luis diez y seis**, Louis the Sixteenth.

**57. Omission of the Indefinite Article.** — The indefinite article is used less often in Spanish than in English: it is regularly omitted before an unmodified noun in the predicate used like an adjective to denote nationality, occupation, rank, etc.

**es americano**, he is an American.    **es sastre**, he is a tailor.

**es general**, he is a general.

It is <sup>also</sup> usually omitted,

*a.* Before a noun in apposition: **Sevilla, ciudad en Andalucía**, 'Seville, a city in Andalusia.'

*b.* Before **otro**, 'another'; **cierto**, 'a certain'; **ciento**, 'a hundred'; **mil**, 'a thousand'; after **tal**, 'such a,' etc.

*c.* Note also such expressions as the following: **dos pesos la botella**, 'two dollars a bottle'; **tres veces al día**, 'three times a day'; **mil pesos por año**, 'a thousand dollars a (or per) year.'

**58. Radical-changing Verbs.** — The radical-changing **e** and **o** verbs of the third conjugation change the radical vowels **e** and **o** to **i** and **u** respectively in the third person singular and plural of the preterite.

## PRETERITE

**Sentir**

## SINGULAR

1. **sentí**
2. **sentiste**
3. **sintió**

## PLURAL

1. **sentimos**
2. **sentisteis**
3. **sintieron**

**Pedir**

## SINGULAR

1. **pedí**
2. **pediste**
3. **pidió**

## PLURAL

1. **pedimos**
2. **pedisteis**
3. **pidieron**

**Dormir**

## SINGULAR

1. **dormí**
2. **dormiste**
3. **durmió**

## PLURAL

1. **dormimos**
2. **dormisteis**
3. **durmieron**

It should be noted that the radical-changing **e** and **o** verbs of the first and second conjugations are regular in the preterite.

**59. Idiomatic Expressions.**

**buenos días**, good morning, *or* good day.

**buenas tardes**, good afternoon, *or* good evening (until dark).

**buenas noches**, good evening (after dark), *or* good night.

**hasta mañana**, farewell until tomorrow.

**hasta luego**, farewell for a while.

**adiós**, good-by.

### Vocabulary

**abrigo**, *m.*, wrap, overcoat.  
**anoche**, last night.  
**bobo**, -a, *m. and f.*, fool.  
**botella**, *f.*, bottle.  
**cerveza**, *f.*, beer.  
**cielo**, *m.*, sky, heaven.  
**coger**, (to) catch.  
**comerciante**, *m.*, merchant.  
**enfermedad**, *f.*, illness.  
**esperar**, (to) hope.  
**esposo**, -a, *m. and f.*, husband, wife.  
**ganar dinero**, (to) make money.  
**gastar**, (to) spend.  
**grave**, serious.  
**guardar cama**, (to) stay in bed.  
**intención**, *f.*, intention.

**mandar**, (to) send.  
**mantener**,<sup>1</sup> (to) support.  
**medicamento**, *m.*, drug, medicine.  
**médico**, *m.*, physician.  
**mentir**,<sup>2</sup> (to) lie.  
**miedo**, *m.*, fear.  
**pagar**, (to) pay; **pagué**, I paid  
**resfriado**, *m.*, cold.  
**salir**,<sup>3</sup> (to) go out.  
**saludable**, healthful.  
**sanar**, (to) cure.  
**sano**, -a, healthy.  
**soldado**, *m.*, soldier.  
**tres**, three.  
**vino**, *m.*, wine.

<sup>1</sup> Inflected like **tener**.    <sup>2</sup> Radical-changing; cf. **sentir**.    <sup>3</sup> Irregular.

### Exercise X

- \* A. 1. He vivido en Toledo, ciudad de España. 2. Pero no he vivido en Madrid, capital del país. 3. Compré el vino al señor Martínez. 4. Pagué tres pesos la botella por el vino. 5. Él es francés, pero vive en los Estados Unidos. 6. El señor González es sastre, y su hermano es comerciante. 7. Don Juan Siguerroa habla bien inglés y francés. 8. Juana pidió un favor á su madre. 9. Anoche dormí en el cuarto de mi hermano. 10. ¿Es hombre ó mujer?—Es hombre, y es un hombre inteligente. 11. ¿Es bobo?—Sí, señor; es un bobo.<sup>1</sup> 12. ¿Eres pobre?—Sí, señor; soy una pobre. 13. El hombre debe beber agua, leche, café ó té, y no vino ni cerveza. 14. El niño debe beber agua ó leche. 15. Me

puse<sup>2</sup> el abrigo, el sombrero y los guantes, y salí á la calle.

16. Buenos días, señor General; ¿cómo está usted hoy?

17. Buenos días, Don Luis, ¿es usted? Estoy bueno. . 18. Y

la señora López está buena también, ¿no es verdad? 19. No;

está enferma: la semana pasada cogió un resfriado, y ahora tiene que guardar cama. 20. Es lástima. Yo tenía siempre

la intención de visitar á la buena señora. 21. Oh, no hay

miedo. La enfermedad no es grave. 22. Con los medica-

mentos esperamos sanar á la enferma. 23. El hermano de la

señora López es médico, y ha mandado buenos medicamentos.

B. 1. Did you sleep well last night? No; I slept badly.

2. Did you (*form., sing.*) ask a favor of little Paul? 3. No; I

asked several favors of his father. 4. Last year we lived in To-

ronto, a city in Canada. 5. Our cousin was living in Havana, a

city in Cuba, when he died. 6. My brother is a physician.

7. My father and my uncles are merchants. 8. Did you (*form.,*

*pl.*) pay two or three dollars a bottle for the wine? 9. I bought

the wine of my uncle. 10. I paid three dollars a bottle for the

wine. 11. This gentleman is a Spaniard. He lives in Barcelona,

a city in Spain. 12. That man is a merchant. He makes a

great deal of money, but spends little. He is a regular miser.

13. Medicines are good for the sick. 14. We love the blue (color)

of the heavens. 15. Mr. Garcia died last year. His wife is a

poor woman,<sup>3</sup> and works hard<sup>4</sup> to<sup>5</sup> support her family. 16. Last

week my father slept well; but last night he did not sleep much.

17. I believe that water and milk are healthful, and that tea and

coffee are not healthful. I wish to be healthy. 18. Do you

(*form., sing.*) believe that Mr. Menéndez lied? No, sir; he did

not lie. 19. Good evening, Mrs. López. How are you (*form.*)?

20. Oh, is that you (*fam.*), Mary? I am not very well. I caught

a cold last Tuesday. 21. That's a pity. My brother is also ill.

22. His illness is serious, and he has to stay in bed. 23. He is

a physician, is he not? No; he is a judge. 24. We visited my

mother yesterday. She has been ill, but is now well.

<sup>1</sup> Translate: 'he is a regular fool.'    <sup>2</sup> 'I put on.'    <sup>3</sup> Omit.    <sup>4</sup> *mucho*,  
<sup>5</sup> *para*.



## LESSON XI

**60. Position of Descriptive Adjectives.**<sup>1</sup>—In English a descriptive adjective used with a noun nearly always precedes it; in Spanish a descriptive adjective commonly follows its noun.

**un muchacho fuerte**, a strong boy.

**agua fría**, cold water.

**una muchacha cubana**, a Cuban girl.

**ojos azules**, blue eyes.

**61.** Most Spanish descriptive adjectives, however, may precede their noun, if the quality named by the adjective is characteristic of the noun, or if the language is poetic or figurative.

**la Santa Biblia**, the Holy Bible.      **la blanca nieve**, the white snow.  
**el ronco trueno**, the hoarse thunder.

*a.* Many adjectives may usually be placed either before or after their noun, although an adjective is more literal and distinctive when it follows: **bueno**, 'good'; **malo**, 'bad'; **bonito** or **lindo**, 'pretty'; **hermoso**, 'beautiful' or 'handsome'; **pequeño**, 'small'; **viejo**, 'old,' etc.

**una pequeña niña** or **una niña pequeña**, a little girl.

**un hermoso caballo** or **un caballo hermoso**, a handsome horse.

*b.* The position of the adjective is sometimes determined by euphony, or the necessity of avoiding ambiguity; and an adjective which ordinarily follows its noun may stand before a noun modified by an adjective phrase.

**cuatro magníficos caballos blancos**, four splendid white horses.

**los escasos honorarios del gobierno**, the inadequate salaries of the government.

**un patriótico libro de lectura cubano**, a patriotic Cuban reader.

*c.* A few adjectives have one meaning before, and another after, their noun.

**un grande amigo**, a great friend.

**diferentes personas**, different

**una manzana grande**, a large apple.

(= several) persons.

**el pobre hombre**, the poor man (an object of pity).

**vestidos diferentes**, different  
 (= dissimilar) costumes.

<sup>1</sup> Or "qualifying" adjectives.

**un hombre pobre**, a poor (poverty-stricken) man.

**mi cara madre**, my dear mother.

**una silla cara**, a dear (expensive) chair.

**cierta época**, a certain period.

**noticia cierta**, authentic news.

**un nuevo libro**, another (or a different) book.

**un libro nuevo**, a new book (fresh from the press.)

**varios hombres**, several men.

**papeles varios**, miscellaneous papers; etc.

*d.* When the adjective precedes, it is usually repeated before each noun to which it refers.

**mi viejo padre y mi vieja madre**, my old father and mother.

*e.* An English noun used as an adjective is usually expressed in Spanish by a noun preceded by **de** (or **para**).

**un reloj de oro**, a gold watch.

**una estatua de mármol**, a marble statue.

**un vaso para vino**, a wineglass (**un vaso de vino** is a glass of wine).

## 62. Agreement of Adjectives.

(1) If an adjective modifies several singular nouns, the plural form of the adjective is used.

**el padre y el hijo son buenos**, the father and the son are good.

**la madre y la hija son buenas**, the mother and the daughter are good.

(2) If some of the nouns are masculine and some are feminine, the adjective is usually in the masculine plural.

**el padre y la madre son buenos**, the father and the mother are good.

**la plata y el oro americanos**, American silver and gold.

*a.* If the nouns denote inanimate things, and the noun nearest the adjective is feminine plural, the adjective takes the feminine plural form.

**el escritorio y las sillas estaban rotas**, the desk and chairs were broken;

**su sombrero y sus botas son viejas**, his hat and boots are old;

but,

**mi corazón y mi alma son suyos**, my heart and my soul are his.

*b.* Sometimes a plural noun is modified by several singular adjectives. This occurs when each adjective modifies only one of the individuals

denoted by the noun: **las lenguas inglesa y castellana**, 'the English and Spanish languages.'

c. An adjective usually agrees in gender and number with the nearest noun if the nouns are disconnected: **muestra un valor, una capacidad un talento extraordinario**, 'he displays extraordinary courage, ability, talent.'

d. When an attributive adjective precedes its noun, it is repeated before each noun if the nouns denote *distinct* persons or things; if the nouns denote *collectively* a state or action, a group of persons or things, or designate the same person or thing, the adjective is not repeated, and agrees with the nearest noun.

**la madre y la hija**, the mother and (the) daughter.

**el cuchillo y el tenedor**, the knife and fork.

**una bella casa y un bello jardín**, a beautiful house and garden.

**su extremado talento y habilidad**, his unusual talent and skill.

**todos los maestros y discípulos**, all the teachers and pupils.

**el pie y pierna de los animales se llaman 'pata'**, the foot and lower part of the leg of animals are called 'pata.'

e. In Spanish a predicate adjective is often used where an adverb is used in English: **partió alegre**, 'he departed joyfully.'

### Vocabulary

**Alejandro, m.**, Alexander.

**aquí**, here.

**aunque**, although.

**billete, m.**, ticket; **billete directo**, through ticket.

**cinco**, five.

**costar**,<sup>1</sup> (to) cost.

**cuchara, f.**, spoon.

**cucharita, f.**, teaspoon.

**cuchillo, m.**, knife.

**despacho, m.**, office.

**estación, f.**, station.

**industrioso, -a**, industrious.

**instante, m.**, instant; **al instante**, at once.

**ir**,<sup>2</sup> (to) go.

**mesa, f.**, table.

**milla, f.**, mile.

**pertenecer**,<sup>3</sup> (to) belong.

**plata, f.**, silver.

**porque**, because.

**porqué**, why (*interrog.*).

**primo, -a, m.** and *f.*, cousin.

**sopa, f.**, soup.

**taza, f.**, cup.

**tenedor, m.**, fork.

<sup>1</sup> Radical-changing verb.

<sup>2</sup> Irregular verb: cf. § 247.

<sup>3</sup> Verb with inceptive endings: cf. § 220.

**Exercise XI**

*A.* 1. ¿Qué compraste?—Compré un reloj de plata.  
 2. ¿Porqué no compraste un reloj de oro? 3. Porque los relojes de oro cuestan mucho. 4. Quiero una cuchara: no quiero una cuchara para sopa. 5. Tráigame<sup>1</sup> usted un vaso de agua. 6. ¿No quiere usted una taza de café? 7. Sí; tráigame una taza de café con leche. 8. Tráigame también un cuchillo de mesa y un tenedor. 9. El viejo soldado tiene mucha hambre y mucha sed. 10. Leo todos los días en la Santa Biblia. 11. La casa blanca pertenece á Don Alejandro. 12. La blanca nieve es muy linda. 13. El señor Morales compró dos magníficos caballos negros. 14. Sus nuevos caballos son muy hermosos. 15. Mi vieja tía vivía en aquella casa verde. 16. Ahora vive en la casa amarilla. 17. La muchacha alemana tiene ojos azules. 18. La muchacha española tiene ojos negros. 19. El pobre hombre está muy enfermo y tiene que guardar cama. 20. Este muchacho italiano es muy pobre, pero es industrioso y quiere trabajar. 21. Compramos una mesa grande para la cocina. 22. El señor Martínez es un grande amigo de nuestra familia. 23. Mi primo tiene que ir á Málaga, y teniendo prisa quiere partir al instante. 24. Hay tres millas de aquí á la estación donde toma el tren. 25. Aunque tiene hambre, no quiere comer antes de llegar<sup>2</sup> á Málaga. 26. Ayer compró un billete directo en el despacho de billetes.

*B.* 1. Bring me a soup spoon and a table knife. 2. Bring me also a cup of black coffee and a teaspoon. 3. Tea cups are large, but coffee cups are small. 4. I sold my silver watch and bought a gold watch. 5. Bring me a wine glass. I wish a glass of wine. 6. Bring me a coffee cup. I wish a cup of coffee with milk. 7. The white house is covered with<sup>3</sup> the white snow. 8. Bring me the black ink and the blue paper. 9. Bring me also a small pen and blotting paper. 10. When I am hungry I eat a large apple and

take a glass of milk. 11. The little Mexican girl has black eyes. 12. I wish to buy four handsome black horses. 13. Handsome black horses are dear. 14. This white house is ugly. The white snow is beautiful. 15. The other day we bought two splendid black horses. 16. He is a great man; but he does not live in a large house. 17. He sold my silver knife and bought a gold spoon. 18. She got<sup>1</sup> a coffee cup and took a cup of coffee. 19. Have your cousins bought through tickets for<sup>2</sup> Malaga? 20. Yes; they were taking the train when we arrived at the station. 21. Being in a hurry, we passed through Peregrinos Street. 22. The station is in that street.

<sup>1</sup> 'bring me.'    <sup>2</sup> 'before arriving.'    <sup>3</sup> *está cubierta de.*    <sup>4</sup> *fué á buscar*  
lit., 'went to look for').    <sup>5</sup> *para.*

## LESSON XII

### 63. Indicative. Imperfect and Preterite.

Tener :

#### IMPERFECT TENSE

##### SINGULAR

1. *tenía*, I was having, *or* used to have.
2. *tenías*
3. *tenía*

##### PLURAL

1. *teníamos*
2. *teníais*
3. *tenían*

#### PRETERITE TENSE

##### SINGULAR

1. *tuve*, I had, *or* did have.
2. *tuviste*
3. *tuvo*

##### PLURAL

1. *tuvimos*
2. *tuvisteis*
3. *tuvieron*

Haber :

#### IMPERFECT TENSE

##### SINGULAR

1. *había*, I had.
2. *habías*
3. *había*

##### PLURAL

1. *habíamos*
2. *habíais*
3. *habían*

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. hube, I had.
2. hubiste
3. hubo

## PLURAL

1. hubimos
2. hubisteis
3. hubieron

Ser :

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. era, I was, *or* used to be.
2. eras
3. era

## PLURAL

1. éramos
2. erais
3. eran

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. fui, I was.
2. fuiste
3. fué

## PLURAL

1. fuimos
2. fuisteis
3. fueron

Estar :

## IMPERFECT TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. estaba, I was, *or* used to be.
2. estabas
3. estaba

## PLURAL

1. estábamos
2. estabais
3. estaban

## PRETERITE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. estuve, I was.
2. estuviste
3. estuvo

## PLURAL

1. estuvimos
2. estuvisteis
3. estuvieron

## 64. The Pluperfect and Preterite Perfect.

(1) The pluperfect tense is formed with the imperfect tense of haber.

Hablar :

## PLUPERFECT TENSE

1. había hablado, { I had spoken, *or*  
                              { had been speaking.
2. habías hablado
3. había hablado

1. habíamos hablado
2. habíais hablado
3. habían hablado

(2) The Preterite Perfect is formed with the preterite of **haber**: **hube hablado**, 'I had spoken,' etc. This tense is used only after expressions meaning 'as soon as,' 'after,' etc. In colloquial Spanish the preterite usually replaces the preterite perfect.

**luego que hube leído (or luego que leí) la carta, la devolví**, as soon as I had read the letter, I returned it.

Note also the following idiom:

**llegado que hubo á la costa**, as soon as he had arrived at the coast;  
**terminado que hubo su discurso**, as soon as he had finished his speech; etc.

*a.* **Había** also means 'there was,' 'there were,' or 'there used to be'; **hubo**, 'there was' or 'there were'; **había (hubo) habido**, 'there had been.'

## 65. Idiomatic Expressions.

- |                                                                            |                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (1) <b>hace</b> <sup>1</sup> <b>calor</b> , it is warm.                    | <b>hace frío</b> , it is cold.    |
| <b>hace mucho calor</b> , it is very warm.                                 | <b>hace fresco</b> , it is cool.  |
|                                                                            | <b>hace viento</b> , it is windy. |
| (2) <b>hay sol</b> (or <b>hace sol</b> ), it is sunny; the sun is shining. | <b>hay neblina</b> , it is foggy. |
|                                                                            | <b>hay polvo</b> , it is dusty.   |
| <b>hay luna</b> , the moon is shining.                                     | <b>hay lodo</b> , it is muddy.    |

Note that these expressions have to do with the state of the weather.

## Vocabulary

<b>asesinar</b> , (to) assassinate.	<b>descansar</b> , (to) rest.
<b>baúl</b> , <i>m.</i> , trunk.	<b>diez</b> , ten.
<b>bien de salud</b> , in good health.	<b>echar</b> , (to) throw, put.
<b>Bruto</b> , <i>m.</i> , Brutus.	<b>falta</b> , <i>f.</i> , lack, scarcity.
<b>buzón</b> , <i>m.</i> , letter box.	<b>feliz</b> , happy.
<b>carbón</b> , <i>m.</i> , coal.	<b>Godo</b> , <i>-a, m. and f.</i> , Goth.
<b>ciego</b> , <i>-a</i> , blind.	<b>hierro</b> , <i>m.</i> , iron.
<b>cómplice</b> , <i>m. and f.</i> , accomplice.	<b>huelga</b> , <i>f.</i> , strike.

<sup>1</sup> **hace** is Pres. Ind., 3d. sing., of the irregular verb **hacer**, 'to make': cf. § 246.



joven, <i>m. and f.</i> , young man, young woman.	redondo, -a, round.
junto, -a, together.	regalar, (to) present, give.
luna, <i>f.</i> , moon.	Romano, -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , Roman.
llover, <sup>1</sup> (to) rain.	salida, <i>f.</i> , rising.
maleta, <i>f.</i> , travelling-bag.	salir, <sup>2</sup> (to) go out.
nevar, <sup>1</sup> (to) snow.	sol, <i>m.</i> , sun.
ni . . . ni, neither . . . nor.	sordo, -a, deaf.
ocupado, -a, busy.	tierra, <i>f.</i> , earth.
	tomo, <i>m.</i> , volume.

<sup>1</sup> Radical-changing verb.

<sup>2</sup> Irregular verb: cf. § 252.

### Exercise XII

A. 1. El sol es redondo, y la tierra y la luna son también redondas. 2. Este niño es industrioso, pero no es cortés: aquella niña es industriosa y cortés. 3. Él está enfermo y triste: ella no está ni enferma ni triste. 4. Los jóvenes partieron alegres. Ahora viven felices. 5. Los Godos y los Romanos vivieron juntos en España. 6. Su padre era viejo, y su madre era ciega y sorda. 7. Ella era siempre buena con (*or*, para con) los pobres. 8. Cuando María estaba enferma, le<sup>1</sup> regalaban muchas flores. 9. Siempre era usted mi amiga, Señora. 10. ¿Quién llegó en el tren? — Era la señora (la esposa) de Don Alejandro. 11. Julio César fué asesinado por Bruto y sus cómplices. 12. Estuve diez años en Madrid, y estaba bien de salud. 13. Eran las cinco de la mañana cuando el tren llegó. 14. Creo que es rico. Creía que era rico. 15. Ya había leído yo la carta, cuando llegó mi hermano. 16. Luego que hubo escrito las cartas, las<sup>2</sup> echó al buzón. 17. Teníamos mucho frío á causa de la huelga y la falta de carbón. 18. Hace frío; el niño tiene frío; el agua está fría. 19. Hace calor; el niño tiene calor; el agua está caliente. 20. En el invierno, cuando hace mucho frío, no hay lodo. 21. Á la salida del sol hay mucha neblina.

*B.* 1. The sun is shining and it is warm. 2. The wind is blowing and it is snowing. 3. Bring me a large glass of water. I am very thirsty. 4. Bring me also some apples. I am hungry. 5. This man and this woman are tired and wish to rest. 6. Gold and silver are more costly than <sup>3</sup> iron. 7. The trunks and the travelling-bags were (*Imp. Ind.*) broken. 8. We have read the first and second volumes. <sup>4</sup> 9. They (*fem.*) lived happily <sup>5</sup> in Madrid for many years. <sup>6</sup> 10. John and his sister Mary were very ill. When they were ill, they did not go out on <sup>7</sup> the street. 11. It was six o'clock in the morning when my father called me. 12. The mother had been so <sup>8</sup> busy that <sup>9</sup> she had not had time to <sup>10</sup> mend the clothes. 13. As soon as the father had cut and split the wood, he brought it <sup>11</sup> into the house. 14. In Colorado it is warm in winter <sup>12</sup> when the sun shines. 15. When the sun is not shining and the wind is blowing, it is very cold. 16. It is usually warm when it is raining or when it is foggy. 17. It is so <sup>12</sup> windy and so <sup>12</sup> cold this week that everybody is catching cold. <sup>14</sup> 18. When I am very cold, I do not wish to drink very cold water. 19. My cousin's wife was very sleepy, and she wished to rest a little in the train.

<sup>1</sup> 'her.' <sup>2</sup> 'them.' <sup>3</sup> *más costosos* (*costosas* <sup>8</sup>) *que*. <sup>4</sup> Say: 'the volumes first and second.' <sup>5</sup> Say: 'happy.' <sup>6</sup> Say: 'many years in Madrid' (do not translate 'for'). <sup>7</sup> *d.* <sup>8</sup> *tan*. <sup>9</sup> *que*. <sup>10</sup> *de* or *para*. <sup>11</sup> *la trajo*. <sup>12</sup> *tanto*. <sup>13</sup> *el invierno*. <sup>14</sup> *un resfriado*.

## LESSON XIII

**66. Apocopation of Adjectives.** — The following adjectives lose the final *o* of the masculine singular when they precede their noun :

bueno, good.

malo, bad.

uno,<sup>1</sup> one, an or a.

alguno, some.

ninguno, no, none.

primero, first.

tercero, third.

postrero,<sup>2</sup> last.

<sup>1</sup> The numeral *uno* and the indefinite article are the same word.

<sup>2</sup> *Postrero* is little used; 'last' is usually *último* (but 'last month,' for instance, is *el mes pasado*).

**un buen hombre**, a good man.

**mal café**, bad coffee.

**algún día**, some day.

**el primer tomo**, the first volume.

*a.* If **bueno** and **malo** are separated from their noun, they retain the final *o*: **mi bueno y cariñoso padre**, 'my good and affectionate father.'

**67. Grande**, used in the sense of 'grand' or 'great,' usually becomes **gran** before a singular noun of either gender. •

**un gran presidente**, a great president.      **una gran cosa**, a grand affair.

*a.* Before a noun beginning with a vowel, or when the adjective is emphatic, the full form is sometimes used.

**un grande acto de caridad**, a grand act of charity.

**un grande sacrificio**, a *great* sacrifice.

*b.* When **grande** means 'large' or 'big,' it follows its noun.

**un muchacho grande**, a big boy.

**una casa grande**, a large house.

**68. Santo**, 'saint,' 'holy,' usually becomes **san** before the masculine name of a saint. The full form remains before a name beginning with **To-** or **Do-**.

**San Pablo**, Saint Paul.

**Santo Tomás**, Saint Thomas.

**San Pedro**, Saint Peter.

But the name of the island

**Santo Domingo**, Saint Dominick.

is **San Tomás**.

• Otherwise the full form is used.

**Santa Ana**, Saint Anne.

**un hombre santo**, a holy man.

**69. Ciento**, 'one hundred,' becomes **cien** before the noun it modifies, even if an adjective intervenes.

**cien soldados**, one hundred soldiers.

**cien hermosos caballos**, one hundred handsome horses.

**cien mil pesos**, one hundred thousand dollars.

But the full form **ciento** is required in forming numerical expressions above one hundred (except **cien mil**, **cien millones**, etc.).

**ciento y diez**, one hundred and ten.

**ciento veinte y cinco**, one hundred and twenty-five.

**70. Numerals.** — Learn the Cardinal Numerals, § 168; and the Ordinal Numerals from 'first' to 'twelfth,' § 169.

### Exercise XIII

A. 1. Las manzanas grandes cuestan diez centavos la docena. 2. Las pequeñas cuestan sólo cinco centavos la docena. 3. Las buenas naranjas de la Florida cuestan 30 centavos la docena. 4. Yo tengo 10 naranjas y tú tienes 15. ¿Cuántas tenemos? 5. 10 y 15 son 25. 6. El año tiene 12 meses y 365 días. 7. El mes tiene desde 28 hasta 31 días. 8. La semana tiene 7 días. 9. El día tiene 24 horas. 10. Cada hora tiene 60 minutos. 11. Cada minuto tiene 60 segundos. 12. ¿Cuántos segundos hay en una hora? 13. ¿Cuántas horas hay en una semana? 14. Los meses siguientes tienen 31 días: enero, marzo, mayo, julio, agosto, octubre, y diciembre. 15. Los meses que tienen sólo 30 días son: abril, junio, se(p)tiembre, y noviembre. 16. El mes de febrero tiene generalmente sólo 28 días. 17. En el año bisiesto el mes de febrero tiene 29 días. 18. Los días de la semana son: domingo, lunes, martes, miércoles, jueves, viernes y sábado. 19. El domingo es día de descanso. 20. Los demás días son días de trabajo. 21. Un niño estudia, y uno no estudia. 22. Tengo uno ó dos limones y una ó dos naranjas. 23. Un hombre grande no es siempre un gran hombre.

(In this exercise write out all numerals in full.)

B. 1. We do not work Sundays.<sup>1</sup> 2. Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays we have lessons in <sup>2</sup> English, Spanish, and mathematics. 3. Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Saturdays we have lessons in Latin, Greek, and philosophy. 4. The months of <sup>3</sup> Spring are: March, April, and May. 5. How many days are there in <sup>3</sup> Spring? 6. The months of <sup>3</sup> Summer are: June, July, and August. 7. The months of <sup>3</sup> Autumn (Fall) are: September, October, and November. 8. And the months of <sup>3</sup> Winter are: December, January, and Feb-

ruary. 9. January is the first month of the year. 10. December is the last month. 11. February has only twenty-eight or twenty-nine days. 12. In<sup>3</sup> leap year it has twenty-nine days. 13. Mr. Martinez used to sell oranges at ten cents a dozen. 14. Now he sells oranges at from twenty to thirty cents a dozen. 15. And his oranges are not good. 16. They are not sweet and they are too small. 17. If John had twelve books and Mary had thirteen, how many did they have? 18. Twelve and thirteen are twenty-five. 19. How many days has January? 20. How many minutes are there in a day? 21. My good grandfather, my good and kind father, and my dear mother have just arrived.<sup>4</sup> 22. The enemy lost one<sup>5</sup> hundred horses, one<sup>5</sup> hundred and twenty-one mules, and one<sup>5</sup> hundred thousand rifles. 23. We used-to-have good neighbors when we were in Mexico. 24. When (= as soon as) they had sold the books, they bought a copy of the Holy Bible. 25. The boy's cap and coat were soiled: he had fallen<sup>6</sup> into the mud of the street.

<sup>1</sup> *los domingos* (why Def. Art.?). <sup>2</sup> *de*. <sup>3</sup> Use Def. Art. <sup>4</sup> *acaban de llegar*. <sup>5</sup> Omit. <sup>6</sup> *se había caído*.

## LESSON XIV

71. Indicative. Future and Conditional.<sup>1</sup>

## Hablar:

## FUTURE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **hablaré**, I shall speak, *or* shall be speaking.
2. **hablarás**
3. **hablará**

## PLURAL

1. **hablaremos**
2. **hablaréis**
3. **hablarán**

<sup>1</sup> The Spanish indicative future tense is formed by postfixing to the infinitive the indicative present tense of **haber**, the conditional by postfixing the imperfect tense.

<b>hablar(h)é</b>	<b>hablar(h)emos</b>	<b>hablar(hab)ía</b>	<b>hablar(hab)íamos</b>
<b>hablar(h)ás</b>	<b>hablar(hab)éis</b>	<b>hablar(hab)ías</b>	<b>hablar(hab)áis</b>
<b>hablar(h)á</b>	<b>hablar(h)án</b>	<b>hablar(hab)ía</b>	<b>hablar(hab)ían</b>

Note the disappearance of **hab-**.

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>hablaría</b> , I should speak, <i>or</i> should be speaking.	1. <b>hablaríamos</b>
2. <b>hablarías</b>	2. <b>hablaríais</b>
3. <b>hablaría</b>	3. <b>hablarían</b>

## Temer :

## FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>temeré</b> , I shall fear, <i>or</i> shall be fearing.	1. <b>temeremos</b>
2. <b>temerás</b>	2. <b>temeréis</b>
3. <b>temerá</b>	3. <b>temerán</b>

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>temería</b> , I should fear, <i>or</i> should be fearing.	1. <b>temeríamos</b>
2. <b>temerías</b>	2. <b>temeríais</b>
3. <b>temería</b>	3. <b>temerían</b>

## Vivir :

## FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>viviré</b> , I shall live, <i>or</i> shall be living.	1. <b>viviremos</b>
2. <b>vivirás</b>	2. <b>viviréis</b>
3. <b>vivirá</b>	3. <b>vivirán</b>

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>viviría</b> , I should live, <i>or</i> should be living.	1. <b>viviríamos</b>
2. <b>vivirías</b>	2. <b>viviríais</b>
3. <b>viviría</b>	3. <b>vivirían</b>

a. The English auxiliary verb 'will' may denote *future time*, as in 'he will go tomorrow,' or it may express *willingness*, as in 'I will go if you wish.' When 'will' means 'to be willing,' it is generally to be translated into Spanish by the proper form of **querer**: ¿quiere usted venir con nosotros? 'will you come with us?' **compraré la casa si quieres venderla**, 'I shall buy the house if you will sell it.'

b. The auxiliary verb 'should' may be merely conditional, as in 'I should speak if I knew what to say,' or it may mean 'ought to,' as in 'I realize that I should (= ought to) speak, but I do not wish to do so.' When 'should' means 'ought to,' it is usually expressed in Spanish by the proper form of **deber**: **yo debo (debiera) hablar**, 'I should, *or* ought to, speak.'

## 72. Idiomatic Expressions.

**es temprano**, it is early.

**es tarde**, it is late.

**á la una**,<sup>1</sup> at one o'clock.

**á las dos**, at two o'clock.

**á las tres y media**, at half-past three.

**á las cuatro y cuarto**, at a quarter-past four.

**á las cinco menos cuarto**, at a quarter to five.

**á las seis y diez (minutos)**, at ten minutes past six.

**á las siete de la mañana**, at seven o'clock in the morning.

**á las dos de la tarde**, at two o'clock in the afternoon.

**es la una**, it is one o'clock.

**son las nueve**, it is nine o'clock.

**¿qué hora es?** what time is it? what o'clock is it?

**en ocho días**, in a week.

**hace quince días**, two weeks (a fortnight) ago.

**el primero de enero**, the first of January.

**el dos (tres, cuatro, etc.) de febrero**, the second (third, fourth, etc.) of February.

Note that, except the first, the cardinal numbers are used to denote the days of the month.

73. In order to denote an act or state that continues from one period into another, the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses are used in Spanish; while in English the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses are used. Ex.:

**hace quince años que vivimos en Madrid**, we have been living in Madrid for fifteen years.

**hacía seis meses que vivíamos en Madrid**, we had been living in Madrid for six months.

**hará<sup>2</sup> un año que viviremos en Madrid**, we shall have been living in Madrid for a year.

**mucho tiempo ha que vivimos en Madrid**, we have been living in Madrid for a long time.

**desde entonces vivíamos en Madrid**,  
we had been living in Madrid  
since then.

Compare these sentences with the following:

<sup>1</sup> After **la una** and **media**, **hora** is understood; after **las dos**, **las tres**, etc., **horas** is understood. **Cuarto** is a noun.

<sup>2</sup> Future indicative of **hacer**: cf. § 246.



**hace un mes que partieron**, it is a month since they left, *or* they left a month ago.

**hacía ocho días que habían partido**, it was a week since they had left.

**hará un año que partieron**, it will be a year since they left.

**poco ha que partieron**, they left a little while ago.

**hace ocho días que no he fumado**, it is a week since I have smoked, *or* I have not smoked for a week.

**hacía diez años que no había fumado**, it was ten years since I had smoked, *or* I had not smoked for ten years.

**desde entonces no he fumado**, I have not smoked since then.

*a.* In expressions of time **ha** (sometimes written **há**) is generally used as an impersonal verb instead of **hay**; but **hace** is used much oftener than **ha**. As a rule, **ha** follows and **hace** precedes the noun (or adjective) denoting time. **Ha** is generally used in indefinite expressions of time, as **poco ha**, 'a short time ago'; while **hace** is more correct in definite expressions, as **hace ocho días**, 'a week ago'.

#### Exercise XIV

*A.* 1. La reina partió antes de ayer. El rey partirá pasado mañana. 2. Esta noche dormiré aquí, y partiré mañana. 3. Dijo<sup>1</sup> que dormiría aquí esta noche y partiría mañana. 4. Me escriben que volverán pronto. Me escribieron que volverían pronto. 5. ¿Supongo<sup>2</sup> que el señor García no tardará en volver á casa? 6. Poco ha que partió, y volverá dentro de media hora. 7. ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que usted vive aquí? — Hace tres meses. 8. ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que estudias el español? — Hace sólo quince días. 9. Hace dos días que no la veo.<sup>3</sup> — Yo la ví<sup>4</sup> hace dos horas. 10. Mi vida desde hace algunos días es una lucha constante. 11. No hemos recibido cartas desde que estamos en Sevilla. 12. Hacía ocho días que mi hermano y yo estábamos en Sevilla cuando mi padre llegó. 13. ¿Desde cuándo está su amigo en Toledo? 14. Desde hace dos años, y tiene la intención de quedar allí. 15. Hace ocho días que estoy en Málaga.

— Hace ocho días que no he estado en Málaga. 16. Desde entonces no he fumado. — Desde entonces fumo todos los días. 17. Desde aquella noche no he vuelto<sup>5</sup> á su casa. — Desde aquella noche vuelvo á su casa todos los días. 18. Mi reloj está parado. ¿Qué hora es en : 1 : 19. Tengo las diez y veinte ; pero mi reloj no anda bien : adelanta. — Mi reloj atrasa. 20. Cristóbal Colón descubrió la América el 12 de octubre de 1492. 21. La carta empieza así : “ Madrid, 21 de enero de 1904.” 22. ¿Cuándo es tu cumpleaños (día de cumpleaños) ? — El 17 de marzo. 23. ¿Cuándo es el día de tu santo<sup>6</sup> ? 24. Mi nombre de bautismo es Silvestre, y resulta que mis días son el 31 de diciembre. 25. Los días de Jacinto son el 11 de setiembre.

B. 1. Will you (*fam., sing.*) sell your horse? 2. I will sell the horse if you (*fam., sing.*) will pay five hundred American dollars for him.<sup>7</sup> 3. I shall pay five hundred dollars for the horse tomorrow.<sup>8</sup> 4. I should pay one thousand dollars for that horse if you asked it.<sup>9</sup> 5. What time is it by your (*fam., sing.*) watch? It is half-past one. 6. By my watch it is a quarter to two; but my watch is fast. 7. The father used-to-call his children at quarter-past five in the morning. 8. He calls them<sup>10</sup> now at ten minutes to six. 9. Will it be long before your (*fam., sing.*) brother returns<sup>11</sup> to Madrid? He will return in a week. 10. They left for<sup>12</sup> Paris a month ago, and they have not arrived yet. 11. It will be a month tomorrow since they left. 12. I wrote to my friend two days ago. 13. I am fifty-five years old, and I have lived in this house fifty-one years. 14. Since then I have written daily to my mother; but I have not written to my father. 15. He had spoken Spanish for many years; but he had not learned to<sup>13</sup> speak it<sup>13</sup> well. 16. How long had you (*form., pl.*) been in Malaga when I arrived? Only two weeks. 17. Have you (*fam., pl.*) not received a letter from your mother since you have been in Spain? 18. No, sir; we have written to our mother every day since we have been here; but we have not received letters from her.<sup>14</sup> 19. My birthday is the 28th of June, and my saint's day is the first of May.

20. If the owner will sell the horse, I shall buy it.<sup>15</sup> 21. He said that if the owner would<sup>16</sup> sell the horse, he should buy it. 22. He should write his Spanish exercises instead of playing<sup>17</sup> ball: but he prefers to play ball.

1 'he said.' 2 Pres. Ind., 1st pers. sing., of *suponer*, 'to suppose.' 3 Pres. Ind. of *ver*, 'to see.' 4 Pret. of *ver*. 5 Past Part. of *volver*, 'to return.' 6 In Spain and Spanish America, the day of the saint after whom one is named is celebrated much oftener than one's birthday. 'My saint's day' is *el día de mi santo*, or *mís días*. 7 *por él*. 8 Place *mañana* first in the sentence. 9 *si lo pidieras*. 10 *los* (placed before the verb). 11 Say: 'will your brother be slow (*tardará*) in returning?' (Infin.). 12 *para*. 13 *a hablarlo*. 14 *ella*. 15 *lo* (placed before the verb). 16 Use *queria* (Imp. Ind. of *querer*). 17 Use Infinitive.

## LESSON XV

**74. Comparison.** — Spanish adjectives form their comparative by prefixing **más**, 'more,' to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

rico, más rico, el más rico,	} rich, richer, richest.
rica, más rica, la más rica,	
ricos, más ricos, los más ricos,	
ricas, más ricas, las más ricas,	

*a.* A possessive adjective may be used instead of the article, to form the superlative: **su amigo más rico**, 'his richest friend.'

*b.* The article or the possessive adjective precedes the noun when the superlative adjective follows it: **la flor más hermosa**, 'the most beautiful flower.'

*c.* When several comparatives or superlatives modify the same word, **más** (or **el más**, **la más**, etc.) is placed before the first and omitted before the others: **el árbol más alto y viejo**, 'the tallest and oldest tree.'

*d.* Correlative 'the . . . the,' followed by comparatives, is expressed in Spanish by **cuanto . . . tanto**,<sup>1</sup> or by **mientras . . .** —: **cuanto más dinero**

<sup>1</sup> The **tanto** may sometimes be omitted, as in **cuanto más tiene, más quiere**, 'the more he has, the more he wants.'

**gana, tanto más gasta**, 'the more money he earns, the more he spends'; **cuanto más viejo es el vino, tanto más vale**, 'the older the wine is, the more it is worth'; **mientras más tiene, más quiere**, 'the more he has, the more he wants.'

e. The English preposition 'in' after a superlative is usually expressed in Spanish by **de**: **el río más largo del mundo**, 'the longest river in the world.'

f. The article is omitted before a superlative adjective in the predicate when its noun is compared with itself: **esta mujer sonríe cuando está más triste**, 'this woman smiles when she is saddest.'

g. When the noun is in apposition, both the article and the superlative follow the noun: **Nueva York, ciudad la más opulenta de los Estados Unidos**, 'New York, the wealthiest city in the United States.'

h. When there is no real comparison, 'most' is usually expressed by **muy**, or the suffix **-ísimo**: **es muy útil**, or **utilísimo**, 'it is most useful.'

**75. (1)** The adjectives **bueno** and **malo** are irregularly compared.

**bueno, mejor, el mejor**, good, better, best.

**malo, peor, el peor**, bad, worse, worst.

The regular comparative forms **más bueno** and **más malo** are sometimes used.

(2) **Grande** and **pequeño**, while usually compared regularly, have also the irregular comparative forms **mayor** and **menor**. When applied to persons, **mayor** means 'older,' and **menor**, 'younger.' **Más grande** and **más pequeño** are preferred for the literal and physical use.

**Juan es más grande que Pedro**, John is taller than Peter.

**Juan es mayor que Pedro**, John is older than Peter.

(3) **Mucho** and **poco** are compared irregularly, and in the superlative they are used only in the neuter singular and in the plural.

**mucho, más, lo (los, las) más**, much (many), more, most.

**poco, menos, lo (los, las) menos**, little (few), less, least.

las más noches, or las más de las noches, most nights.

lo menos que he perdido, the least that I have lost.

en vano buscan los más el bien que gozan los menos, in vain do the many seek for the happiness which the few enjoy.

*α.* 'Most,' used with a noun, is usually best expressed by **la mayor parte de**: **la mayor parte de mis amigos**, 'most of my friends' (lit., 'the greater part of my friends').

**76.** Spanish adverbs form both their comparative and superlative by prefixing **más** to the positive. There is usually no difference in form between the comparative and the superlative.

despacio, slowly.

**más despacio**, more (*or* most) slowly.

*α.* The neuter article **lo** is often prefixed to a superlative adverb when it is followed by a word or clause expressing *possibility*.

**lo más pronto posible**, the soonest possible, *or* as soon as possible.

**lo más pronto que pudo**, as soon as he could.

**77.** The following adverbs are compared irregularly :

**bien, mejor**, well, better *or* best.

**mal, peor**, badly, worse *or* worst.

**mucho, más**, much (a great deal), more *or* most.

**poco, menos**, little, less *or* least.

*α.* **Más bien** means 'rather': **está cansado más bien que enfermo**, 'he is tired rather than ill.'

**78.** **Than** is usually expressed in Spanish by **que**.

**él es más alto que usted**, he is taller than you.

**tiene más libros que dinero**, he has more books than money.

*α.* Before a numeral, 'more than' and 'less than,' meaning 'a greater number than' and 'a smaller number than,' are expressed by **más de** and **menos de**: **hay más de cinco**, 'there are more than five'; **tiene menos de veinte años**, 'he is less than twenty years old'; but **el caballo es más fuerte que cinco hombres**, 'a horse is stronger than five men,' since **más** does not here mean 'a greater number.'

*b.* **No más . . . que** usually means 'only.' Compare:

**no gastaron más de cien pesos**, they did not spend more than one hundred dollars.

**no gastaron más que cien pesos**, they spent only one hundred dollars.

*c.* Before a clause, 'than' is usually expressed by **del** (= **de + el**) **que**, and its declined forms, **de la que**, **de los que**, **de las que**, when the comparison is with a noun (expressed or understood) of the main clause; or by **de lo que** when the comparison is with a statement or idea.

**me ha dado más dinero del que le presté**, he has given me more money than (that which) I lent him.

**tiene más libros de los que tenía**, he has more books than (those which) he had.

**es más rico de lo que crees**, he is richer than (what) you believe.

*d.* But, if the action of one verb is compared with that of another, 'than' before a clause is **que**: **habla más que trabaja**, he talks more than he works.

**79. Tan . . . como = as . . . as, or so . . . as.**

**Tanto (-a) . . . como = as much . . . as, or so much . . . as.**

**Tantos (-as) . . . como = as many . . . as, or so many . . . as.**

**tan blanco como la nieve**, as white as snow.

**tanto oro como plata**, as much gold as silver.

**no tiene tanta plata como oro**, he hasn't so much silver as gold.

**tantas manzanas como peras**, as many apples as pears.

### Exercise XV

- A.* 1. Tú eres mayor que él, pero él es el más alto.  
 2. Sí; él es más alto de lo que yo creía. 3. Juan dijo<sup>1</sup> que cuanto más gastaba, tanto más tenía.  
 4. La verdad es que cuanto más tenía, más gastaba.  
 5. Ya ha gastado la mayor parte de su fortuna. 6. Yo tengo tres hermosos perros.  
 7. Don Jorge tenía cinco perros el año pasado.  
 8. En este momento Don Jorge tiene más perros que yo.  
 9. Pero tiene menos de los que tenía el año pasado.

¿Cuántos tiene? 10. ¿Cuántos años tiene su señor padre?  
 11. Tiene 75 años, — 45 más que yo. 12. He escrito<sup>2</sup> lo  
 más de prisa posible. 13. Pero no he tenido tiempo de acabar  
 la carta. 14. ¿Está usted cansada, señora? 15. Estoy  
 enferma más bien que cansada. 16. Ella pesa más que él,  
 y él pesa más de cien libras. 17. El caballo es el animal  
 más útil, y el perro es el animal más fiel. 18. El oro vale  
 más que el hierro, pero el hierro es el más útil. 19. La  
 muchacha más linda de la ciudad se casó con<sup>3</sup> el joven más  
 feo. 20. El mayor mal de los males es tratar con animales  
 (refrán español). 21. Costaba más trabajo de lo que parecía ;  
 pero de lo peor ha sucedido lo mejor. 22. La vaca da más  
 leche de la que daba el año pasado. 23. Tenemos menos  
 criados de los que teníamos cuando usted nos visitó.<sup>4</sup> 24. Él  
 no sufre tanto como usted cree : no sufre tanto como ella.

B. 1. You (*fam., sing.*) are the best friend in the world.  
 2. No, I am not the best friend in the world. 3. I am the  
 best friend that you have or have had. 4. He has more friends  
 than I. 5. I have more books than he. 6. And my books  
 are, and have always been, my best friends. 7. This house is  
 larger than that house, but that house is the higher. 8. He is  
 older than I, but not so old as my brother. 9. He is richer and<sup>9</sup>  
 more independent than you (*form., sing.*), but he is not so happy.  
 10. The more he works, the more he has ; and the more he has, the  
 more he spends. 11. London is the largest and the wealthiest  
 city in the world, but it is not the most beautiful. 12. She is older  
 than I, but I am taller than she. 13. He is the most unfortunate  
 man that I know<sup>5</sup> ; he has lost most of the money that he earned last  
 month. 14. He is writing more slowly than you (*form., sing.*),  
 but he is writing as fast as he can.<sup>6</sup> 15. The firm of Gonzales<sup>10</sup>  
 Brothers has more employés than the firm of Herrera and Com-  
 pany. 16. Gonzales Brothers employ more than two hundred men.  
 17. Herrera and Company do not employ more than one hundred.  
 18. But the firm of Gonzales Brothers has less employés this year  
 than it had last year. 19. He lent me<sup>7</sup> five dollars more than I



asked-for. 20. But he did not lend me so much as I wished.  
 21. I have more than seven cents and less than nine. How many  
 have I? 22. It is colder outdoors than I thought.<sup>8</sup> 23. But it  
 is not so cold today as yesterday.

<sup>1</sup> Pret. of *decir*.    <sup>2</sup> Past part. of *escribir*.    <sup>3</sup> 'married.'    <sup>4</sup> 'visited us.'  
<sup>5</sup> *que conozco*.    <sup>6</sup> *puede*.    <sup>7</sup> *me* (before the verb).    <sup>8</sup> *creía*.    <sup>9</sup> *é* (if *más*  
 is not repeated): cf. § 188.    <sup>10</sup> *González*.

## LESSON XVI

**80. Adjectives used Substantively.** — In English, adjectives are sometimes used substantively; as, 'the old and the young.' This construction is commoner in Spanish than in English. If a noun is understood, the adjective takes the gender and number of the noun it represents. 'One,' or 'ones,' after the English adjective, is usually not to be translated into Spanish.

los ricos y los pobres, the rich	prefiero el caballo negro al blanco,
and the poor.	I prefer the black horse to the
el viejo, the old man.	white one.

*a.* If the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color or as an abstract noun, it requires the article **lo**. See § 54.

**81. The Plural Number.** — (1) The masculine plural form of adjectives and pronouns may denote male and female beings considered collectively.

los viejos, the old men and the old women, *or* the old man and the old woman, *or simply* the old men.  
 ellos tienen miedo, they are afraid (referring to men and women, or to a man and a woman, or to men alone).

The plural of most nouns denoting male beings may be used in the same way.

**los hermanos**, the brothers and sisters, *or* the brother and the sister, *or* the brothers.

**los padres**, the fathers and mothers, *or* the father and the mother (= the parents), *or* the fathers.

(2) In treating collectively of a number of persons or things, a singular noun is generally used in Spanish to denote something that belongs to every member of a group if, in the case of each member, but one object of the kind is concerned.

**los niños se lavaron la cara y las manos**, the children washed their faces and hands.

**todos los discípulos levantaron la mano**, all the pupils raised their hands (*i.e.* each raised one of his two hands).

(3) Abstract nouns are frequently used in the plural in a concrete sense.

**terneza**, tenderness.

**ternezas**, tender words *or* deeds.

## 82. Indicative. Future and Conditional.

### Tener :

#### FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>tendré</b> , I shall have, <i>or</i> shall be having.	1. <b>tendremos</b>
2. <b>tendrás</b>	2. <b>tendréis</b>
3. <b>tendrá</b>	3. <b>tendrán</b>

#### CONDITIONAL TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>tendría</b> , I should have, <i>or</i> should be having.	1. <b>tendríamos</b>
2. <b>tendrías</b>	2. <b>tendríais</b>
3. <b>tendría</b>	3. <b>tendrían</b>

### Haber :

#### FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>habré</b> , I shall have.	1. <b>habremos</b>
2. <b>habrás</b>	2. <b>habréis</b>
3. <b>habrá</b>	3. <b>habrán</b>

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **habría**, I should have.
2. **habrías**
3. **habría**

## PLURAL

1. **habríamos**
2. **habríais**
3. **habrían**

Ser :

## FUTURE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **seré**, I shall be.
2. **serás**
3. **será**

## PLURAL

1. **seremos**
2. **seréis**
3. **serán**

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **sería**, I should be.
2. **serías**
3. **sería**

## PLURAL

1. **seríamos**
2. **seríais**
3. **serían**

Estar :

## FUTURE TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **estaré**, I shall be.
2. **estarás**
3. **estará**

## PLURAL

1. **estaremos**
2. **estaréis**
3. **estarán**

## CONDITIONAL TENSE

## SINGULAR

1. **estaría**, I should be.
2. **estarias**
3. **estaría**

## PLURAL

1. **estaríamos**
2. **estaríais**
3. **estarían**

## 83. Indicative. Future Perfect.

Hablar :

I shall have spoken, *or* I shall have been speaking.

## SINGULAR

1. **habré hablado**
2. **habrás hablado**
3. **habrá hablado**

## PLURAL

1. **habremos hablado**
2. **habréis hablado**
3. **habrán hablado**

*a.* **Habrá** also means, 'there will be'; **habrá habido**, 'there will have been.'

**84.** The future may be used instead of the present, and the conditional instead of the imperfect, to denote probability or conjecture.

¿qué hora es? — *serán las once.* ‘what time is it? it is probably (about) eleven o’clock.’

¿qué hora era? — *serían las doce.* ‘what time was it? it was probably (about) twelve o’clock.’

*a.* Similarly the future perfect may be used instead of the perfect: ¿quién ha abierto la puerta? — *habrá sido José.* ‘who opened the door? it was probably Joseph.’

### Exercise XVI

*A.* 1. ¿Prefiere usted la casa blanca á la amarilla? 2. Sí, señor; prefiero la blanca á la amarilla. 3. Los ricos viven bien: los pobres sufren. 4. Un viejo y una vieja han entrado aquí, y quieren hablar á usted. 5. ¿Cuántos hijos tiene usted, señora? 6. Tengo tres, dos hijos varones y una hija. 7. ¿Cuántos gatitos tiene la gata? 8. Tiene cinco, dos machos y tres hembras. 9. Alfredo tiene cuatro abuelos, los dos padres de su papá y los dos padres de su mamá. 10. ¿Á quién tendré por compañero? — Á mí,<sup>1</sup> que seré siempre tu amigo. 11. ¿Quién llama á la puerta? — Probablemente será el médico. 12. ¿Cuántos años tiene el niño? — Tendrá unos<sup>2</sup> diez años. 13. ¿Cuántos años tenía el muchacho cuando murió? — Tendría unos diez y seis años. 14. No dudo que será rico. 15. ¡Habrà desgracia mayor para un joven de talento! 16. ¿Qué hora era cuando partió? — Serían las once de la noche. / 17. Serían las cuatro de la tarde cuando oímos un gran ruido por<sup>3</sup> la calle. 18. Serían las diez de la mañana cuando llegó el general. 19. Parecía un hombre que tendría unos cincuenta años. 20. ¿Cuánto perdió? — Perdería más de mil pesos. 21. Juan es muy bobo: dice que cuanto más estudia, tanto menos sabe, y cuanto menos estudia, tanto más sabe. 22. ¿Á qué distancia de aquí está la casa

de usted? — Á una manzana (cuadra) y media. 23. No es tan lejos como yo creía. 24. Miguel Cervantes, autor inmortal de "Don Quijote de la Mancha," era, es, y será uno de los autores más célebres de España. 25. Cervantes nació á mediados del siglo diez y seis, y murió á principios del siglo diez y siete.

B. 1. God loves the old (*pl.*) and the young, the large and the small, the good and the bad. 2. The red book is prettier than the black one. 3. The black one is more interesting than the red one. 4. Alfred lives with his parents, his grandparents, and his brothers-and-sisters. 5. He has three grandparents, the father-and-mother of his father and his mother's mother. 6. He has four brothers-and-sisters, two brothers and two sisters. 7. Now that I am a man, I have more friends and more enemies than I had when I was a boy. 8. I haven't so much money nor so many friends as you (*form., sing.*); but I have more books than you have. 9. Asia is the largest continent, and Australia is the largest island, in the world. 10. North America is twice as large as<sup>4</sup> Europe. 11. He has more influence than he had five years ago. 12. You (*fam., sing.*) were, are, and always will be<sup>5</sup> my best friend. 13. What o'clock is it? It-is-probably-about four o'clock. 14. What time was it when you returned home?<sup>6</sup> It-was-probably-about ten o'clock at night. 15. How old is he? I-should-say-that-he-is-probably-about fifteen years old. 16. How old was he when he came<sup>7</sup> to this country? He was-about six years old. 17. This parrot will live perhaps one hundred years; but we shall not live so long a time.<sup>8</sup> 18. There are one hundred and seventy-five pages in this book. 19. I have read as-far-as the eighty-ninth page.<sup>9</sup> 20. The horse is more useful than the dog; but the dog is the most faithful of all animals.<sup>10</sup> 21. I do not suffer more than you (*fam., sing.*); but I suffer more than I used-to-suffer. 22. The Mexican dollar has one hundred cents; the Spanish peseta has one hundred centimes. 23. The Mexican dollar is worth two and a half Spanish pesetas, or the half of an American dollar.<sup>11</sup>

1 'me.' 2 'some.' 3 'in.' 4 Say: 'is two times (*veces*) larger than.'  
 5 Say: 'will be always.' 6 *d casa.* 7 *vino.* 8 Say: 'so much time.'  
 9 Say: 'the page eighty-nine.' 10 Say: 'of all the animals.' 11 Say: 'or half dollar American.'

## LESSON XVII

## 85. Imperative Mood.

	Hablar	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. habla		2. hablad
	Temer	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. teme		2. temed
	Vivir	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. vive		2. vivid

With **habla**, **teme**, and **vive**, **tú** is understood; while **vosotros** (-as) is understood with **hablad**, **temed**, and **vivid**.

86. The imperative mood is limited to the second person singular and plural. It is also limited to *positive* commands or entreaties. See § 87, *a*.

*a*. The final -d of the plural imperative is lost before the object-pronoun **os**, 'you, yourselves' (cf. § 89): **preparaos** (for **preparad-os**), 'prepare yourselves;' except in *idos*, 'go away,' from *irse*, 'to go away.'

## 87. Subjunctive Present Tense.

	Hablar	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. hable		1. hablemos
2. hables		2. habléis
3. hable		3. hablen
	Temer	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. tema		1. temamos
2. temas		2. temáis
3. tema		3. teman
	Vivir	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. viva		1. vivamos
2. vivas		2. viváis
3. viva		3. vivan

The present subjunctive is often used in Spanish to express command or entreaty.

**hable él**, let him speak.      **hablemos**, let us speak.  
**hable ella**, let her speak.      **que Juan hable**, let John speak.

Note that the present subjunctive in these expressions is usually to be translated into English by 'let' and the infinitive ; but when used with **usted** (or **ustedes**), it is translated by the imperative.

**hable usted**, speak.      **abra usted la puerta**, open the door.

*a.* In the second person, singular and plural, the present subjunctive is used to express a negative command or entreaty, while in a positive command or entreaty the imperative is used; thus:

**habla**, or **hablad**, speak.      **no hables**, or **no habléis**, do not speak.

*b.* The final **-s** of the first person plural of the present subjunctive is omitted before the object-pronoun **nos**, 'us,' 'ourselves': **sentémonos** (for **sentemos-nos**), 'let us seat ourselves.'

## 88. Radical-changing Verbs.

### Imperative :

#### FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

##### Temblar

SINGULAR

2. **tiembla**

PLURAL

2. **temblad**

##### Perder

SINGULAR

2. **pierde**

PLURAL

2. **perded**

##### Contar

SINGULAR

2. **cuenta**

PLURAL

2. **contad**

##### Volver

SINGULAR

2. **vuelve**

PLURAL

2. **volved**



## THIRD CONJUGATION

## Sentir

## SINGULAR

2. siente

## PLURAL

2. sentid

## Pedir

## SINGULAR

2. pide

## PLURAL

2. pedid

## Dormir

## SINGULAR

2. duerme

## PLURAL

2. dormid

## Present Subjunctive :

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

## Temblar

## SINGULAR

1. tiemble
2. tiembles
3. tiemble

## PLURAL

1. temblemos
2. tembléis
3. tiemblen

## Perder

## SINGULAR

1. pierda
2. pierdas
3. pierda

## PLURAL

1. perdamos
2. perdáis
3. pierdan

## Contar

## SINGULAR

1. cuente
2. cuentes
3. cuente

## PLURAL

1. contemos
2. contéis
3. cuenten

## Volver

## SINGULAR

1. vuelva
2. vuelvas
3. vuelva

## PLURAL

1. volvamos
2. volváis
3. vuelvan

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## Sentir

## SINGULAR

1. sienta
2. sientas
3. sienta

## PLURAL

1. sintamos
2. sintáis
3. sientan

## Pedir

## SINGULAR

1. pida
2. pidas
3. pida

## PLURAL

1. pidamos
2. pidáis
3. pidan

## Dormir

## SINGULAR

1. duerma
2. duermas
3. duerma

## PLURAL

1. durmamos
2. durmáis
3. duerman

Note that the radical-changing verbs of the third conjugation change *e* to *i*, and *o* to *u*, in the first and second persons plural of the present subjunctive, even though the syllables in question are not accented.

## Exercise XVII

A. 1. Evita la mala compañía, y busca la buena. 2. Niño ; no hables tan alto : habla bajo. 3. Silvestre ; cierra la ventana. La luz del sol me ciega. 4. Enciende la vela, que<sup>1</sup> ya es tarde : no enciendas la lámpara. 5. Apaga la vela, pero no apagues la lámpara. 6. Tomemos el tranvía (el carro eléctrico). No puedo andar más. 7. Dios quiera que tus años sean<sup>2</sup> colmados de toda prosperidad. 8. No tema usted nada : aquí está usted en seguridad. 9. No mientas, niño. Siempre es la verdad mejor que la mentira. 10. Suba usted á la biblioteca. Allí hallará una carta para usted. 11. No dejes de estudiar la lección para mañana, porque es bastante difícil. 12. El orador dijo : temed á los traidores

de la patria, pero no temáis á los enemigos. 13. Niños, bebed agua pura: no bebáis café, té, vino, ni cerveza. 14. Leamos la carta. Tengo ganas de saber lo que dice.<sup>3</sup> 15. Sentémonos aquí, y hablemos. Yo no entiendo de suavidades y hablo con mucha franqueza. 16. Madrid es una hermosa ciudad: tiene muchos edificios magníficos y calles y paseos espléndidos. 17. En la parte antigua las calles son estrechas y tortuosas; pero en la parte nueva son anchas y derechas. 18. La peseta española tiene cuatro reales ó cien céntimos. 19. El peso mejicano tiene cien centavos. 20. Una peseta española tiene el valor de veinte centavos americanos. 21. Un peso mejicano tiene el valor de cincuenta centavos americanos.<sup>4</sup> 22. En España, toman generalmente el café ó el chocolate á las ocho de la mañana. 23. Almuerzan á las once ó á las doce, y comen á las seis de la tarde. 24. Cenán después del teatro ó de la ópera.

*B.* 1. Let us avoid the bad (*neut. sing.*) and seek the good. 2. Children, wash<sup>5</sup> your ears, eyes, and noses, and clean your finger-nails. 3. Work (*fam., pl.*), but do not work too long; sleep, but do not sleep more than nine hours. 4. Eat (*fam., pl.*) enough, but do not eat too much; eat healthful foods, but do not eat sweets and<sup>6</sup> pastry. 5. Drink (*fam., pl.*) water and milk, but do not drink coffee, tea, wine, beer, or<sup>6</sup> brandy. 6. Read (*fam., sing.*) this letter, if you wish; but do not read the other. 7. Write (*fam., sing.*) to your friends, but do not write to your enemies. 8. Run (*fam., sing.*) and play, but do not run and<sup>6</sup> play when you should be-studying. 9. Buy (*fõrm., sing.*) the white horse, but do not buy the black one. 10. Sell (*fõrm., pl.*) the large house, but do not sell the small one. 11. Let us light the lamp, and put out the candle. 12. Let us shut the door, and open the window. 13. Let<sup>7</sup> John shut the door, and open the window. 14. May<sup>7</sup> the boys avoid bad company, and seek good company.<sup>8</sup> 15. Let us write to our uncles-and-aunts, but let us not write to our cousins. 16. Write (*fam., pl.*) to your brothers-and-sisters, but do not write

to your uncles-and-aunts or <sup>6</sup> your cousins. 17. Write (*fam., sing.*) short letters: do not write long letters. 18. Write (*form., sing.*) Spanish letters; do not write English letters.

<sup>1</sup> 'for.' <sup>2</sup> 'may be.' <sup>3</sup> 'what it says.' <sup>4</sup> This is, of course, only approximate. <sup>5</sup> *lavaos.* <sup>6</sup> Say: 'nor.' <sup>7</sup> Use *que.* <sup>8</sup> Say: 'and seek the good.'

## LESSON XVIII

89. **Personal Pronouns.** — The Spanish personal pronouns used as the subject or object of verbs are<sup>1</sup>:

## SINGULAR

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
1.	yo, I.	me, me.	me, to me.
2.	tú, you, thou.	te, you, thee.	te, to you, to thee.
3.	( <i>m.</i> él, he, it.	le or lo, him, it.	le, to him, to her, to it.
	( <i>f.</i> ella, she, it.	la, her, it. <i>you</i>	(la), (to her). <i>to you</i>

## PLURAL

	SUBJECT	DIRECT OBJECT	INDIRECT OBJECT
1.	nosotros (-as), we.	nos, us.	nos, to us.
2.	vosotros (-as), you, ye.	os, you.	os, to you.
3.	( <i>m.</i> ellos, } they.	los, } them.	les, to them.
	( <i>f.</i> ellas, }	las, } <i>you</i>	(las), (to them, <i>f.</i> ). <i>to you</i>

*a.* In English a subject-pronoun is rarely omitted; in Spanish it is regularly omitted unless required for emphasis or clearness: **hablo**, 'I am speaking'; **yo hablo**, 'I am speaking.' The pronoun is sometimes required when the form of the verb would not make it clear what pronoun is understood; thus, **yo (él, ella) hablaba**, 'I (he, she) was speaking.'

<sup>1</sup> **Usted** and **ustedes**, the neuter pronouns **ello** and **lo**, and the reflexive pronouns **se** and **sí**, will be treated separately in subsequent paragraphs.

*b.* In English an object-pronoun regularly follows the verb: in Spanish it usually precedes.

**nos aman**, they love us.

**ella me teme**, she fears me.

**Antonio te da un libro**, Anthony gives you a book.

If the sentence is negative, **no** immediately precedes the object-pronoun: **ella no me teme**, 'she does not fear me.'

*c.* But sometimes the object-pronoun follows the verb, and is attached to it so that the verb and pronoun form one word. This occurs when the pronoun is the object of an infinitive, a present participle, or a *positive* imperative (including the positive subjunctive used with imperative force).

**temerle**, (to) fear him;

**cómpralo**, buy it;

but

**llamándome**, calling me;

**sentémonos**, let us sit down;

**no lo compres**, do not buy it;

**no nos sentemos**, let us not sit down.

*d.* When a present participle or an infinitive is used with an auxiliary verb, the object-pronoun may usually either precede the auxiliary or follow its main verb.

**me está aguardando** or **está aguardándome**, 'he is waiting for me.'

**la quiero ver** or **quiero verla**, 'I wish to see her.'

*e.* If the sentence (or clause) begins with the verb, the object-pronoun may follow; but this rarely occurs if the verb is future, conditional, or the second person of the preterite.

**ámame**, he loves me;

**amábame**, he used to love me;

**amóme**, he loved me;

etc. (but rarely **amaráme**, **amaríame**, **amásteme**, etc.).

*f.* In English one may say, 'give me the book,' or 'give the book to me'; both expressions are to be translated into Spanish by **dame el libro**, if the 'me' is not emphatic: cf. § 103, *a*.

*g.* It should be noted that the English pronouns 'him,' 'her,' and 'them' may be used as either direct or indirect object; and that, if used

as direct object, they should be expressed in Spanish by one set of pronouns, while if used as indirect, they should be expressed by another set.

**la teme**, he fears *her*.

**le da un libro**, he gives *her* a book.

**los ama**, he loves *them*.

**les da el libro**, he gives *them* the book.

The masculine singular **le**, however, is used as either direct or indirect object..

*h.* In order to avoid ambiguity by indicating gender, the feminine direct object-pronoun (accusative) is sometimes used instead of the indirect object-pronoun (dative): **él la** (or **las**) **quedó fiel hasta la muerte**, 'he remained faithful to her (or them, *fem.*) till death.'

*i.* The masculine singular pronoun of the third person has two forms, **le** and **lo**. It is usually considered best to use **le** when referring to a person, and **lo** when referring to a thing; but some speakers and writers use only **le**, while others prefer **lo**.

### Exercise XVIII

*A.* 1. Ella me teme, pero no me ama. 2. Yo la amo y la temo también. 3. Yo los buscaba, y ellos me buscaban. 4. Yo no los hallé, y ellos no me hallaron. 5. Tú las aborrecías, y ellas te aborrecían. 6. Juan las apreciaba, y ellas le (or lo) apreciaban. 7. ¿Quiere usted vender su bicicleta? 8. Sí, señor; quiero venderla. ¿No quiere usted comprarla? 9. No, señor; yo no la quiero comprar. 10. Véndala á su primo Don José: no la venda al señor Morales. 11. Llámale. No; espera un momento: no le (or lo) llames ahora. 12. La encontré en la calle de Preciados, y le dí<sup>1</sup> la carta. 13. Le (or lo) hallé en su casa, y le devolví el libro. 14. Los ví<sup>2</sup> esta mañana, y les dije<sup>3</sup> que usted estaba en la ciudad. 15. Las buscaba por todas partes para decirles que usted estaba aquí. 16. Pero no las hallé, y por consiguiente no les dije nada.<sup>4</sup> 17. ¿Nos aguarda Juan? — Sí; os aguarda hace dos horas. 18. Quiere pagaros lo que<sup>5</sup> os debe. 19. ¿Te pagó la cuenta? — No la pagó, y creo que no quiere pagarla.

20. ¿Me busca el señor Santilla? — Sí; te busca para pedirte un favor. Evítale. 21. ¿Ha escrito usted el ejercicio? 22. No lo (*or le*) he escrito todavía. Lo (*or le*) escribiré esta tarde. 23. ¿Cuándo escribirás la carta á tu mamá? 24. La escribiré mañana por la mañana. 25. ¿Dónde ha comprado usted estas naranjas? 26. Las compré esta mañana en la tienda de García.

*B.* 1. I wish to see him and to speak to him. 2. You (*fam., sing.*) wish to see her and speak to her, do you not? 3. We wish to see them (*masc.*) and speak to them as soon as possible. 4. Do you (*form., pl.*) not wish to see them (*fem.*) and speak to them today? 5. We have already seen them (*fem.*) and have spoken to them. 6. Did you (*fam., sing.*) see <sup>6</sup> the girl? I saw <sup>7</sup> her. 7. Did you see the boy? I saw him. 8. Did you (*fam., sing.*) see the boys? I saw them. 9. Did you see the girls? I saw them. 10. Did you (*fam., pl.*) find the book? We found it. 11. Did you find the pen? We found it. 12. Did you (*fam., pl.*) find the pens? We found them. 13. Did you find the books? We found them. 14. Did you (*form., sing.*) sell the house? I did not sell it, and I do not wish to sell it. 15. Did you (*form., pl.*) buy the carriage? We did not buy it, but we wish to buy it. 16. If you (*fam., sing.*) wish to buy the hat, buy it; if you do not wish to buy it, do not buy it. 17. If you (*fam., pl.*) wish to sell the bicycle, sell it; if you do not wish to sell it, do not sell it. 18. If you (*form., sing.*) prefer to sell the horses, sell them; if you do not prefer to sell them, do not sell them. 19. If you (*form., pl.*) prefer to buy the cows, buy them; if you do not prefer to buy them, do not buy them. 20. Did you (*fam., sing.*) speak to John? I did not speak to him, and I do not wish to speak to him. 21. Did you (*fam., pl.*) speak to Mary? We did not speak to Mary, but we wish to speak to her. 22. If you (*form., sing.*) wish to lend the boys ten dollars, lend them ten dollars; do not lend them more. 23. If you (*form., pl.*) prefer to lend the girls the pens, lend them the pens. 24. If you do not prefer to lend them the pens, do not lend them the pens.

<sup>1</sup> 'I gave,' Pret. of *dar*.    <sup>2</sup> 'I saw,' Pret. of *ver*.    <sup>3</sup> 'I said,' Pret. of *decir*  
<sup>4</sup> 'anything.'    <sup>5</sup> 'what.'    <sup>6</sup> *viste*.    <sup>7</sup> *vi*.



## LESSON XIX

**90. Tú and usted.** — English 'you' may be expressed in Spanish by **tú**, *pl.*, **vosotros** (-as), or by **usted**, *pl.*, **ustedes**. **Usted** (*pl.*, **ustedes**) is a contraction of **vuestra merced**, 'your grace'; it is treated as a noun and requires the verb, object-pronouns, and possessives in the third person singular or plural. Thus, addressing a woman one would say :

**¿ cómo está usted ?** how are you? (lit., 'how is your grace?').

**yo la ví esta mañana**, I saw you this morning (lit., 'I saw her,' referring to the noun element in **usted**).

**ví también á su hermana**, I saw your sister also (lit., 'I saw her sister').

It will be observed that **usted** has all the attributes of a noun except gender : it assumes the gender of the person addressed. **Usted** and **ustedes** may be abbreviated in writing to **V.** and **VV.**, or to **Vd.** and **Vds.**

When 'you' stands for the name of a near relative, an intimate friend a small child, an animal, or an inanimate object, it is usually to be translated by **tú**. The word **tú** corresponds also to English 'thou,' used in poetic and sacred language. The plural of **tú** is **vosotros** (-as). In all other cases 'you' should be expressed by **usted** (*pl.*, **ustedes**). Thus it would be rude to address a stranger or mere acquaintance as **tú**; while, on the other hand, to address an intimate friend as **usted** would indicate scorn or anger.<sup>1</sup>

*a.* **Vosotros**, instead of **ustedes**, is sometimes used by orators in addressing an audience.

<sup>1</sup> In some parts of the Spanish-speaking world **vosotros** and the corresponding form of the verb are no longer used in colloquial language. Thus, a Cuban or Mexican father would address one child as **tú**, but two or more as **ustedes**.

*b.* **Nos** and **vos** may occur, instead of **yo** and **tú**, in royal proclamations and official documents: **nos el rey mandamos** . . ., 'I, the king, command.' **Vos** instead of **usted** occurs commonly in the older Spanish works.

**91. Ello and Lo.** — There is no pronoun in Spanish exactly corresponding to English 'it.' All Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine; hence, if 'it' represents a noun, it is expressed in Spanish by a masculine or feminine pronoun, according to the gender of the noun represented. Thus, speaking of **el libro**, 'it' would be **él**, **lo**, or **le**; while speaking of **la pluma**, 'it' would be **ella**, **la**, or **le**, according as 'it' is subject, direct object, or indirect object.

If 'it' does not represent a noun, but a whole phrase, sentence, or idea, it may be expressed by **ello** (subject-pronoun or object of a preposition) or **lo** (object-pronoun), as in **convengo en ello**, 'I agree to it,' **no lo creo**, 'I do not believe it.'

But 'it,' when the subject of a verb, is usually not expressed in Spanish at all. Thus, speaking of **la casa**, one would say, **es muy alta**, 'it is very high'; or speaking of something that happened, one would say, **no es importante**, 'it is not important.' If 'it' represents nothing definite, but is merely expletive, it *can not* be expressed in Spanish: **lueve**, 'it is raining'; **nieva**, 'it is snowing.'

*a.* As a subject-pronoun the neuter **ello** occurs commonly only in the expression **ello es que** (cf. the French *c'est que*) = 'the fact is that.'

*b.* **Lo** is often used in the predicate to refer to a preceding noun or adjective: ¿**es él huérfano**? — **Sí, lo es**, 'Is he an orphan? Yes; he is (one)'; **sus ojos parecen negros sin serlo**, 'his eyes appear black without being so.'

But if the preceding noun refers to a definite person, the personal pronoun agrees in gender and number with the noun: ¿**eres tú la hija del señor García**? — **Sí, la soy**, 'Are you the daughter of Mr. Garcia? Yes; I am.'

92. Imperative: *Tener, Haber, Ser, Estar.*

	<b>Tener</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. <b>ten</b>		2. <b>tened</b>
	<b>Haber</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. <b>hé</b> <sup>1</sup>		2. <b>haved</b> <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Ser</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. <b>sé</b>		2. <b>sed</b>
	<b>Estar</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
2. <b>está</b>		2. <b>estad</b>

93. Subjunctive Present: *Tener, Haber, Ser, Estar.*

	<b>Tener</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. <b>tenga</b>		1. <b>tengamos</b>
2. <b>tengas</b>		2. <b>tengáis</b>
3. <b>tenga</b>		3. <b>tengan</b>
	<b>Haber</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. <b>haya</b>		1. <b>hayamos</b>
2. <b>hayas</b>		2. <b>hayáis</b>
3. <b>haya</b>		3. <b>hayan</b>
	<b>Ser</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. <b>sea</b>		1. <b>seamos</b>
2. <b>seas</b>		2. <b>seáis</b>
3. <b>sea</b>		3. <b>sean</b>
	<b>Estar</b>	
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. <b>esté</b>		1. <b>estemos</b>
2. <b>estés</b>		2. <b>estéis</b>
3. <b>esté</b>		3. <b>estén</b>

<sup>1</sup> Rarely used. Some regard **hé** as not a part of **haber**.

## Subjunctive. Perfect Tense.

## Hablar

## SINGULAR

1. haya hablado
2. hayas hablado
3. haya hablado

## PLURAL

1. hayamos hablado
2. hayáis hablado
3. hayan hablado

*a.* **Haya**, used as an impersonal verb, means 'there may be,' 'let there be,' etc.; **haya habido**, 'there may have been.'

## Exercise XIX

*A.* 1. Págueme usted lo que le debe, pero no le pague un real más. 2. Amigo mío<sup>1</sup>: préstame diez pesos. 3. No puedo prestarte diez pesos, porque no los tengo. 4. La quiero ver para hablarle de un asunto importante. 5. ¿Te gustan las manzanas? — Sí; me gustan mucho. 6. ¿Os gustaba el clima de Madrid? — No nos gustaba: era malísimo. 7. Despertémosla, que ya es tarde. 8. No la despertemos todavía. La pobre niña no está buena. 9. ¿Vendiste los caballos? — Sí; los vendí á mi primo Onofre. 10. ¿Vendiste las vacas también? — Sí; las vendí. 11. ¿Quieres llamar á los niños? — Ya los llamé hace dos horas. 12. Bueno; ten la bondad de llamarlos otra vez. 13. Quitáronme el uniforme de militar. ¡Dios tenga piedad de mí!<sup>2</sup> 14. Ten los oídos y los ojos abiertos; pero no tengas miedo de nada.<sup>3</sup> 15. Tenga usted la bondad de cerrar la ventana. Tengo frío. 16. Haya paces, y dejen ustedes de disputar. 17. Sean francos, y díganme<sup>4</sup> la verdad. 18. Hemos de estudiar desde la línea diez de la página cincuenta hasta la línea veinte y ocho de la página cincuenta y siete. 19. Caballero; usted habla demasiado aprisa. No le (*or* lo) puedo entender. 20. Caballeros; ustedes hablan demasiado aprisa. No los puedo entender. 21. Buenos días, Don Jorge. ¿Cómo está usted?

Yo le (*or* lo) busqué ayer sin poder<sup>5</sup> hallarle (*or* hallarlo).  
 22. Deseé pagarle lo que<sup>6</sup> le debo. 23. Señora ; perdóneme usted. Quiero hablarle de un asunto desagradable, pero no quiero irritarla. 24. Hable usted ; caballero. Dígame<sup>4</sup> lo que<sup>6</sup> quiera decir : no me irritará ello. 25. Señoras ; ¿ustedes me permiten que las acompañe?

B. Write the first four sentences twice, making 'you' masculine in one set and feminine in the other.

1. Good day! How are you (*fam., sing.*)? I met you yesterday, but I did not speak to you. Are you well?<sup>7</sup> 2. Good day! How are you (*form., sing.*)? I met you yesterday, but I did not speak to you. Are you well?<sup>7</sup> 3. Good day! How are you (*fam., pl.*)? I met you yesterday, but I did not speak to you. Are you well?<sup>7</sup> 4. Good day! How are you (*form., pl.*)? I met you yesterday, but I did not speak to you. Are you well?<sup>7</sup> 5. Did you (*form., sing.*) buy the hat? I bought it. 6. Did you (*form., sing.*) sell the chair? I sold it. 7. Do you (*fam., sing.*) believe it? I believe it. 8. Do you (*fam., sing.*) agree to<sup>8</sup> it? 9. Is the door higher than I? It is higher than you (*fam., sing.*). 10. Is the trunk larger than I? It is larger than you (*fam., sing.*). 11. I saw him, and I spoke to him; but I did not see her, and consequently I did not speak to her. 12. I found them (*masc.*), and I gave them the letter; I did not find them (*fem.*), and I did not give them the book. 13. Did you (*fam., sing.*) ask pardon of your uncle? I did not ask pardon of him, and I do not intend to ask pardon of him. 14. Have (*form., sing.*) the kindness to burn the letter. I do not wish to keep it. 15. Do (*form., sing., masc.*) not be foolish; tell us the truth. Do not lie to us ever.<sup>9</sup> 16. Be (*fam., sing.*) afraid of traitors; but do not be afraid of your enemies. 17. He found us, and he gave the letter to us. 18. Did she meet you (*fam., pl.*) and give the book to you? 19. He met me and asked me for twenty-five *pesetas*.<sup>10</sup> 20. I did not have them, and, moreover, I did not want to lend him a *real*. 21. Do you (*fam., sing.*) like oranges<sup>11</sup>? Yes; but I like peaches better.<sup>12</sup> 22. Do you (*fam., pl.*) like to read Span-

ish books? 23. Yes; we like to read Spanish and English books very much.<sup>13</sup> 24. Read (*form.*, *pl.*) from page twenty-seven, line fifteen, to page thirty-three, line twenty-two.

1 'my friend.' 2 'on me.' 3 'anything.' 4 'tell me,' Pres. Subj. of *decir*. 5 'being able.' 6 'what.' 7 Use *bueno*. 8 *convienes en*. 9 *nunca*. 10 Say: 'asked of-me (dative) twenty-five *pesetas*.' 11 Say: 'do the oranges please (*gustar*) you?' 12 Say: 'but please me more the peaches.' 13 'very much,' *muchísimo*.

---

## LESSON XX

**94. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.** — The general difference between the Spanish indicative and subjunctive moods is that the indicative states or denies a fact, while the subjunctive expresses (1) a wish, (2) doubt or uncertainty, or (3) the cause of emotion.

**95.** The Spanish subjunctive may be used independently to express command or entreaty (as explained in Lesson XVII), but it is used much oftener in dependent clauses. There is no mood (or but few survivals of one; cf. 'if I were') in English corresponding to the Spanish subjunctive. In cases where the Spanish language requires the subjunctive in subordinate clauses, the English has generally the indicative, but sometimes the infinitive, the present participle, or the compound forms with 'should,' 'may,' or 'might.'

**96.** Some of the commoner uses of the dependent subjunctive are:

(1) After expressions of *willing* or *forbidding*.

*quiero que él escriba la carta*, I wish him *to write* the letter.<sup>1</sup>  
*prohibo que entres*, I forbid your *entering*.

(2) After expressions of *doubting* or *fearing*.

**dudo que seas feliz**, I doubt that (whether) you *will be* happy, or  
I doubt your *being* happy.

**temo que no llegue á tiempo**, I fear that he *will not arrive* in time.<sup>1</sup>

A negative or an interrogative verb may express doubt: **no creo que seas culpable**, 'I do not believe that you are guilty'; **¿crees que yo sea culpable?** 'do you believe that I am guilty?'

(3) After expressions of *joy* or *sorrow*.

**siento que usted esté enfermo**, I am sorry that you *are* ill.

**me alegro de que estudies el inglés**, I am glad that you *are studying* English.

## (4) After expressions of necessity, and after impersonal expressions not stressing a fact.

**es necesario que usted estudie mucho**, it is necessary that you *should study* a great deal.<sup>2</sup>

**es posible que yo vaya**, it is possible that I *may go*; *cf.*, **es verdad que fué**, it is true that he *went*.

## (5) After certain conjunctions when the verb denotes future or indefinite time. The commonest of these conjunctions are:

**para que**, in order that.

**antes que**, before.

**cuando**, when.

**hasta que**, until.

**mientras or mientras que**, while, as long as. **aunque**, although, even if.

**luego que**, as soon as.

**para que lo creas**, in order that you *may believe* it.

**mientras dure la vida**, as long as life *lasts*.

<sup>1</sup> But, **yo quiero escribir la carta**, 'I wish to write the letter'; **temo no llegar á tiempo**, 'I fear that I shall not arrive on time,' etc. Here the infinitive is used because the main and the dependent verbs have the same subject.

<sup>2</sup> But, **es necesario estudiar mucho**, 'it is necessary to study much.' The infinitive is used here because its subject is not expressed and the obligation is a general one.



no lo vendas antes que yo llegue, do not sell it before I *arrive*.

no lo acabaré aunque trabaje todo el día, I shall not finish it although (even if) I *work* all day.<sup>1</sup>

(6) After a relative with an indefinite antecedent (subjunctive of characteristic).

busco un hombre que hable español, I am looking for a man who speaks Spanish.	no encuentro á nadie que hable español, I do not find any one who speaks Spanish.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Note also the following :

*a.* The present subjunctive may denote either present or future time.

*b.* **Que** is rarely omitted in Spanish : **teme que no lleguemos á tiempo**, 'he fears (that) we shall not arrive on time.'

But it is sometimes omitted after verbs denoting request, permission, etc.

**te suplico tengas la bondad de decírmelo**, I beg you to be kind enough to tell me.

**permita le diga que no es verdad**, let me tell you that it is not so.

## 97. Idiomatic Expressions.

<b>por malo que sea</b> , however bad he may be.	<b>sea lo que sea</b> , whatever it may be.
<b>por más dinero que gane, lo gasta todo</b> , whatever money he earns, he spends it all.	<b>dure que dure</b> , however long it may last; let it last as long as it will.

## Exercise XX

*A.* 1. Él está enamorado : y si lo está, ¿qué mal hay en ello? 2. Ella prefiere vivir sola aunque para ello tenga que trabajar día y noche. 3. Este niño es mi hijo, ó lo mismo que si lo fuera.<sup>1</sup> 4. Siento estar enfermo ; siento que tú estés enfermo ; tú sientes que yo esté enfermo. 5. No quiero escribir la carta : quiero que Pablo la escriba. Díglele usted que la escriba. 6. El sastre quiere que tú pagues el

<sup>1</sup> But the indicative, not the subjunctive, is used if the verb does not denote future or indefinite time. Compare : **iré aunque llueva**, 'I shall go even if it should rain' ; **iré aunque llueve**, 'I shall go even if it is raining (now).'

vestido mañana. — Bueno ; lo pagaré mañana. 7. Tengo miedo de morir. Tengo miedo de <sup>2</sup> que ella muera, y ella tiene miedo de <sup>2</sup> que yo muera. 8. Yo no deseo perder un momento, y deseo que tú no pierdas tampoco un momento. 9. Yo no puedo consentir en <sup>2</sup> que estos jóvenes gasten el dinero, pierdan el tiempo, y no aprendan nada.<sup>3</sup> 10. Cortaré todos estos árboles para que tengamos leña para el invierno. 11. Yo no he nacido para amar, ni para que me amen. 12. ¿Partirá usted mañana? — Es posible que yo parta mañana? 13. ¿Cree usted que sea ella feliz? — Parece serlo : tal vez lo será también. 14. ¿Crees que nuestro padre llegue hoy? — No ; creo que llegará mañana. 15. ¿Quién habrá que resista al invencible poder de Dios? 16. ¿Conoce usted alguna persona de este pueblo que hable y escriba bien el castellano? 17. Sí, señor ; conozco á una mujer que habla y escribe muy bien el castellano. 18. Llamaré un criado que lleve esta carta al correo. 19. Según dice <sup>4</sup> el refrán, no hay mal que dure cien años. 20. Pedid lo que queráis, y os lo daré <sup>5</sup> si lo tengo. 21. Voy <sup>6</sup> esta noche á la ópera aunque llueva, pero creo que no lloverá. 22. Pero, ¡ hombre ! Ya llueve. — Bueno ; voy á la ópera aunque llueve.

*B.* 1. It is lightening (it lightens), and I fear that it will rain. I do not think <sup>7</sup> so. 2. Is she unhappy? She appears to be [so], but I can not believe that she is [so]. 3. Is your (*fam., sing.*) mother very ill? Yes ; she is [so]. 4. I regret that she is ill, and I hope that she will be well soon. 5. He is sorry (he regrets) that he is ill, and I also am sorry that he is ill. 6. I wish to write the letter. I do not wish you (*form., sing.*) to write it. 7. My father has forbidden my smoking, and I shall not smoke any <sup>2</sup> more. 8. Do you (*fam., sing.*) believe that they are happy? 9. I believe that he is happy, but I fear that she is unhappy. 10. I doubt whether <sup>8</sup> he will arrive on time, but I do not doubt that he will try <sup>9</sup> to do so. 11. Have (*form., sing.*) the kindness to wait here until I return. 12. I desire to speak to you, and I know <sup>10</sup> that you desire to speak to me. 13. As soon as you (*fam.,*

*sing.*) read this letter, throw it into the fire. 14. As soon as I had read the letter, I threw it into the fire. 15. He says<sup>11</sup> that he will work even if<sup>12</sup> he may be tired. 16. He is working now although he is very tired. 17. I shall give you the money so that (in order that) you may buy whatever<sup>13</sup> you wish. 18. It is necessary to work hard to<sup>14</sup> earn one's<sup>15</sup> living. 19. It is not necessary for Mr. Montejo to work hard<sup>16</sup> to earn his<sup>15</sup> living. 20. Who is there that will help me? I know<sup>17</sup> one person that will help you (*fam., sing.*). It is I. 21. Can you (*fam., sing.*) find a boy to take<sup>18</sup> this letter to the postoffice? 22. I have found a boy who will take the letter to the postoffice. 23. I beg you (*form., sing.*) not to be angry with your brother. There is no cause for<sup>19</sup> it. 24. Do (*form., sing.*) not worry, Madam. Your son will accompany you if you will permit him to accompany you. 25. Who has arrived? I do not know<sup>10</sup> who has arrived. You ought to know [it]: it is your father.

1 'were.' 2 Do not translate. 3 'anything.' 4 Pres. Ind. of *decir*.  
 5 'I shall give it to you.' 6 'I am going.' 7 Use *creer*. 8 Use *que*.  
 9 Use the Ind. Mood after 'I do not doubt.' 10 *sé*. 11 *dice*. 12 *aunque*.  
 13 *lo que*. 14 *para*. 15 Use the Def. Art. 16 Say: 'that Mr. Montejo should-work hard.' 17 *conozco*. 18 Say: 'that may-take.' 19 *motivo para*.

## LESSON XXI

98. **Prepositional Forms of the Personal Pronouns.** — When personal pronouns are governed by a preposition, the following forms are used:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers.	mí, me.	nosotros (-as), us.
2d Pers.	ti, you, thee.	vosotros (-as), you.
3d Pers. { Masc.	él, him, it. }	ellos (-as), them.
{ Fem.	ella, her, it.	
	ello, it ( <i>referring to an idea or statement</i> ).	

Note that these are the same in form as the subject-pronouns, with the exception of **mí** and **ti**.

**Usted** and **sí**, 'himself,' 'herself,' etc., are also used with prepositions.

**compré el caballo para ti** (**para usted**), I bought the horse for you.  
**quiero hablar con él** (**con ella**), I wish to speak with him (with her).

a. When **con**, 'with,' governs **mí**, **ti**, or **sí**, the preposition and the pronoun unite to form one word, and the combination ends with the syllable -go: **conmigo**, 'with me'; **contigo**, 'with you'; and **consigo**, 'with himself' (herself, etc.).<sup>1</sup>

## 99. Subjunctive. Imperfect Tenses.

### (1) Regular Verbs.

#### **Hablar :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>First Form</i>	
1. <b>hablase</b>		1. <b>hablásemos</b>
2. <b>hablases</b>		2. <b>hablaseis</b>
3. <b>hablase</b>		3. <b>hablasen</b>
	<i>Second Form</i>	
1. <b>hablara</b> <sup>2</sup>		1. <b>habláramos</b>
2. <b>hablaras</b>		2. <b>hablarais</b>
3. <b>hablara</b>		3. <b>hablaran</b>

#### **Temer :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>First Form</i>	
1. <b>temiese</b>		1. <b>temiésemos</b>
2. <b>temieses</b>		2. <b>temieseis</b>
3. <b>temiese</b>		3. <b>temiesen</b>
	<i>Second Form</i>	
1. <b>temiera</b>		1. <b>temiéramos</b>
2. <b>temieras</b>		2. <b>temierais</b>
3. <b>temiera</b>		3. <b>temieran</b>

<sup>1</sup> In early Spanish, 'with me,' 'with thee,' 'with himself' (etc.), were **migo**, **tigo**, **sigo** (from Latin, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*). Later, **con** was prefixed, so that the modern forms **conmigo**, **contigo**, **consigo**, express 'with' twice.

<sup>2</sup> The imperfect subjunctive in -ra is derived from the Latin pluperfect indicative [*ama(ve)ra(m) > amara*], and it is sometimes still used in Spanish, with the force of an indicative pluperfect or preterite.

**Vivir :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>First Form</i>	
1. viviese		1. viviésemos
2. vivieses		2. vivieseis
3. viviese		3. viviesen
	<i>Second Form</i>	
1. viviera		1. viviéramos
2. vivieras		2. vivierais
3. viviera		3. vivieran

Note that the imperfect subjunctive has two forms, that in **-se** and that in **-ra**. In dependent clauses there is usually little choice between the two. The form in **-se** is perhaps used the oftener in Spain, while in some parts of Spanish America only the form in **-ra** is in common use.

**(2) Radical-changing Verbs.**

## THIRD CONJUGATION

**Sentir :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>First Form</i>	
1. sintiese		1. sintiésemos
2. sintieses		2. sintieseis
3. sintiese		3. sintiesen
	<i>Second Form</i>	
1. sintiera		1. sintiéramos
2. sintieras		2. sintierais
3. sintiera		3. sintieran

**Pedir :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>First Form</i>	
1. pidiese		1. pidiésemos
2. pidieses		2. pidieseis
3. pidiese		3. pidiesen
	<i>Second Form</i>	
1. pidiera		1. pidiéramos
2. pidieras		2. pidierais
3. pidiera		3. pidieran

**Dormir :**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>First Form</i>		
1. durmiese		1. durmiésemos
2. durmieses		2. durmieseis
3. durmiese		3. durmiesen
<i>Second Form</i>		
1. durmiera		1. durmiéramos
2. durmieras		2. durmierais
3. durmiera		3. durmieran

*a.* The subjunctive imperfect tenses are built up on the same stem as that of the third person, singular or plural, of the preterite. This is true of all irregular verbs.

*b.* The radical-changing *e* and *o* verbs of the first and second conjugations are regular in the imperfect subjunctive.

*c.* The *-ra* subjunctive is sometimes called the Conditional Subjunctive. Note that the accent remains on the same vowel throughout the two imperfect subjunctives.

**100.** In dependent clauses the imperfect subjunctive is used instead of the present, when the verb of the main clause is past. Compare the following sentences :

*deseo que él escriba la carta*, I wish him *to write* the letter.

*desearé que él escriba la carta*, I shall wish him *to write* the letter.

*deseaba que él escribiese, or escribiera, la carta*, I wished (was wishing) him *to write* the letter.

*deseé que él escribiese, or escribiera, la carta*, I wished him *to write* the letter.

*prohibo que entres*, I forbid your *entering*.

*prohibiré que entres*, I shall forbid your *entering*.

*prohibía que entrases, or entraras*, I forbade (was forbidding) your *entering*.

*prohibí que entrases, or entraras*, I forbade your *entering*.

*temo que usted no llegue á tiempo*, I fear that you *will* not *arrive* on time.

**temeré** que usted no llegue á tiempo, I shall fear that you *will* not arrive on time.

**temía** que usted no llegase, or **llegara**, á tiempo, I feared (was fearing) that you *would* not arrive on time.

**temí** que usted no llegase, or **llegara**, á tiempo, I feared that you *would* not arrive on time.

**101. Sequence of Tenses.** — A present or future tense in the main clause is followed by the present subjunctive, and a past tense by the imperfect. (See the examples given in the preceding paragraph.)

*a.* The perfect and the conditional are followed by the present or imperfect subjunctive according to the meaning of the sentence.

**el general ha mandado** que los prisioneros sean fusilados, the general has commanded that the prisoners (should) be shot.

**ayer he escrito á Juan** que volviese (volviera) á casa, yesterday I wrote to John to return home.

**preferiría** que usted la escribiese (escribiera), I should prefer that you (should) write it.

**podría** creer que esté enfermo, I could believe that he is ill.

*b.* After a present or a future tense the imperfect is used to denote a past action: **siento** que usted no llegase, or **llegara**, á tiempo, I am sorry that you did not arrive on time.

### Exercise XXI

*A.* 1. Nuestra madre compró este libro español para ti y no para mí. 2. Quiere trabajar contigo y conmigo, pero no con él. 3. Cartero; ¿tiene usted algo para mí? 4. Sí, señor; tengo cartas para usted y periódicos y un paquete grande para su señor padre. 5. ¿Te permitieron las señoras que las acompañases (or acompañaras)? 6. Sí; me permitieron que las acompañara (or acompañase). 7. Tengo miedo de morir, y tengo miedo de<sup>1</sup> que mi madre muera. 8. Dijo<sup>2</sup> que tenía miedo de morir, y tenía miedo de que su madre muriera (or



muriese). 9. Hoy vendí mi casa de campo, y siento muchísimo que tu padre no la comprase (*or* comprara). 10. Dijo que sentía mucho que mi padre no la comprara (*or* comprase). 11. Yo no desearía perder el tiempo, y no desearía que usted lo perdiera tampoco.<sup>3</sup> 12. El maestro de idiomas no podía consentir en<sup>1</sup> que sus discípulos gastasen (*or* gastaran) el dinero, y no aprendieran (*or* aprendiesen) el castellano. 13. Le pregunté si partiría mañana, y me respondió que era posible que partiera (*or* partiese) hoy. 14. Mi hermano creía que nuestra madre llegaría hoy, pero yo no creía que ella llegase (*or* llegara) tan pronto. 15. Yo lo sentía muchísimo, y le supliqué que me perdonara (*or* perdonase). 16. Dijo que iba<sup>4</sup> á la ópera aunque lloviese (*or* lloviera), y fué<sup>5</sup> aunque llovía. 17. Tu madre y yo rogábamos á Dios todos los días que te conservase (*or* conservara) la vida y que protegiese (*or* protegiera) tu alma. 18. Yo he prohibido que tú fumes tabaco, ¿no es verdad? 19. Sí, señor; usted prohibió que yo fumara (*or* fumase) tabaco, y no fumaré más. 20. Les aconsejé que estudiasen (*or* estudiaran) el castellano; pero no querían estudiar ningún<sup>6</sup> idioma extranjero. 21. Mi tío me aconsejó que no llevara (*or* llevase) todo mi dinero conmigo. 22. Me dijo que no llevaba nunca<sup>7</sup> todo su dinero consigo. 23. Copiaré la carta para que mi padre la lea. 24. Dijo que copiaría la carta para que su padre ~~la~~ leyese<sup>8</sup> (*or* leyera). 25. Cuando llegamos al palacio, no había portero ni criados que impidiesen (*or* impidieran) la entrada. 26. Prometió pagarme cien pesos cuando tuviese (*or* tuviera)<sup>18</sup> el dinero. 27. Le escribí que no vendiese (*or* vendiera) el ganado antes que yo llegara (*or* llegase); pero lo vendió antes que yo llegué.

B. 1. He has presents for you (*fam., sing.*) and for her, and she has presents for him and for me. 2. They (*masc.*) can't<sup>9</sup> live without us (*fem.*), and we can't<sup>10</sup> live without them. 3. I am content with you (*fam., sing.*) and with her, but I am not con-

tent with him. 4. This house is very large, and many people live in it. 5. This tree is very high, and there are many birds in it. 6. We (*fem.*) run and play a great deal, but what harm is there in it? 7. My father says <sup>11</sup> it is a pity that I don't study more. 8. He says it is a pity that I didn't study more last year. 9. It is true that I don't study much: I should study more. 10. We were very sorry, ladies, that you did not permit Mr. Navarro to accompany you. 11. My mother wished to speak to the stranger, but my father did not wish her to speak to him. 12. Did you (*fam., pl.*) believe that Mr. Herrera would leave for <sup>12</sup> Madrid today? 13. Yes: we believed that he would leave today, and he has already left. 14. She asked me to pardon her, and I promised to pardon her. 15. Therefore, I shall pardon her. 16. Wasn't it necessary to lie? No: it wasn't necessary for you (*fam., sing.*) to lie. Never <sup>18</sup> lie. 17. He asked me to wait here until he returned, and I did wait until he returned.<sup>14</sup> 18. He promised me that he would write the exercise for <sup>12</sup> tomorrow even if he found it difficult. 19. And, although he found it very difficult, he wrote it. 20. My father has forbidden my running and playing so-much.<sup>15</sup> 21. He had already forbidden my smoking tobacco. 22. Your (*fam., sing.*) mother would prefer that you return home at once. She wishes to see you. 23. John, I bought this book that <sup>16</sup> you (*fam., sing.*) might read it, and I wish you to read it. 24. My mother said that she had bought the book that I might read it, and she wished me to read it. 25. I shall pay the bill whenever <sup>17</sup> the tailor desires me to pay it. 26. He said that he would pay the bill whenever the tailor desired him to pay it; but he hasn't paid it yet.

<sup>1</sup> Omit. <sup>2</sup> Pret. of *decir*. <sup>3</sup> 'either.' <sup>4</sup> Imp. Ind. of *ir*. <sup>5</sup> Pret. of *ir* (3d pers. sing.). <sup>6</sup> 'any.' <sup>7</sup> 'ever.' <sup>8</sup> *leyese* = *le-iese* (§ 216). <sup>9</sup> *no pueden*. <sup>10</sup> *no podemos*. <sup>11</sup> *dice*. <sup>12</sup> *para*. <sup>13</sup> *No . . . nunca* (placing the verb between). <sup>14</sup> In this and similar sentences use the subjunctive only when the time is indefinite and future with regard to the main verb. <sup>15</sup> *tanto*. <sup>16</sup> *para que*. <sup>17</sup> *cundo*. <sup>18</sup> 'had.'

## LESSON XXII

**102.** When a verb has two personal pronoun objects, the indirect precedes the direct object.

**me lo da,** he gives it to me.

**os las da,** he gives them to you.

**te la da,** he gives it to you.

**dámelo,** give it to me.

**nos los da,** he gives them to us.

**dánoslos,** give them to us.

*a.* If both pronoun objects are in the third person, **se** is used as indirect object in the place of **le** or **les**. Thus, instead of either **le lo da**, or **les lo da**, one says **se lo da**. This **se** is derived from an old dative form of the personal pronoun of the third person,<sup>1</sup> and is in no way related to the reflexive pronoun **se**.

*b.* When the direct object is a pronoun of the first or the second person, the indirect object is usually separated from the verb and assumes the prepositional form after **á**, 'to.'

**me presenta á ellos,** he presents me to them.

**te presenta á mí,** he presents you to me.

**nos presentan á usted,** they present us to you.

**preséntame á él,** present me to him.

**103.** Each of the indirect object-pronouns **le**, **les**, and **se** (= **le** or **les**) has several meanings: hence, to avoid ambiguity, it is often necessary to use two pronouns to express the same idea,—an indirect object-pronoun and the corresponding prepositional form with **á**.

**le da el libro á él** (**á ella, á usted**), he gives the book to him (to her, to you).

**les da la casa á ellos** (**á ellas, á ustedes**), he gives the house to them, *masc.* (to them, *fem.*; to you, *plur.*).

**se lo da á él** (**á ella, á usted, á ellos, á ellas, á ustedes**), he gives it to him (to her, to you, to them, *masc.*; to them, *fem.*; to you, *plur.*).

*a.* This double construction is also used with either direct or indirect object-pronouns of the first, the second, or the third person, to add *emphasis*

<sup>1</sup> Written **ge** in old Spanish.

The pronouns **me**, **te**, **le**, **la**, **lo**, **nos**, **os**, **los**, **las**, **les**, and **se** can not be made emphatic by being stressed: 'give it to *me*,' with the stress on 'me,' can not be translated by **dámelo**, with the stress on **me**, but must be expressed by **dámelo á mí**, with the stress on **mí**.

**te lo da á tí**, he gives it to *you*.      **me quiere educar á mí también**, he  
**dánosla á nosotros**, give it to *us*.      wishes to educate *me* too.

The prepositional pronoun may precede the verb (except an imperative), and it is then still more emphatic.

**á mí me lo da**, he gives it to me.

This usage is often extended to nouns: **á mi padre no le gusta**, 'it doesn't please my father.'

#### 104. Subjunctive Imperfect : *Tener, Haber, Ser, Estar.*

##### Tener :

###### SINGULAR

1. tuviese
2. tuvieses
3. tuviese

###### *First Form*

###### PLURAL

1. tuviésemos
2. tuvieseis
3. tuviesen

###### *Second Form*

1. tuviera
2. tuvieras
3. tuviera

1. tuviéramos
2. tuvierais
3. tuvieran

##### Haber :

###### SINGULAR

1. hubiese
2. hubieses
3. hubiese

###### *First Form*

###### PLURAL

1. hubiésemos
2. hubieseis
3. hubiesen

###### *Second Form*

1. hubiera
2. hubieras
3. hubiera

1. hubiéramos
2. hubierais
3. hubieran

**Ser :**

## SINGULAR

1. fuese
2. fueses
3. fuese

*First Form*

## PLURAL

1. fuésemos
2. fueseis
3. fuesen

*Second Form*

1. fuera
2. fueras
3. fuera

1. fuéramos
2. fuerais
3. fueran

**Estar :**

## SINGULAR

1. estuviese
2. estuvieses
3. estuviese

*First Form*

## PLURAL

1. estuviésemos
2. estuvieseis
3. estuviesen

*Second Form*

1. estuviera
2. estuvieras
3. estuviera

1. estuviéramos
2. estuvierais
3. estuvieran

**105. Subjunctive. Pluperfect Tense.****Hablar :**

## SINGULAR

1. hubiese hablado
2. hubieses hablado
3. hubiese hablado

*First Form*

## PLURAL

1. hubiésemos hablado
2. hubieseis hablado
3. hubiesen hablado

*Second Form*

1. hubiera hablado
2. hubieras hablado
3. hubiera hablado

1. hubiéramos hablado
2. hubierais hablado
3. hubieran hablado

*a.* **Hubiese** and **hubiera**, used impersonally, mean 'there might be,' etc.; **hubiese**, or **hubiera**, **habido**, 'there might have been.'

**106.** A present condition "contrary to fact" may be expressed in either one of the following ways :

**si tuviese, or tuviera, dinero, lo compraría,** , if I had money, I should  
**si tuviese, or tuviera, dinero, lo comprara,** , buy it.

Note that the imperfect subjunctive in **-ra** may occur in the result (apodosis) as well as in the condition (protasis), while the imperfect in **-se** occurs only in the condition, and the conditional indicative only in the result.

*a.* The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result :  
**si tuviese tiempo, iría,** 'if I had time. I should go,' or **iría si tuviese tiempo,** 'I should go if I had time.'

*b.* The conjunction **si** is sometimes followed by a conditional indicative, and **si** then means 'whether': **no supe si vendría,** 'I did not know whether he would come.'

### 107. Idiomatic Expressions.

**¡ojalá que viva mil años!** oh, that he may, *or* I hope he will, live a thousand years!

**¡ojalá que viviese, or viviera, mil años!** oh, that he might, *or* I wish he would, live a thousand years!

**quisiera<sup>1</sup> estudiar el francés,** I should like, *or* I should be glad, to study French.

**quisiera que tú estudiases, or estudiaras, el francés,** I should like you to, *or* I wish you would, study French.

**¡quién escribiera!** oh, if I could only write!

### Exercise XXII

*A.* 1. Él nos ama á nosotros, y nosotros le amamos á él.  
 2. Lo (*or* le) mataré, ó me matará él á mí.      3. Me quieren educar á mí también; pero yo no quiero que me eduquen.  
 4. Ahora te toca á ti. — Sí; ahora me toca á mí.      5. Luego os tocará á vosotros. — Sí; luego nos tocará á nosotros.      6. No la entiendo á usted, señora. — Caballero, yo no le entiendo á

<sup>1</sup> Imperf. Subj. of *querer*.

usted tampoco. 7. Se lo he dicho<sup>1</sup> á él y no á ella. No he querido decírselo á ella. 8. ¿Quieres prestarme tu bicicleta? — Sí; te la quiero prestar con mucho gusto. 9. Mi padre quería que yo se lo prometiese, y se lo prometí. 10. Ella quería que yo le leyera la carta; pero yo no quería leérsela. 11. ¿Puedo pedirle á usted un favor? — ¡No, hombre, no! Siempre me pide usted favores. 12. Tú no eres hijo de mi hermano. Si lo fueras, no me insultarías como me has insultado. 13. ¿Cuánto siento que no estuviera usted á mi lado! 14. Hijo mío<sup>2</sup>; yo quisiera que tú me acompañaras esta noche. 15. Si lo hubiese hallado, te lo hubiera entregado. 16. Si usted la amara, no la trataría así. 17. Si usted no me quisiera<sup>3</sup> á mí, no la querría yo á usted. 18. La gramática sería buena, si no hubiese tantas faltas en ella. 19. Yo se lo habría pedido á usted, si hubiera sabido que usted lo tenía. 20. Vivo en España desde hace diez años, y no he aprendido bien el español. 21. Me sorprende que usted viva en España desde hace diez años, y no haya aprendido el español. 22. El señor Pelayo dijo que le sorprendía que yo viviera en España desde hacía diez años, y no hubiese aprendido bien el español.

B. 1. Will he give<sup>4</sup> the book to you (*fam., sing.*)? Yes; he will give it to me. 2. Will he give the house to us? No; he will not give it to us. 3. Will he give these chairs and tables to you (*fam., pl.*)? We believe that he will give them to us. 4. Will he give his two black horses to you (*fam., sing.*)? Yes; he will give them to me. 5. Did I present him to you (*fam., sing.*)? Yes; you (*fam., sing.*) presented him to me. 6. Did we present you (*fam., sing.*) to her? Yes; you (*fam., pl.*) presented me to her a short while ago. 7. If you (*fam., sing.*) are-willing to lend me your umbrella, lend it to me. 8. If you are not willing to lend it to me, do not lend it to me. 9. If you (*form., sing.*) are-willing to lend us two chairs, lend them to us. 10. If you are not willing to lend them to us, do not lend them to us. 11. If I



am-willing to present you (*fam., sing.*) to her. I shall present you to her. 12. Do (*fam., sing.*) not present me to her, if you do not wish to do so.<sup>5</sup> 13. I shall send him fifty *pesetas*, and I shall send her one hundred *pesetas*. 14. Will you (*form., sing.*) not send me also fifty *pesetas*? 15. Yes: I will send them to you (*form., sing.*) if you promise me that you will not spend them the first day. 16. I do not like<sup>6</sup> this weather, but you (*fam., sing.*) do like it. 17. We do not like this lamp, but you (*fam., pl.*) do like it. 18. He doesn't like to live in Madrid, but she does.<sup>7</sup> 19. You (*form., pl.*) like to study Spanish, but they do not like to.<sup>8</sup> 20. I love him, but I love her more. She loves me, but she loves him more. 21. If I had the money, I should buy this dog; but I haven't the money, and consequently I shan't buy it. 22. I wish<sup>9</sup> you (*form., sing.*) would lend me your bicycle. I shall be glad to<sup>10</sup> lend it to you. 23. Will you (*fam., pl.*) not present us to the French ladies? We should present you (*fam., pl.*) to them, if you spoke French. 24. But you do not speak French, and they do not speak English. 25. I should like to study Spanish and French, and I should like you (*form., pl.*) to study these languages. We should study them if we had the time.

<sup>1</sup> Past Part. of *decir*.

<sup>2</sup> 'my son.'

<sup>3</sup> *Querer á* means 'to love,' 'to be

fond of.'

<sup>4</sup> *dard*.

<sup>5</sup> *hacerlo*.

<sup>6</sup> Use *gustar*.

<sup>7</sup> Say: 'but she does

like (it).'

<sup>8</sup> Omit.

<sup>9</sup> *quisiera*.

<sup>10</sup> Say: 'I shall have much pleasure in'

(followed by the Infinitive).

## LESSON XXIII

**108. *Se* and *Si*.** — The reflexive pronouns *se* and *si* are masculine or feminine, singular or plural. *Se* is used as the direct or indirect object of a verb; *si* as the object of a preposition. Whenever the subject of a verb is a noun or a pronoun of the third person, and is represented as acting, either directly or indirectly, on itself, *se* is used as the object-pronoun and *si* as the prepositional form.

él se alaba, he praises himself.  
usted se engaña, you deceive  
yourself.

Antonio se compró un sombrero,  
Anthony bought himself a hat.

Onofre habla siempre de sí, Ono-  
fre is always talking about  
himself.

sírvase Vd. decirme, please tell  
me.

*a.* Reflexive **se**, whether direct or indirect object, always precedes another object-pronoun: **se me figura**, 'it seems to me.' (Here **se** is the direct, **me** the indirect, object.)

**109.** In the first and second persons there is no especial form of reflexive pronoun, but the object-pronouns may become reflexive. Thus, the *indicative present tense* of **engañarse**, 'to deceive one's self,' is

**me engaño**, I deceive myself.  
**te engañas**, you deceive your-  
self.  
**se engaña**, he (she) deceives him-  
self (herself).

**nos engañamos**, we deceive our-  
selves.

**os engañáis**, you deceive your-  
selves. [selves.

**se engañan**, they deceive them-

*a.* If English 'myself,' 'ourselves,' 'thymself,' etc., are emphatic, they are to be expressed in Spanish by the reflexive pronoun in the prepositional form, modified by **mismo** (**-a**, **-os**, **-as**).

**me engaño á mí mismo**, I deceive *myself*.

**usted se engaña á sí mismo**, you deceive *yourself*.

**Onofre habla siempre de sí mismo**, Onofre is always talking about *himself*.

In these expressions **propio** may replace **mismo**.

**ella se ama á sí propia**, she loves *herself*.

*b.* Many verbs require the reflexive construction in Spanish, but not in English.

**acostarse**, (to) go to bed (lit., 'to  
recline one's self').

**levantarse**, (to) arise, *or* to get up  
(lit., to raise one's self').

**sentarse**, (to) sit down, *or* to be  
seated (lit., 'to seat one's self').

**hacerse**, *or* **ponerse**, (to) become.

**acordarse** (**de**), (to) remember.

**olvidarse**, (to) forget.

**alegrarse** (**de**), (to) rejoice (at),  
*or* (to) be glad (of).

**atreverse** (**á**), (to) dare.

**reírse** (**de**), (to) laugh (at), *etc.*,  
*etc.*

c. Some intransitive verbs may be used as reflexives, with change of meaning.

**ir**, (to) go.

**dormirse**, (to) fall asleep.

**irse**, (to) go away.

**morir**, (to) die.

**dormir**, (to) sleep.

**morirse**, (to) be dying, *etc.*

d. The reflexive construction is often used in Spanish where the passive voice is required in English.

**se dice**, it is said.

**aquí se habla español**, Spanish is spoken here.

e. The direct reflexive substitute for the passive is usually to be avoided if there is a personal subject. Thus, **se admira el hombre** means 'the man admires himself,' and not 'the man is admired'; but one can say, **se admira al hombre**, 'the man is admired,' **se la trata con distinción**, 'she is treated with distinction,' **se te llama**, 'some one is calling you,' etc. If a masculine pronoun of the third person is used, it is in the dative.

**se les admira**, they are admired.

**110.** In the plural a reflexive verb may become *reciprocal*; that is, several persons or things may be represented as acting on one another. Usually no distinction of form is made in Spanish between reflexive and reciprocal verbs; thus, **nosotros nos engañamos** may mean 'we deceive ourselves,' or 'we deceive one another.' Often, however, the meaning determines whether the verb is reflexive or reciprocal, as in **la primera vez que se vieron y se hablaron**, 'the first time they saw each other and spoke to each other.'

a. A reciprocal verb may be strengthened and made explicit by the use of **el uno al otro** (**la una á la otra**, **los unos á los otros**, **las unas á las otras**, or **el uno á la otra**, **la una al otro**, etc.).

**os engañáis el uno al otro**, you deceive each other.

**se aman las unas á las otras**, they love one another.

**se burlan el uno del otro**, they make fun of each other.

The article may be omitted, as in **se aborrecen unos á otros**, 'they hate one another.'



**Pedir****SINGULAR**

1. **pidiere**
2. **pidieres**
3. **pidiere**

**PLURAL**

1. **pidiéremos**
2. **pidiereis**
3. **pidieren**

**Dormir****SINGULAR**

1. **durmiere**
2. **durmieres**
3. **durmiere**

**PLURAL**

1. **durmiéremos**
2. **durmiereis**
3. **durmieren**

*a.* The hypothetical subjunctive of the radical-changing **e** and **o** verbs of the first and second conjugations is regular.

*b.* It should be noted here that the radical-changing **e** and **o** verbs of the first and second conjugations are regular in all tenses except the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative; while those of the third conjugation have irregular forms in all tenses except the imperfect, future, and conditional indicative.

**(3) Tener, Haber, Ser, Estar.****Tener****SINGULAR**

1. **tuviere**
2. **tuvieres**
3. **tuviere**

**PLURAL**

1. **tuviéremos**
2. **tuviereis**
3. **tuvieren**

**Haber****SINGULAR**

1. **hubiere**
2. **hubieres**
3. **hubiere**

**PLURAL**

1. **hubiéremos**
2. **hubiereis**
3. **hubieren**

**Ser****SINGULAR**

1. **fuere**
2. **fueres**
3. **fuere**

**PLURAL**

1. **fuéremos**
2. **fuereis**
3. **fueren**

## Estar

## SINGULAR

1. **estuviere**
2. **estuvieres**
3. **estuviere**

## PLURAL

1. **estuviéremos**
2. **estuviereis**
3. **estuvieren**

Note that the hypothetical subjunctive, like the imperfect subjunctive, is built up on the preterite (3d person) stem.

## 113. Hypothetical Perfect Subjunctive.

## Hablar

## SINGULAR

1. **hubiere hablado**
2. **hubieres hablado**
3. **hubiere hablado**

## PLURAL

1. **hubiéremos hablado**
2. **hubiereis hablado**
3. **hubieren hablado**

*a.* **Hubiere** is also used as an impersonal verb.

## 114. Use of the Hypothetical Subjunctive.

The hypothetical subjunctive always denotes a condition or hypothesis. Like the present subjunctive, it denotes either present or future time. In the spoken Spanish of today the hypothetical subjunctive is rarely used except in proverbs, legal expressions, etc. Its place is regularly taken by the present subjunctive, or by the present indicative if used with *si*, 'if.'

**si tal pensare (piensa), se engaña**, if he thinks so, he is mistaken.

**si lo hubiere (ha) dicho, ha mentido**, if he has said so, he has lied.

**si tuviere (tengo) dinero, lo compraré**, if I have money, I shall buy it.

**mientras durare (dure) la vida, trabajaré**, as long as life lasts, I shall work.

**créelo si quisieres (quieres)**, believe it if you wish.

**es necesario aceptar lo que nos dieren (den)**, it is necessary to accept what they give us.

115. In Spanish the commoner forms of conditional sentences are as follows :

- |                                                                                     |                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>gasto mucho si gano mucho</b> , I spend much if I earn much.                  | <b>mucho</b> , I should spend much if I earned much.                                          |
| 2. <b>gastaré mucho si gano (ganare) mucho</b> , I shall spend much if I earn much. | 7. <b>gastara mucho si ganase mucho</b> , I should spend much if I earned much.               |
| 3. <b>gastaba mucho si ganaba mucho</b> , I spent much if I earned much.            | 8. <b>gastara mucho si ganara mucho</b> , I should spend much if I earned much.               |
| 4. <b>gasté mucho si gané mucho</b> , I spent much if I did earn (earned) much.     | 9. <b>he gastado mucho si he ganado mucho</b> , I have spent much if I have earned much.      |
| 5. <b>gastaría mucho si ganase mucho</b> , I should spend much if I earned much.    | 10. <b>había gastado mucho si había ganado mucho</b> , I had spent much if I had earned much. |
| 6. <b>gastaría mucho si ganara</b>                                                  |                                                                                               |

116. When the verb of the conclusion (apodosis) is thrown into the subjunctive, the present and future indicative become the present subjunctive ; the imperfect, preterite, and conditional indicative become the imperfect subjunctive ; and the perfect and pluperfect indicative become the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive respectively. Thus (cf. parallel sentences in preceding paragraph) :

- |                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>teme que yo gaste mucho si gano mucho</b> , he fears that I spend much if I earn much.                 | 4. <b>teme que yo gastara (gastase) mucho si gané mucho</b> , he fears that I spent much if I did earn (earned) much.                 |
| 2. <b>teme que yo gaste mucho si gano (ganare) mucho</b> , he fears that I shall spend much if I earn much.  | 5, 6, 7, 8. <b>teme que yo gastara (gastase) mucho si ganase (ganara) mucho</b> , he fears that I should spend much if I earned much. |
| 3. <b>teme que yo gastara (gastase) mucho si ganaba mucho</b> , he fears that I spent much if I earned much. |                                                                                                                                       |



- |                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>9. teme que yo haya gastado mucho si he ganado mucho, he fears that I have spent much if I have earned much.</p> | <p>10. teme que yo hubiera (hubiese) gastado mucho si había ganado mucho, he fears that I had spent much if I had earned much.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Note that the verb of the condition (protasis) is not attracted into the subjunctive in 1, 2, 3, 4, 9, and 10.

### Exercise XXIII

A. 1. Cuando era niño me acostaba y me levantaba temprano. 2. Ahora que soy hombre me acuesto y me levanto tarde. 3. El hombre se acuesta ; la vaca se echa. 4. Aquí se cambia dinero. 5. No se permite fumar aquí. 6. Una casa se vende ; la otra se alquila. 7. Se habla mucho de la guerra. 8. Se dice que ya han muerto<sup>1</sup> muchos soldados. 9. Él se queja de ella, y ella se queja de él. 10. Parece que se odian. 11. El hombre que no se respeta á sí mismo no es digno de ser<sup>2</sup> respetado por los otros. 12. Los niños pueden reírse y llorar casi al mismo tiempo. 13. El camaleón se puede poner blanco, negro, ó verde. 14. La ira puede llamarse la peor de las pasiones. 15. Se sintió algo cansado y se sentó al pie de un árbol. 16. Las dos mujeres se abrazaron y besaron ; pero todo el mundo sabe que no se amaban. 17. El año próximo pienso marcharme á España, y es probable que me quede allí por algunos años. 18. ¡ Cómo se parece la niña á la mujer ! 19. No son parientas ; pero se parecen mucho una á otra. 20. Este hombre es muy vanaglorioso : se alaba siempre á sí, habla mucho de sí y consigo, y no piensa sino en<sup>3</sup> sí mismo. 21. Si me casase con usted sería menester que usted me gustara, y la verdad es que usted no me gusta. 22. ¿ Se ha marchado ya tu primo ? — Sí, señor ; se hallaba sin ocupación. 23. Nosotras nos burlamos de ellos, y ellos se burlan de nosotras. 24. Se<sup>4</sup> te

llama, niño: vete.<sup>5</sup> — No me importa que me llamen: no quiero irme. 25. Cállate, niño, si no quieres que me enfade. 26. En caso que lo hallare (*or* halle<sup>6</sup>), se lo enviaré á usted por correo. 27. Si él no estuviere (*or* está<sup>6</sup>) en casa, se lo entregaré á su mujer. 28. Te acompañaremos si tú lo deseas (*or* deseas<sup>6</sup>).

B. 1. I feel<sup>7</sup> sad: you (*fam., sing.*) feel sad: he feels sad: we feel sad: you (*fam., pl.*) feel sad: they feel sad. 2. I wash my hands<sup>8</sup>; you (*fam., sing.*) wash your hands: she washes her hands: we wash our hands: you (*fam., pl.*) wash your hands: they wash their hands. 3. I speak about myself: you (*fam., sing.*) speak about yourself: you (*form., sing.*) speak about yourself: we speak about ourselves: you (*fam., pl.*) speak about yourselves: they speak about themselves. 4. It seems<sup>9</sup> to me: it seems to you (*fam., sing.*): it seems to him: it seems to us: it seems to you (*fam., pl.*): it seems to them. 5. I go to bed<sup>10</sup>: you (*fam., sing.*) go to bed: she goes to bed: we go to bed: you (*fam., pl.*) go to bed: they go to bed. 6. I am glad<sup>11</sup> of it: you (*fam., sing.*) are glad of it: you (*form., sing.*) are glad of it: we are glad of it: you (*fam., pl.*) are glad of it: they are glad of it. 7. I am going to sleep<sup>12</sup>: you (*fam., sing.*) are going to sleep: he is going to sleep: we are going to sleep: you (*fam., pl.*) are going to sleep: they are going to sleep. 8. My name is<sup>13</sup> Mary: your (*fam., sing.*) name is John: her name is Frances: our names are Peter and Paul: your (*fam., pl.*) names are Sophia and Trinity: their names are Henry and George. 9. I am frightened<sup>14</sup>: you (*fam., sing.*) are frightened: you (*form., sing.*) are frightened: we are frightened: you (*fam., pl.*) are frightened: you (*form., pl.*) are frightened. 10. We (*masc.*) hate each other: you (*fam., pl., fem.*) hate each other: they (*masc. and fem.*) hate each other. 11. We (*fem.*) embrace and kiss each other: you (*fam., pl., fem.*) embrace and kiss each other: you (*form., pl., masc. and fem.*) embrace and kiss each other. 12. We (*masc.*) remember<sup>15</sup> one another: you (*fam., pl., fem.*) remember one another: they (*masc. and fem.*) remember one another. 13. French and Spanish are spoken here, but English is not spoken. 14. I go to bed at 9 P.M. and I arise

at 6 A.M.<sup>16</sup> 15. Please<sup>17</sup> (*form., sing.*) sit down if you feel tired.  
 16. The father and the son look like each other, but the son is the handsomer. 17. The two children poured warm water into the wash-basin, and washed their hands and faces with soap. 18. They then dried their hands and faces<sup>18</sup> with a towel, and combed and brushed their hair.

<sup>1</sup> Past Part. of *morir*.      <sup>2</sup> 'being.'      <sup>3</sup> 'of.'      <sup>4</sup> 'one' or 'some one.'  
<sup>5</sup> Imperative, 2d pers. sing., of *irse*.      <sup>6</sup> The more usual Subj. or Ind. form is given in parenthesis.      <sup>7</sup> Use *sentirse*.      <sup>8</sup> Say: 'I wash me the hands.'  
<sup>9</sup> Use *figurarse*.      <sup>10</sup> Use *acostarse*.      <sup>11</sup> Use *alegrarse (de)*.      <sup>12</sup> Use *dormirse*.  
<sup>13</sup> Use *llamarse*.      <sup>14</sup> Use *asustarse*.      <sup>15</sup> Use *acordarse (de)*.      <sup>16</sup> Usually 'A.M.' is expressed by *de la mañana*, and 'P.M.' by *de la tarde* or *de la noche*.  
<sup>17</sup> *sirase usted*.      <sup>18</sup> Say: 'dried themselves the hands and face and combed themselves and brushed themselves the hair.'

## LESSON XXIV

## 117. Possessive Adjectives.

## SINGULAR

1st Pers. **mío** (-a, -os, -as) or **mi** (**mis**), my.  
 2d Pers. **tuyo** (-a, -os, -as) or **tu** (**tus**), your, thy.  
 3d Pers. **suyo** (-a, -os, -as) or **su** (**sus**), his, her, its, your.

## PLURAL

1st Pers. **nuestro** (-a, -os, -as), our.  
 2d Pers. **vuestro** (-a, -os, -as), your.  
 3d Pers. **suyo** (-a, -os, -as) or **su** (**sus**), their, your.

a. Before nouns, the apocopated forms **mi**, **tu**, and **su** are used; and after nouns the full forms, **mío**, **tuyo**, and **suyo**. **Nuestro** and **vuestro** are used either before or after nouns.

b. **Mío** (**mi**) is the possessive corresponding to **yo**, **tuyo** (**tu**) corresponds to **tú**, **nuestro** to **nosotros** (-as), **vuestro** to **vosotros** (-as), and **suyo** (**su**) to **él**, **ella**, **ellos** (-as), **usted**, and **ustedes**.

**118.** Possessive adjectives regularly precede their noun, and agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, not with the possessor.

**nuestro** caballo, our horse.

**nuestra** casa, our house.

**nuestros** caballos, our horses.

**nuestras** casas, our houses.

*a.* In certain indefinite expressions, and sometimes when emphatic, the possessive follows its noun.

**cierto** amigo **mío**, a certain friend of mine.

**algunos** discípulos **nuestros**, some pupils of ours.

**los** vicios **tuyos**, your vices.

*b.* In direct address, **mío** is generally used with an unmodified noun in the singular, and either **mi** or **mío** with a noun modified by an adjective.

**amigo** **mío**, my friend.

**mi** querido amigo, or **querido** amigo **mío**, my dear friend.

**119.** When the thing possessed forms part of the possessor, and is the object of a verb, the possessive adjective is generally replaced by an indirect object-pronoun and the definite article.

**me** corté el dedo, I cut my finger.

**se** quitó el sombrero, he took

**te** salvó la vida, he saved your life.

off his hat.

The same usage obtains with nouns.

(le) salvó la vida á su amigo, he saved his friend's life.

el viento (le) llevó el sombrero al cochero, the wind carried away the driver's hat.

voy á romper (le) la cabeza á ese abogado, I am going to break that lawyer's head.

*a.* When the possessor is the subject of the verb, and no ambiguity is possible, the pronoun is omitted and the definite article alone is used instead of a possessive adjective.

perdí el sombrero, I lost my hat.

la niña abrió los ojos y levantó la cabeza, the girl opened her eyes and raised her head.

tengo los pies mojados y fríos, my feet are wet and cold.

## 120. Infinitive

(1) 'To' before an infinitive is either not expressed in Spanish, or it is expressed by **á** or **de**.

**quiero hablar con usted**, I wish to speak with you.

**espero llegar á tiempo**, I hope to arrive on time.

**aprende á escribir**, he is learning to write.

**estoy obligado á trabajar mucho**, I am obliged to work a great deal.

**trataré de hacerlo**, I shall try to do so.

**tengo vergüenza de pedirlo**, I am ashamed to ask it.

*a.* Most verbs (especially the "modal auxiliaries," **deber**, **querer**, etc.) take no preposition before a following infinitive; **á** is required after a verb of *beginning*, *teaching*, and *learning*, and after most verbs of motion, before a following infinitive; **de** is often used to connect a noun or adjective with a following infinitive, and is found occasionally between verbs (**tratar de ver**, **alegrarse de ir**, etc.).

*b.* But 'to,' meaning 'in order to,' is **para**: **como para vivir**: **no vivo para comer**, 'I eat to live: I do not live to eat.'

(2) After a preposition, the English present participle<sup>1</sup> is to be translated usually by the Spanish infinitive.

**antes de comer**, before eating.

**partió sin decir adiós**, he left without saying good-bye.

**estoy cansado de leer**, I am tired of reading.

(3) Used as a noun, the infinitive usually takes the definite article.

**el comer es indispensable**, (to) eat (*or* eating) is indispensable.

**el saber es útil**, knowledge is useful.

**121. Present Participle.**<sup>1</sup>—The present participle is invariable; that is, it may agree, without changing its

<sup>1</sup> No attempt is here made to distinguish between the present participle and the gerund, either in English or in Spanish.

form, with a masculine or feminine, a singular or plural, noun.

**hablando así las niñas** . . . , the girls speaking thus . . . .  
**gana el pan cosiendo y bordando**, she earns her bread (by) sewing and embroidering.

*a.* We have seen that **hablo** means 'I speak,' 'I do speak' (*emphatic*), or 'I am speaking' (*progressive*); **hablaba** means 'I was speaking' (*progressive*) or 'I used to speak'; **hablaré** means 'I shall speak' or 'I shall be speaking' (*progressive*), etc. But progressive action may also be expressed in Spanish by **estar** and the present participle: **estoy hablando**, 'I am speaking'; **estaba hablando**, 'I was speaking'; **estaré hablando**, 'I shall be speaking,' etc. The progressive form with **estar**, however, is used less often, and is more emphatic, than the English progressive form with 'be.' It is rarely used with the present participles of **ser**, **estar**, **ir**, **venir**, and many other verbs. Instead of **estar**, the verbs **ir**, **venir**, **andar**, are sometimes used to form a periphrastic progressive tense: **va oscureciendo**, 'it is growing dark.'

**122. Past Participle.** — Past participles used as adjectives are inflected like adjectives.

**mi amada patria**, my beloved country.

**las cartas están acabadas**, the letters are finished.

When used to form the perfect tenses, past participles are invariable.

**mi madre ha venido**, my mother has come.

**las manzanas que he comprado son buenas**, the apples that I have bought are good.

*a.* The following otherwise regular verbs have irregular past participles:

**abrir**, (to) open.

**cubrir**, (to) cover.

**escribir**, (to) write.

**imprimir**, (to) print.

**abierto**, opened.

**cubierto**, covered.

**escrito**, written.

**impreso**, printed.

## 123. Idiomatic Expressions.

- (1) *á fé mía*, upon my word.  
*á pesar nuestro*, in spite of us (ourselves).  
*no es culpa mía*, it is not my fault.
- (2) *al leer la carta*, upon reading the letter.  
*al leer yo la carta*, upon my reading the letter.

## Exercise XXIV

A. Algunos historiadores han creído hallar el origen de los Indios americanos en aquellas diez tribus de Israel que fueron conquistadas por un rey de Asiria, unos setecientos años antes de Cristo. Muchos de los vencidos fueron llevados en cautiverio y, mezclándose con los conquistadores, perdieron su nacionalidad. Pero, según dice<sup>1</sup> Esdras, hubo algunos que formaron el proyecto de abandonar la multitud de los Gentiles é irse á un lejano país en donde los hombres nunca habían morado. Algunos opinan que los desgraciados restos de estas tribus llevaron á cabo su designio, pasando á la América, y que fueron los progenitores de la raza india. La historia sólo dice que avanzaron hasta la Media, y fuera de esto no sabemos nada más de sus viajes, ni aparece prueba alguna de que se estableciesen finalmente en la América, excepto una pequeña semejanza entre las costumbres y ceremonias religiosas de los Indios y los antiguos Israelitas. Ambos tenían sus sacerdotes y profetas, sus fiestas, festines y sacrificios. Pero ni estos ni otros puntos de semejanza que se alegan son bastantes para probar la teoría.

B. 1. Certain plans of yours are good, but our designs are better. 2. In a letter which he has written, John says to me: "My dear friend: I am proving a resemblance between the Indians and the ten tribes of Israel." 3. They know that it is not your fault, but they are tired of carrying out your theories. 4. Before leaving the land of the Gentiles the tribes had lost their nationality. 5. To form a plan is easy; to carry it out is difficult. 6. John lost his life in America. 7. The wind has carried off the man's



hat. 8. When I had (*preterite*) opened my eyes, I spoke to the Indians. 9. Raising his head, the boy who was weeping said<sup>2</sup>: "I have cut my hand." 10. Our letter is<sup>3</sup> written. We are sending the letter and a present to our beloved sister. 11. Some friends of his have printed his book of poems. 12. We were speaking to a certain pupil of yours. 13. Upon my word, it is not our fault that the door is<sup>3</sup> open. 14. We cannot<sup>4</sup> live without eating. 15. Writing is useful, and speaking is not always indispensable. 16. In spite of ourselves we are obliged to work a-great-deal. 17. Upon my saying good-by, the girls raised their heads (*sing.*). 18. Our hands are cold and our feet are wet. 19. We know that the ten tribes of Israel were conquered by the king of Assyria, and some believe that-they-can<sup>4</sup> (*infin.*) find the origin of the Indian race in these conquered men. But the points of resemblance that some historians allege are not sufficient to prove our theory. History only says that the conquerors carried (*pret.*) the tribes into captivity; and that later-on<sup>5</sup> the remnants of the ancient Israelites left the country of the Gentiles to<sup>6</sup> go to a distant country. Apart from their religious customs and ceremonies, there appears to be<sup>7</sup> no proof that these unfortunate Israelites were<sup>8</sup> the progenitors of the American Indians. But Esdras has written a history which says that the Israelites, advancing as far as Media and carrying out a certain design of theirs, passed-over to a land where the Gentiles were not dwelling. He knows nothing more of their plans nor of their journeys. We think that they established (*pret.*) themselves in America.

<sup>1</sup> 'says.'    <sup>2</sup> *dijo*.    <sup>3</sup> *está*.    <sup>4</sup> Use *poder*.    <sup>5</sup> *luego*.    <sup>6</sup> *para*.  
<sup>7</sup> Omit.    <sup>8</sup> *fuesen*.

## LESSON XXV

### 124. Possessive Pronouns.

#### SINGULAR

1st Pers. *el mío* (*la mía, los míos, las mías*), mine.

2d Pers. *el tuyo* (*la tuya, los tuyos, las tuyas*), yours, thine.

3d Pers. *el suyo* (*la suya, los suyos, las suyas*), his, hers, its, or yours.

## PLURAL

1<sup>st</sup> Pers. el nuestro (la nuestra, los nuestros, las nuestras), ours.

2<sup>d</sup> Pers. el vuestro (la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras), yours.

3<sup>d</sup> Pers. el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas), theirs *or* yours.

Note that the Spanish possessive pronouns usually require the definite article, while the English do not.

a. Possessive pronouns, like possessive adjectives, agree in gender and number with the things possessed.

mi casa es más grande que la tuya, pero prefiero la tuya á la mía,  
my house is larger than yours, but I prefer yours to mine.

b. Los míos often means 'my people'; los tuyos, 'your people,' etc.

Lo mío means 'mine,' 'what is mine'; lo tuyo, 'yours,' 'what is yours,' etc.

125. Suyo and su have several meanings; hence, in order to avoid ambiguity, it is often necessary to use *de* and the proper personal pronoun instead of *suyo* and *su*.

(1) Instead of *tengo su libro* one would then say:

tengo el libro de él, I have *his* book.<sup>1</sup>

tengo el libro de ella, I have *her* book.

tengo el libro de usted, I have *your* book.

tengo el libro de ellos, I have their (*masc.*) book.

tengo el libro de ellas, I have their (*fem.*) book.

tengo el libro de ustedes, I have your (*plur.*) book.

(2) And instead of *tengo el suyo* one would say:

tengo el de él, I have *his*.

tengo el de ella, I have *hers*.

tengo el de usted, I have *yours*.

tengo el de ellos, I have *theirs* (*masc.*).

tengo el de ellas, I have *theirs* (*fem.*).

tengo el de ustedes, I have *yours* (*plur.*).

<sup>1</sup> One may also say *tengo su libro de él* (*ella, ellos, ellas, usted, ustedes*).

- a. The same construction is used with the possessive case of nouns.  
**tengo el libro de Miguel**, I have Michael's book.  
**tengo el de Miguel**, I have Michael's.
- b. The definite article is usually omitted before a possessive pronoun (or noun) in predicate.  
**esta pluma es mía**, this pen is mine.  
**esa pluma es de usted**, that pen is yours.  
**aquella pluma es de Miguel**, that pen (over there) is Michael's.

But the article is used to make an emphatic distinction.

**esta pluma es la mía** (la de usted, la de Miguel), *this pen (not the other) is the one that belongs to me (to you, to Michael).*

**126. Regular Verbs:** First, Second, and Third Conjugations. Study §§ 207-212.

**127. Orthographic Changes** that occur in the inflection of both regular and irregular verbs. Study §§ 213-219 and § 226.

### Exercise XXV

- A. 1. Saque Vd. la pobre mosca del agua en que ha caído.  
 2. Averigüé ayer la razón de la conducta de ella. 3. Tu tío y el nuestro son amigos íntimos del padre de ellos. 4. Conozco á su primo de Vd. 5. Pague Vd. las cuentas que nos trajeron<sup>1</sup> el sastre y la lavandera, y cojamos el tranvía para ir al despacho. 6. Temamos al hombre que no ama á su patria. 7. Esta casa es mía; pagué seis mil duros por ella. 8. Tu tema, el de Carlos, y el mío no tienen las mismas faltas. 9. Creyendo falsas las noticias de la muerte de ella, mis sobrinas no me dijeron<sup>2</sup> nada del asunto. 10. Si yerro en lo que digo,<sup>3</sup> corrijan Vds. los pormenores de mi relación. 11. Distingamos lo blanco de lo negro. 12. Las aguas hirvientes bulleron en torno del nadador, y pronto desapareció. 13. No arguyamos en favor de semejante sistema. 14. Rece Vd. por el alma del difunto. 15. El capitán se retiró porque

muchos de los suyos habían caído, heridos por las balas de los enemigos. 16. Continúe Vd. su obra según el plan original, y no la varíe en nada. 17. Este aceite huele mal. 18. No delincamos, quebrando esta ley antigua. 19. Venzan los soldados á los enemigos de la patria, y sus conciudadanos los alabarán. 20. Lo mío no es lo tuyo.

*B.* 1. My cousins thought that the news of his death was false.<sup>4</sup> 2. The tailor and the laundress brought their bills yesterday;<sup>5</sup> let-us-pay them. 3. This letter is ours; that-one is John's. 4. (Let) the soldier conquer the enemy of his country. 5. Let-us-ascertain now the reason of their behavior. 6. This theme is mine; let-us-correct the mistakes in it. 7. Your nieces and his err in what they say.<sup>6</sup> 8. Let them not vary their work in any-way; Charles is continuing his according-to our original plan. 9. Let them pray for the soul of the soldier who has fallen. 10. The captain praised his-men, because they had (*imperf.*) conquered the enemy. 11. I distinguish what-is-mine from what-is-yours. 12. I do not argue in favor of that system, because I do not know the details of it. 13. John has Peter's hat, Peter has mine, and I have John's. 14. The soldiers burnished the metal of their weapons. 15. With my story I drew<sup>7</sup> (*pret.*) Charles from his melancholy. 16. Let our fellow-citizens know<sup>8</sup> us, and they will say<sup>9</sup> that we love our country. 17. These flowers are ours and not his; they smell good.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Pret. of *traer*.    <sup>2</sup> 'told.'    <sup>3</sup> 'I say.'    <sup>4</sup> Say: 'thought false the news of his death.'

<sup>5</sup> Put the adverb immediately after the verb.

<sup>6</sup> *dicen*.

<sup>7</sup> Use *sacar*.

<sup>8</sup> *conozcan*.

<sup>9</sup> *dirdn*.

<sup>10</sup> *bien*.

## LESSON XXVI

### 128. Demonstrative Adjectives.

este (-a, -os, -as), this.

ese (-a, -os, -as), that.

aquel (aquella, -os, -as), that.

a. A demonstrative adjective regularly precedes its noun: **esta mujer**, 'this woman.'

**129.** **Este** denotes what is near the speaker; **ese**, what is near the person addressed; and **aquel**, what is remote from both. In reference to time, **este** denotes present time; **ese**, a near period; and **aquel**, remote time.

<b>esta pluma que yo tengo</b> , this pen which I have.	<b>aquella pluma que él tiene</b> , that pen which he has.
<b>esa pluma que tú tienes</b> , that pen which you have.	<b>esta semana</b> , this week.
	<b>ese mes</b> , that month.
	<b>aquel año</b> , that (remote) year.

### 130. Demonstrative Pronouns.

<b>éste</b> (-a, -os, -as), this (one).	<b>esto</b> , this.
<b>ése</b> (-a, -os, -as), that (one).	<b>eso</b> , that.
<b>aqué</b> ( <b>aquélla</b> , -os, -as), that (one).	<b>aquello</b> , that.

The masculine and feminine forms take the accent; the neuter (**esto**, **eso**, **aquello**) do not. The neuter pronouns do not represent a noun, but a whole phrase, sentence, or idea (compare with **ello**).

**aquella casa es más alta que ésta**, that house is taller than this one.  
**no me gustan estas manzanas**; **prefiero aquéllas**, I do not like these apples; I prefer those (over there).

**esos son míos**, those (near you) are mine.

¿**crees esto**? do you believe this (which I have just told)?

**no comprendo eso**, I do not understand that (which you have just told me).

**aquello parece imposible**, that (affair of which we are told) seems impossible.

a. **Éste** sometimes means 'the latter,' and **aqué** 'the former.'

b. The English pronoun 'that' (not denoting a specific object) is **esto**, when it denotes what has to do with the speaker: ¿**crees esto**? 'do you

believe that (which I have just told you)?' An unemphatic 'that' is often not to be expressed in Spanish: **será magnífico**, 'that will be fine.'

c. In correspondence, **en (de, á) ésta** means 'in (from, to) the writer's town,' and **en (de, á) ésa** means 'in (from, to) the correspondent's town,' **ciudad**, 'town,' or **plaza**,<sup>1</sup> 'market,' being understood: **salí ayer de ésa y llegué hoy á ésta**, 'I left your town yesterday, and arrived here to-day.'

**131.** Before a relative clause, and before a phrase introduced by **de**, the definite article is generally used instead of a demonstrative or personal pronoun.<sup>2</sup>

**el que desea mucho siempre es pobre**, he who desires much, is always poor.

**esta muchacha es la que usted buscaba**, this girl is the one (that) you were looking for.

**aquellos caballos son los que vimos ayer**, those horses are the ones (that) we saw yesterday.

**lo que dice es verdad**, what (or that which) he says, is true.

**el de la barba**, the one with the beard.

**la pluma de acero y la de oro**, the steel pen and the gold one (lit., 'the pen of steel and that of gold').

**el perro de usted y el de su amigo**, your dog and that of your friend (your dog and your friend's).

**lo de ayer**, the affair of yesterday.

a. The demonstrative adjective **aquel** may replace the article. This occurs often when the following relative is the object of a preposition.

**aquella á quien he escrito la carta**, the one to whom I have written the letter.

**aquel de la capa verde**, that one with the green cloak.

**aquello de ayer**, that affair of yesterday.

<sup>1</sup> In Mexico, **plaza** often means 'village,' or 'small town.'

<sup>2</sup> When thus used, **el** is sometimes called a pronoun, but it seems best to call it an adjective (the article) when it limits the application of an adjective, a phrase, or a clause, used substantively: as in **el blanco**, 'the white one'; **el de la capa verde**, 'the one with the green cloak'; **el que vino ayer**, 'the one that came yesterday.' Note the same use of the adjective **aquel**, given below in a.

132. Radical-changing Verbs. — First Class. Study §§ 221–228.

Exercise XXVI

A. 1. ¿No entiende Vd. lo que prueba este argumento? — Sí, pero no lo creo bastante fuerte. 2. Hay dos manzanas maduras en este plato: ésta es la mía y aquélla es la de Juan. 3. Este invierno nieva muchísimo y hiela muy á menudo. 4. Cuéntenos Vd. lo que aconteció ayer tarde. 5. Al presente llueve en ésta y á menudo truena; espero que haga buen tiempo en ésa. 6. El bibliotecario desea que Vds. le devuelvan el libro que les prestó esta mañana. 7. Los historiadores nos recuerdan los hechos de los que eran personajes principales en el tiempo pasado. 8. Aunque el soldado se defiende con atrevimiento heroico, ~~no~~ vencerá al enemigo poderoso que le acomete. 9. Despiértate, Enrique, ya son las ocho. 10. Como me duelen la cabeza y los dientes, no pienso salir hoy. 11. ¿Qué piensan los Franceses y los Rusos de la nueva coalición entre los Ingleses y los Alemanes? 12. Nuestra madre piensa siempre en nosotros cuando estamos ausentes. 13. No es la vanidad lo que mueve á esta mujer, sino su terquedad. 14. El duque de Jícara es aquel de quien hablamos: desciende de un guerrero célebre de la Edad Media. 15. Á causa de la fiebre amarilla el ejército americano pierde muchos hombres en Cuba. 16. Nuestras hermanas vierten un raudal de lágrimas cuando piensan en su buena tía. 17. Esta criada y la de la nariz remangada no son bonitas, pero son hacendosas. 18. El que no guarda las leyes humanas, no obedece tampoco las leyes divinas, y pierde la estimación de sus compatriotas.

B. 1. He has a toothache and is shedding a lot of tears. 2. We hope that our friends are thinking of us when we are absent in the <sup>1</sup> Philippines.<sup>2</sup> 3. They do not understand what-you-say<sup>3</sup>; tell them what happened today. 4. I awake always at six o'clock



in<sup>4</sup> the morning. 5. What do you think of the coalition between the French and the Russians? 6. This historian is one<sup>1</sup> of those who recall to us the deeds of heroic personages of the Middle Ages. 7. This is the book that I lent to Charles: the-one-that-you-have is John's; and that-one on the table is Mary's. 8. He who attacks well defends himself well. 9. Vanity and obstinacy move that woman (of-whom-you-speak), and the one with the snub nose also. 10. The Duke of Tetuán is-descended (*pres. indic.*) from the warrior of whom the historians have spoken so often. 11. Your maid is the one of whom we were speaking. 12. The librarian does not desire me to return<sup>5</sup> the book today. 13. It is snowing or raining all-the-time<sup>6</sup> in this-town: we hope that the weather is good in yours. 14. We do not mean to go out when there-is-thunder.<sup>7</sup> 15. Prove your argument, and we shall believe it strong enough. 16. Those who do not obey the human laws, do not observe the divine laws either, and they lose the respect of all their compatriots.

<sup>1</sup> Omit.    <sup>2</sup> Filipinas.    <sup>3</sup> *eso*.    <sup>4</sup> *de*.    <sup>5</sup> Say: "that I return," using pres. subj.    <sup>6</sup> *siempre*.    <sup>7</sup> Use *tronar* in the pres. indic.

## LESSON XXVII

### 133. Relative Pronouns.

**que, who, which, that.**

**el cual and el que, who, which.**

**quien, who.**

**cuanto, all that.**

- a.* A relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent.
- b.* A relative pronoun is sometimes omitted in English, but never in Spanish: 'the man I saw' = 'the man that (whom) I saw,' **el hombre que ví**.
- c.* An English relative clause sometimes ends with a preposition; in Spanish the preposition must precede the pronoun it governs: 'the house that we live in' = 'the house in which we live,' **la casa en que vivimos**.

**134. Que, 'who, which, that,' is invariable, and as subject or object of a verb it may refer to persons or things; it is the most common of the Spanish relative pronouns.**

- |                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>la muchacha que cose</b> , the girl<br>that is sewing.                         | <b>la facilidad con que escribe</b> , the<br>ease with which he writes.                                                                            |
| <b>el indio que</b> <sup>1</sup> <b>mataron</b> , the Indian<br>whom they killed. | <b>la viuda, que amaba tiernamente</b><br><b>á su marido</b> , le olvidó en breve,<br>'the widow who dearly loved<br>her husband soon forgot him.' |
| <b>los libros que están sobre la mesa</b> ,<br>the books that are on the table.   |                                                                                                                                                    |

*a.* After a preposition, **que** refers to things, and **quien** (**quienes**) to persons.

- |                                                            |                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>la casa en que vivo</b> , the house in<br>which I live. | <b>el hombre á quien escribí</b> , the<br>man to whom I wrote. |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|

- 135.**      **el cual** (**la cual**, **los cuales**, **las cuales**, **lo cual**),  
              **el que** (**la que**, **los que**, **las que**, **lo que**), who, which.

The masculine and feminine forms refer to persons or things; the neuter forms refer only to a whole phrase, sentence, or idea.

Instead of **que**, either **el cual** (**la cual**, etc.) or **el que** (**la que**, etc.) is regularly used in cases of ambiguity, emphasis, or the separation of antecedent and relative.

**he escrito á la hija del señor Martínez, la cual está enferma**, 'I have written to Mr. Martínez' daughter, who is ill.'

**hallé en el bolsillo cincuenta pesos en moneda de oro y plata, los cuales (los que) dí á mi padre**, I found in the purse fifty dollars in gold and silver coin, which I gave to my father.

**el profesor me escribe que te comportas bien, lo cual (lo que) me agrada muchísimo**, your master (teacher) writes me that you behave well, which pleases me greatly.

*a.* Moreover, **el cual** or **el que** is generally used when the relative is governed by **por** or **sin**,<sup>2</sup> or by a preposition of two or more syllables. After a compound preposition, **el cual** is preferable to **el que**.

**las razones por las cuales (las que) se decidió**, the reasons on account of which he decided.

<sup>1</sup> Note the omission of **á**, although **que** refers to a specific person.

<sup>2</sup> In referring to persons, **quien** may be used with **por** and **sin**.

la ciudad hacia la cual (la que) marchaba el ejército, the city toward which the army was marching.

el edificio en frente del cual me estaba esperando mi amigo, the building in front of which my friend was awaiting me.

b. **Lo cual** or **lo que** is regularly used as the neuter relative; **que** is rarely neuter: **le presté todos mis libros, lo cual (lo que) le dió mucho placer**, 'I lent him all my books, which pleased him greatly.' For the use of **lo que**, meaning 'that which, what,' see Demonstrative Pronouns, § 131.

c. There is usually little choice between **el cual** and **el que**, except that **el cual** is used the oftener in literary language.

REMARK. — It should be noted that **el que** has two meanings, 'who' (as explained above) or 'he who' (as explained in § 131). In the first case, the article modifies only the relative pronoun; in the second case it modifies the entire relative clause.

**136. Radical-changing Verbs. — Second and Third Classes. Study §§ 229–234.**

### Exercise XXVII

A. 1. Prefiero que muramos á que no sacudamos el yugo del extranjero. 2. El hombre que no se arrepiente de sus pecados no se convierte jamás en buen cristiano. 3. Sonriéndose, el soldado, sin la ayuda del cual yo no hubiera escapado del peligro, partió para la ciudad. 4. Yo no hubiera creído que consintieran sus hermanas de Vd. en la proposición de quedarse aquí, la cual les hizo<sup>1</sup> su tío. 5. En el presente de indicativo y de subjuntivo, así como en el singular del imperativo, *erguir* pertenece á dos conjugaciones: podemos decir *yergo, yerga, yergue* ó *irgo, irga, irgue*. 6. Sentiría muchísimo que Vd. no durmiese bien esta noche. 7. Yo no concibo que Vd. pida tanto dinero por una cosa que no cuesta mucho. 8. De esta fuente el agua sale hirviendo. 9. Tengo una pluma-tintero, sin la cual no podría apuntar las

cosas que advierto. 10. Las hijas de mi tía con las cuales hablábamos ayer no refieren chismes á sus vecinas. 11. Los mozos se despidieron de su madre y siguieron á su hermano mayor á la guerra. 12. El muchacho á quien hemos dado el premio no miente nunca. 13. Éste es un refrán español: "Medio mundo se ríe del otro medio, y yo solo me río del mundo entero." 14. El herido no gimió, lo cual me sorprendió. 15. Los rayos del sol hieren los cristales de la ventana y aclaran el interior del aposento. 16. Los tertulianos que estaban reunidos junto á la puerta dejaron entrar á María, la hija mayor del conde, á la cual el duque conducía por la mano. 17. Las naranjas de que hablabais no están maduras, lo que nos obliga á botarlas. 18. Éste es el árbol debajo del cual hemos hallado las monedas. 19. Aunque se vista de seda la mona, mona se queda. 20. Este muchacho riñe siempre con la hermana de su amiguito Carlos, la cual es una niña discola. 21. Si consiguiese hallar un buen libro, lo leería hoy.

*B.* 1. The duke does not conceive how<sup>2</sup> Mary should quarrel (*pres. subj.*) with her brother. 2. The guests did not consent to the proposition of remaining near the window. 3. If the count succeeds in escaping from the peril, he will laugh at the whole world. 4. This is the tree near which the Christians were assembled. 5. The water is boiling and the sunbeam is striking it. 6. I do not talk gossip and I smile at the sins of my brother, which surprises my aunt's neighbors, who are always gossiping and lying. 7. Let us take leave of the wounded-man; he slept well yesterday and he is not moaning tonight. 8. The soldier repented and became-converted into a<sup>3</sup> good Christian. 9. *Yergue* and *irgue* belong to the imperative of *erguir*, which in the singular of the subjunctive has *irga* and *yerga*. 10. Charles's elder sister, who is under the tree, dresses well. 11. Let us follow the soldier to the city toward which the army is marching. 12. The man did not consent to the proposition which the count made him; he preferred to die. 13. Never lie, and always repent of your sins.

14. This is a Spanish proverb: "Although the monkey dressed in silk, she remained a<sup>3</sup> monkey." 15. The prize which we are giving to the boy does not cost much. 16. We started for the city, which obliged them to follow us. 17. The soldiers who found the books gave them to the men to whom they belonged. 18. We threw away the oranges which were not ripe; the lads regretted it, although it did not surprise them. 19. If I asked-for (*imperf. subj.*) money, without which I should not be able to start for the city, you would laugh. 20. This is the fountain under which the boy found the book and the coins.

<sup>1</sup> 'made.'

<sup>2</sup> *que*.

<sup>3</sup> Omit.

## LESSON XXVIII

**137. Quien (quienes), 'who,'** in modern Spanish refers only to persons or personified things.

(1) After a preposition,<sup>1</sup> **quien** is used instead of **que**, in referring to persons; as in **el amigo de quien hablamos** 'the friend of whom we are speaking.'

(2) When the subject or the direct object of a verb, **quien** either introduces a clause which is not restrictive of the antecedent, or it includes its antecedent.

**ví á tu señor padre, quien me lo contó todo**, I saw your father, who told me all.

**me lo contó todo tu señor padre, á quien ví poco ha**, your father, whom I saw a short while ago, told me all.

**quien te adula te agravia**, he who flatters you, insults you.

**no tengo á quien dirigirme**, I have not any one to whom to apply.

Cf. **ví al hombre que te lo contó todo**, 'I saw the man who' (restrictive) 'told you all.'

<sup>1</sup> After a compound preposition, **el cual** is preferable to **quien**.

*a.* **Quien** sometimes serves to indicate the number of its antecedent, or the fact that the antecedent is a person.

**me topé con el abuelo de estos niños, quien los buscaba en todas partes,**  
I ran across the grandfather of these children, who was looking for them everywhere.

**ayer ví al dueño de la casa, quien está en esta ciudad,** yesterday I saw the owner of the house, who is in this city.

*b.* **Quien** is equivalent to either one of the two **el que's** (see §§ 131 and 135).

**quien (el que) calla otorga,** he who is silent gives consent.

**llamé á un mozo, á quien (al que) entregué la carta,** I called a waiter, to whom I gave the letter.

But in colloquial language, **quien** is rarely used as the subject or the direct object of a verb, save in a few proverbial expressions; in its stead **el cual** or **el que** is used.

*c.* Correlative **quien . . . quien** means 'one . . . another': **quien lloraba, quien gemía,** 'one was weeping, another was groaning,' or 'some were weeping and some were groaning.'

**138. Cuanto (-a, -os, -as),** 'how much,' 'how many,' 'all that,' is used as pronoun or adjective.

**le ofrecí cuanto dinero tenía,** 'I offered him all the money that I had.'  
**cuantos entraron en el buque, perecieron,** all that entered the ship perished.

**139. Cuyo (-a, -os, -as),** 'whose,' 'of whom,' 'of which,' is a relative possessive adjective. It agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed, and it may refer to persons or things.

**la señora cuyas amigas han llegado,** the lady whose friends have arrived.

**un lugar de cuyo nombre no me acuerdo,** a place the name of which I do not remember.

**140.** The adverb **donde**, 'where,' is often used as equivalent to a preposition plus a relative, and sometimes with the preposition expressed, as in **la casa donde (en donde) vivo**, 'the house in which I live.'

**141. Verbs with Inceptive Endings and -uir Verbs. —**  
Study §§ 220 and 235.

### Exercise XXVIII

*A.* 1. Agradezcamos á quien nos favorece. Siempre agradecemos á las personas de quienes hemos recibido favores.  
2. Mañana visitaré la casa donde nació el gran poeta. 3. ¿No quiere Vd. decirme el nombre del caballero cuya tarjeta de visita la criada acaba de darle? — Sí, la tarjeta lleva el nombre del Señor Suárez, quien (*or* el que) escribió la más interesante novela del año pasado. 4. Estoy pidiendo á mi librero una novela más corta que la suya y que no carezca de interés; no me importa que no instruya con tal que no me entristezca.  
5. Sentiríamos muchísimo que Vd. atribuyera á este autor defectos que no tiene. 6. No es cosa nueva calumniar las mejores acciones, atribuyéndoles viciosas causas. 7. Los ciudadanos pidieron que se disminuyesen las contribuciones y que se distribuyesen más uniformemente las cargas públicas.  
8. Á los tiranos no les gusta que nazcan hombres libres en sus dominios. 9. Hay muchos proverbios españoles como éstos: quien á los suyos se parece, honra merece; nunca bien sirve quien (*or* el que) con su dueño arguye; muchas veces quien huye del fuego da en las brasas. 10. No nos gusta que el autor de este libro luzca tanto sus conocimientos lingüísticos. 11. El discípulo merece un duro castigo, porque su mala conducta influye en la de toda la clase. 12. Anochecer en un lugar significa llegar ó estar en un lugar al empezar la noche ó antes de que anochezca completamente



13. He hablado con el maestro de estos discípulos, quien me ha dado cuantos informes deseo acerca de la conducta de ellos. 14. Escribo al Senador Cisneros, á quien (*or* al que) tengo que felicitar por su brillante discurso en pró de la reforma arancelaria. 15. ¿Ha estado Vd. en la ciudad de Waltham, donde se fabrican muy buenos relojes?—Sí, como aficionado á la relojería, me interesa (todo) cuanto se relaciona con esta arte. 16. En este mundo, quien<sup>1</sup> (*or* el que) juzga por apariencias, hasta lo blanco le puede parecer negro.

*B.* 1. I like that Spanish proverb: "To him who judges by appearances even white may seem black." 2. We shall reach the city of Waltham before night comes on. 3. The senator whom I congratulated has just made<sup>2</sup> a speech: he asked that the taxes be diminished. 4. Has the bookseller given you all the information that you wish about the novel? 5. We do not like to have authors displaying their faults in their books. 6. The teacher to whom I spoke will punish the pupil for<sup>3</sup> his bad behavior. 7. A good man does not ascribe vicious causes to good deeds. 8. I do not think<sup>4</sup> that the conduct of the pupil deserves (*pres. subj.*) a severe punishment. 9. Provided a man is born free, it does not matter that he has faults. 10. There is a Spanish proverb: "Out of the frying pan into the fire." 11. (By) distributing the public burdens, the senators will show that all relating to the needs of the citizens interests them. 12. He who is<sup>5</sup> fond of brilliant speeches often judges by appearances. 13. With their teacher the pupils have visited a house in which fine watches are made. 14. The author whose book I have just received argues in favor of tariff reform, but he does not influence the feelings of the citizens, because his book is wholly without interest. 15. He who argued with his master never served him well. 16. I should be sorry that you should argue with the poet in-order-to<sup>6</sup> show off your attainments. 17. Mr. Cisneros is the gentleman whom I thank for that favor. 18. Ask the bookseller for a book which shall instruct (*pres. subj.*) us and shall not sadden us. 19. The maid has given me the visiting card of Mr. Suárez: he is the man whom watch-making and all related to that art interests very much.

20. I ascribe the behavior of the citizens to the taxes which the tyrant will not diminish. 21. It is no new thing to calumniate a man and to ascribe faults to him who hasn't any.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 'if one.' <sup>2</sup> Use *hacer*. <sup>3</sup> *por*. <sup>4</sup> Use *creer*. <sup>5</sup> *está*. <sup>6</sup> *para*. <sup>7</sup> *los*.

## LESSON XXIX

## 142. Interrogative Pronouns.

qué, what.

cuál, which.

quién, who.

cuánto (-a), how much.

The interrogatives take the accent in both direct and indirect questions.

143. Qué, 'what,' may be used as pronoun or adjective. As a pronoun, it refers to things, and is neuter.

¿qué es eso? what is that?

¿qué dijo? what did he say?

¿qué hora es? what time is it?

¿qué hombre es éste? what man is this?

pregunta qué pasajeros han llegado, he asks what passengers have arrived.

*a.* In exclamations, **qué** is 'what (a)' before an attributive, and 'how' before a predicate adjective: ¡qué linda luna! 'what a pretty moon!' ¡qué pálido estás! 'how pale you are!' To add emphasis, **tan**, 'so,' or **más**, 'more,' may be placed before the attributive adjective, which then follows its noun: ¡qué día tan hermoso (más hermoso)! 'what a beautiful day!'

144. **Quién** (**quiénes**), 'who,' is used only as a pronoun, and refers only to persons. Interrogative 'whose' is usually **de quién**.

¿quién llama? who is knocking?

pregunta quiénes eran las señoras, he asks who the ladies were.

¿de quién es aquella hermosa casa? whose is that beautiful house?

¿de quién es este caballo? whose horse is this? (lit., 'of whom is this horse?').

**145. Cuál (cuáles), 'which,'** is chiefly used as a pronoun; it may refer to persons or things.

¿cuál de las plumas quiere usted?      ¿á cuáles de mis amigos ha visto  
which pen (lit., 'which of the      usted hoy? which of my friends  
pens') do you wish?      have you seen to-day?

*a.* **Cuál** may be used adjectively, as in ¿cuál casa prefieres? 'which house do you prefer?' but ¿cuál de las casas prefieres? is the more common construction.

*b.* When 'what' stands in the predicate, it is usually to be expressed by **cuál**: ¿cuál es la fecha de la carta? 'what is the date of the letter?' ¿cuál es la ciudad capital de los Estados Unidos? 'what is the capital city of the United States?' **Qué** is used if a definition is wanted: ¿qué es la filosofía griega? 'what is Greek philosophy?'

**146.** The interrogative possessive **cuyo**, 'whose,' is little used; it refers only to persons, and is, as a rule, used only in the predicate. Interrogative 'whose' is generally **de quién**.

¿cuya (better, de quién) es esta      ¿cuyo (better, de quién) es aquel  
casa? whose house is this?      caballo? whose horse is that?

REMARK.—One does not say: ¿cuya casa habita usted? 'whose house do you occupy?' but ¿cuya (de quién) es la casa que usted habita?

**147. Cuánto (-a)** is 'how much'; **cuántos (-as)**, 'how many.' **Cuánto (-a, -os, -as)** may be used as adjective or pronoun.

¿cuántos hay? how many are there?

¿cuánto dinero necesita usted? how much money do you need?

¿cuántas vacas vendiste? how many cows did you sell?

**148. Irregular Verbs:** *Ir*, '(to) go,' and *Venir*, '(to) come.' Study §§ 247 and 248.

*a.* 'Go and' (followed by a verb) is *ir á*; 'come and' is *venir á*.

*vaya usted á decírselo*, go and tell him. *venga á verlo*, come and see it.

### 149. Idiomatic Expressions.

*va á llover*, it is going to rain.

*vamos á ver*, let us see.

*la noche va oscureciendo*, the night keeps (is) growing darker.

*la niña iba creciendo*, the little girl kept growing.

*iba montado en una mula*, he was riding a mule.

*la semana que viene*, next week.

### Exercise XXIX

- A.* 1. ¿Qué hora es? — Son las once y media. 2. ¿Qué es la aritmética? — Es una de las ciencias exactas. 3. ¿Cuál es la mejor aritmética? — La del Señor Cisneros. 4. ¿Cuánto dinero ha gastado Vd.<sup>1</sup> esta mañana? — Unos quince duros. 5. Si su primo de Vd. viniera á verme, iría con él á visitar al señor catedrático en cuyas clases hemos estudiado. 6. ¿De cuál catedrático habla Vd.? — Del Señor Martínez, el que enseña las lenguas orientales en la Universidad Central. 7. La noche iba oscureciendo como caminábamos montados en nuestras mulas, y nos parecía que iba á llover; pero pronto el viento se hizo<sup>2</sup> frío y los copos de nieve vinieron volando del cielo. 8. Venga lo que viniere, emprenderé esta tarea. 9. Vendremos esta tarde; agüádenos Vd. 10. ¿Qué calle es ésta? — La calle de Alcalá. 11. ¿Cuál es el mejor modo de dirigirme á la Puerta del Sol? — Soy extranjero; pregúntelo Vd. á ese guardia en la acera. 12. ¿Quién es Vd.? — Soy un turista norte-americano. 13. ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que está Vd. en la corte (Madrid)? — Llegué anteayer y quizás me marche mañana. 14. ¡Qué visita más corta! — Pienso volver aquí á mi regreso del Escorial y entonces veré lo que

ahora no he visto. 15. Y ¿qué le ha gustado más á Vd. de lo que ha visto en Madrid? 16. Vamos á ver ; como artista, me ha encantado el gran Museo del Prado, que en mi concepto gana al Louvre, y como arqueólogo, la Armería Real, cuya colección de armaduras es la más completa que he visto. 17. Pues, venga Vd. á ver una corrida de toros ; es la diversión más esencialmente española, y habrá una grande corrida la semana que viene. 18. ¿Quién es aquel hombre que va por la calle montado en una mula? — Es un campesino. 19. ¿Qué modo tan raro de pasearse ! — No es raro en España. 20. Sin duda en su país todo el mundo monta á caballo. Si Vd. fuera al campo, vería más mulas y asnos que caballos. 21. Iré á visitar algunas aldeas castellanas antes de partir de este país. 22. ¿Cúya (De quién) es aquella casa en la esquina de esta calle? 23. ¿Cuál casa? ¿Quiere Vd. decir el gran palacio? Pues, es el palacio del Duque de Villarica. 24. Venga conmigo, iremos á llamar á la puerta, y nos dejarán entrar á ver las hermosas pinturas de Goya que posee el duque. 25. ¿Cuántas obras maestras ha pintado ese gran pintor ! — Sí, no se puede decir cuántas. 26. Dondequiera que vaya Vd., verá las obras de aquél insigne pintor, ó de otros artistas más antiguos, como Velázquez, Murillo y Zurbarán.

*B.* 1. Who teaches Oriental languages in the University? 2. The professor in whose class your cousin studied : come with me and see him. 3. I shall go with you, if it is half-past eleven. How many classes has the professor? 4. Ask your cousin this evening ; I am not going to tell you how many. 5. Which tourist arrived the-day-before-yesterday? 6. What is a tourist? 7. The night will soon be growing dark. 8. What a strange amusement ! Do you mean the bullfight? We shall go and see it next week. 9. If you should go and visit a Spanish village, you would see peasants going along the streets riding on mules. 10. In<sup>3</sup> what way do they go-about in your country? 11. They ride on horseback. 12. In Madrid everybody likes to go and visit the Museum of the

Prado and the Royal Armory. 13. Come what may come (*i.e.* Happen what may), the strangers will take-their-way to the Puerta del Sol. 14. To what street did you go this morning? 15. Let's see; I went to the street on whose corner the Duke's palace is.<sup>4</sup> 16. To my mind, the Spaniards have great painters. On my return from the country, I mean to visit the museums and see the paintings of Velázquez and Murillo. What beautiful works those illustrious artists have painted! 17. Yes; wherever we may-go, we shall see them. 18. Before going to the Prado, I shall come to the Puerta del Sol. 19. What (Which) is the North American way of going-about? We ride on horseback. We do not go riding on donkeys and mules. 20. Who owns more paintings than the archæologist whose collection is in that house on the corner? 21. How long have-you-been-visiting (*pres. indic.*) the capital? 22. It is not going to rain: the snow will come with the cold winds. 23. The masterpieces in the Museum of the Prado surpass those of the Louvre. 24. Are you going to knock at the door? What a strange way of entering a palace! 25. Perhaps we shall come tomorrow, if you return<sup>5</sup> here. 26. One cannot say how-much money the strangers are going to spend. 27. In Spain, everybody likes to see a bull-fight. 28. What artists are older than Zurbarán? 29. What exact sciences did you study in the classes of Mr. Cisneros? 30. How much armor is there in the Royal Armory? 31. Soon the flakes of snow will come flying down from the sky. 32. If you went (*imperf. subj.*) to the Escorial, its collections of beautiful paintings would delight you.

<sup>1</sup> Abbreviation of *usted*: cf. § 90.

<sup>2</sup> Pret. Indic. of *hacer*.

<sup>3</sup> *De*.

<sup>4</sup> Say: 'is the palace of the Duke.' <sup>5</sup> Radical-changing verb, 1st class: *vuelve*.

## LESSON XXX

### 150. Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**Alguien**, 'some one,' 'somebody,' 'any one,' 'anybody,' **algo**, 'something,' 'anything,' are pronouns and invariable. **Alguien** refers only to persons; **algo** is neuter.

**alguien toca á la puerta**, some one is knocking at the door.

**¿hallaste algo?** did you find something (anything)?

*a.* 'Not — any one,' 'not — anybody,' is **no — nadie**; 'not — anything' is **no — nada**. See "Negation," § 165. **Alguien** and **algo** are never combined with negatives.

**151.** **Alguno** (-a, -os, -as), 'some,' 'any,' 'a few,' is used as adjective or pronoun.

**algún**<sup>1</sup> **día**, some day.

**algunos de los amigos de usted**, some of your friends.

**tiene algunos libros muy raros**, he has a ~~few~~ very rare books.

*a.* 'Not — any' is usually **no — ninguno** or **no — alguno** (after noun).

*b.* In partitive expressions, unemphatic 'some' and 'any,' used as adjectives, are generally not to be expressed in Spanish.

<b>tengo pan, pero no tengo mante-</b>	<b>quiero comprar manzanas y na-</b>
<b>quilla</b> , I have some bread, but	<b>ranjas</b> , I wish to buy some ap-
I haven't any butter.	ples and oranges.

In answer to a question, 'some' or 'any' is then expressed by a personal pronoun object, or the noun is repeated.

**¿no tiene Vd. peras?** haven't you any pears? **hoy no las tengo**, I haven't any to-day.

**¿tiene Vd. vino?** have you any wine? **no tengo vino** (or **vino no tengo**), I haven't any.

**¿hay uvas?** are there any grapes? **sí, las hay**, yes, there are some.

**¿hay pan?** is there any bread? **no lo hay** (or **no hay pan**), there isn't any.

**152.** **Unos** (-as) means 'some':

**tengo unos quinientos pesos**, I have some five hundred dollars.

**Unos** sometimes seems to mean little more than 'a pair of.'

**el elefante tiene unas orejas enormes**, the elephant has 'a pair of' enormous ears.

<sup>1</sup> See "Apocopation of Adjectives," § 66.



**153. Nadie**, 'no one,' 'nobody,' 'not any one,' 'not anybody,' **nada**, 'nothing,' 'not anything,' are pronouns and invariable. **Nadie** refers only to persons; **nada** is neuter. See "Negation," § 165.

**nadie ha venido hoy**, no one has come to-day.

**nada veo**, I do not see anything.

**154. Ninguno** (-a, -os, -as), 'none,' 'no,' 'not any,' is used as adjective or pronoun.

**ninguna casa**, no (not any) house.

**ninguno de los niños**, none of the children.

a. English 'no,' 'not any,' is often expressed by **no**, 'not,' before the verb.

**no tengo tiempo**, I have no (not any) time.

**no tiene enemigos**, he has no (not any) enemies.

**155. Mucho** (-a), 'much,' **muchos** (-as), 'many,' is used as adjective or pronoun.

**mucho tiempo**, much (a great deal of) time.

**muchos años**, many years.

**muchos han partido**, many have left.

a. 'Very much' is **muchísimo** (rather than **muy mucho**).

**156. Poco** (-a), 'little' (meaning 'a small quantity'), **pocos** (-as), 'few,' is used as adjective or pronoun.

**tengo poco dinero**, I have little money.

**pocos han venido**, few have come.

a. **Un poco de** is 'a little': **tengo un poco de vino**, 'I have a little wine'; cf. **tengo poco vino y mucha leche**, 'I have a little (*i.e.* only a little) wine and much milk.'

**157. Todo** (-a, -os, -as), 'all,' 'every,' is used as adjective or pronoun.

<b>todo</b> aquel día, all that day.	<b>todos</b> los hombres, all the men. <sup>1</sup>
<b>toda</b> mujer, every woman.	<b>todas</b> las noches, every night.
<b>todo</b> el mundo, everybody.	<b>todos</b> lo dicen, all say so.

*a.* 'All,' meaning 'the whole,' is **todo** (-a, -os, -as) **el** (la, los, las) : **toda la semana**, 'all week.'

*b.* The neuter pronoun **todo** means 'all,' 'everything': **todo es vanidad en este mundo**, 'all is vanity in this world.'

**158. Mismo** (-a, -os, -as), 'same,' 'very,' 'self,' 'himself' ('herself,' etc.), is used as an adjective.

**el mismo** día, the same day.

**el exceso mismo** de mi felicidad **me matará**, the very excess of my happiness will kill me.

**él mismo** me lo dijo, he told me so himself.

**creo que es usted la misma** virtud, I believe that you are virtue itself.

In the sense of 'self,' it often follows the noun or pronoun.

*a.* **El mismo** (la misma, los mismos, las mismas, lo mismo), 'the same,' is used as pronoun.

**159. Ambos** (-as), **los dos** (las dos), 'both (of),' are used as adjectives or pronouns.

**tengo las dos** (ambas) **manos heladas**, both of my hands are frozen.

**nos ama á los dos**, he loves us both.

**160. Cada**, 'each,' is used as adjective, and **cada uno** (-a) or **cada cual**, 'each (one),' as pronoun (**cada** is invariable).

**cada vez**, each time.

**dí un peso á cada uno** (**cada cual**), I gave each one a dollar.

**161. Otro** (-a, -os, -as), 'other,' 'another,' is used as adjective or pronoun ; it does not admit the indefinite article.

<sup>1</sup> **Todos los hombres** is 'all men' (generally speaking) if the noun denotes all of its kind.

el otro día, the other day.	otra semana, another week.
quiero otro caballo, I wish another horse.	no tengo otros, I have no others (I haven't any others).

Note the position of **otro** in **otros muchos**, 'many others,' **otros tres**, 'three others,' etc.

**162. Uno (-a) y otro (-a)**, 'both' (in the sense of 'each'), **uno (-a) ú otro (-a)**, 'either (one),' **ni uno (-a) ni otro (-a)**, 'neither (one),' 'not either (one),' **el uno — el otro (la una — la otra)**, 'each other,' **los unos — los otros (las unas — las otras)**, 'one another,' are used as adjectives or pronouns.

**personas de uno y otro sexo**, persons of both sexes.

**aceptaré uno ú otro**, I will accept either (one).

**no quiero ni uno ni otro**, I wish neither (one), *or* I do not wish either (one).

**se burlan el uno del otro**, they make sport of each other.

**163. Tal (tales)**, 'such,' 'such a,' is used as adjective or pronoun; it is never followed by the indefinite article.

**tales hombres**, such men.

**tal muchacho**, such a boy.

*a. Un tal* is 'one,' 'a certain'; *el tal* is 'the said': **me lo contó un tal Manzanares**, 'one (a certain) Manzanares told me'; **el tal Gómez era un pícaro**, 'the said Gomez was a rascal.'

**164. Cosa**, 'thing,' is used in the formation of many compound indefinite pronouns, which occur frequently in colloquial language.

**alguna cosa**, something, anything.

**ninguna cosa** or **cosa alguna**, nothing, not anything.

**la misma cosa**, the same thing.

**otra cosa**, something else, anything else.

**tal cosa**, such a thing, etc.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also in interrogative **qué cosa**, 'what thing.'

**165. Negation.** — The pronouns **nadie**, 'no one,' **nada**, 'nothing,' **ninguno**, 'none,' and the adverbs **ni** — **ni**, 'neither — nor,' **nunca** and **jamás**, 'never,'<sup>1</sup> and **tampoco**, 'not either,' require the verb to be made negative when they follow the verb. They are negative in themselves if they precede the verb or if no verb is expressed.<sup>2</sup>

**no temo nada** or **nada temo**. I fear nothing (I do not fear anything).

**no tengo ni pluma ni papel** or **ni pluma ni papel tengo**. I have neither pen nor paper (I haven't either pen or paper).

**no le ví nunca** or **nunca le ví**, I never saw him.

**nadie se acordaba de él**, **ni él se acordaba de nadie**. no one remembered him, nor did he remember any one.

**su hijo no es**, **ni será nunca nadie**, her son is not nor ever will be anything.

**no quiero aquel caballo tampoco** or **tampoco quiero aquel caballo**. I do not wish that horse either.

¿**Quién viene?** — **Nadie**. Who is coming? — No one.

¿**Qué dice Vd.?** — **Nada**. What are you saying? — Nothing.

*a.* As a rule, negative pronouns and adverbs are used instead of positive ones if the sentence is in any way negative, or expects a negative answer, or if the pronoun or adverb follows a comparative.

**es inútil decir nada**, it is useless to say anything.

**sin olvidarte nunca**, without ever forgetting you.

¿**hay nada más sublime?** is there anything more sublime?

**el viejo parece más feliz que nunca**, the old man seems happier than ever.

*b.* In a negative sentence, **alguno** may be used instead of **ninguno**, in which case **alguno** follows its noun: **no tiene enemigo alguno**, 'he has no enemy.'

<sup>1</sup> 'Never' is commonly expressed by **nunca**. **Jamás** after a positive verb is positive: ¿**ha visitado Vd. jamás á Méjico?** 'have you ever visited Mexico?'

<sup>2</sup> In colloquial language, the negative (except **no**) usually follows the verb, e.g. **no tengo nada** is more common than **nada tengo**, 'I have nothing,' or 'I haven't anything.'

**166. Irregular Verbs.**

Querer, ' (to) wish,' and poder, ' (to) be able (can).'

Study §§ 242 and 243.

**167. Idiomatic Expressions.**

el niño puede caerse, the child may fall.	él puede más que yo, he is stronger than I.
no puedo más, I can't do any more, I am played out.	¿quiere usted venir conmigo? will you come with me?
no pudo menos de sonreírse, he couldn't help smiling.	la quiere mucho, he is very fond of her.
puede que, it is possible that.	¿qué quiere decir esto? what does this mean?

**Exercise XXX**

A. 1. Alguien tiene que responder del resultado. 2. Algún día nos veremos frente á frente y podremos ver quién de los dos puede más. 3. ¿Tiene Vd. cambio por un peso? — ¿Cuánto necesita Vd. pagar? — Una peseta (veinte centavos). — Aquí tiene Vd. — Muchas gracias. 4. Nadie sabe lo que ha de suceder mañana. 5. Ninguno de los cuatro niños sabe leer ó escribir. 6. Más vale poco que nada. 7. Él y yo íbamos en el mismo tren. 8. Este retrato es el mismo Antonio. 9. Ambos contendientes perecieron. Cada uno peleó con valor; otro caballero quiso intervenir y salió herido. 10. Pasemos á otra cosa. 11. Nadie dudaba del éxito. 12. ¿Podría Vd. facilitarme su diccionario? — Sí, pero quisiera que Vd. se sirviera devolvérmelo cuanto antes. 13. La maestra quisiera á cada niña, si estudiase sus lecciones. 14. ¿Quiere Vd. darme un poco de pan y queso? 15. Todos los caminos llevan á Roma. 16. Hay muchísimos alfileres en esta caja, pero no los puedo hallar nunca. 17. Ellos mismos no quisieron venir, porque yo no pude convidarlos. Tal cosa jamás se ha

visto. 18. Estaba en la sala un tal Herreros. 19. No es oro todo lo que reluce. 20. Sobre todo, él no quiso hablar con nadie. 21. No podemos más : estamos más fatigados que nunca. 22. Á nadie quiere recibir el hombre malo : ni sus amigos, ni sus parientes pueden entrar á verle. 23. ¿ Hay nada más interesante que el Don Quijote de Cervantes? 24. No podemos menos de quejarnos cuando consideramos nuestra condición desgraciada. 25. Juan no sabe lo que quiere decir esto ; ni su hermano tampoco. 26. ¿ Quién le ha dicho á Vd. que no queremos á nuestros padres?—Nadie. 27. No tenemos duda alguna acerca del éxito de la empresa. 28. Sin duda alguna no pudiéramos derrotar al enemigo, si no tuviésemos un fuerte ejército. 29. Es posible que haya algo en la cesta, pero no podemos hallar nada. 30. Alguien llama á la puerta : sin duda algunos de nuestros amigos quieren entrar. 31. Si quieres ser bien servido, sítvete á ti mismo. 32. Yo podría hacer ese favor, pero no quisiera molestar á mi amigo. 33. Puede que llueva mañana. 34. Ahorraremos nuestro dinero por lo que pudiere tronar. 35. ¿ Quién habla? —Nadie.

*B.* 1. I can see each (every) gentleman in the room ; John cannot see each (every) one of them. 2. Who doubts the result? Nobody : we can all answer for the outcome. 3. We need twenty cents. That<sup>1</sup> is little. Yes ; but a little is better than nothing. 4. Can there be anything more wretched than the condition of the said Herreros? 5. We are played out : do you know what that means? 6. One or another of the armies will be able to rout the enemy. Of this I have no doubt whatever. 7. Some of our enterprises could not have any success. 8. We do not wish to complain because we have no gold ; and everybody knows that all is not gold that glistens. 9. It is possible that you may be well served if you serve yourself. 10. I should not like to do a favor for Antonio, nor for John, either. 11. This gentleman could fight well, if he had another opponent. 12. Never have I been able to find any pins in your box. 13. Both wished to go with us in the same train ; but we could invite neither. 14. We should like you

to-be-kind-enough to pass to something else. 15. The men could not help saying that they had no cheese and that they desired but little bread. 16. Is anybody knocking at the door? Yes; some of our friends wish to come in and see us, but we shall be unable to receive them. 17. It is possible that nobody may-wish (*pres. subj.*) to do us that favor. 18. Each of the roads leads to Rome. 19. The said Herreros says that he has seen a certain Sánchez and another man with him. 20. Could you oblige me with twenty pesetas?—Many thanks. I shall pay you as soon as possible. 21. I should not like to see my enemy face to face; one or other of us might perish. 22. Save your money against contingencies.<sup>2</sup> 23. Both of the contestants fight valorously. Which of the two is the stronger? 24. I cannot say what will happen tomorrow if you do not study your lessons. 25. They wished to return us our box, but they could not find it. 26. We might enter into the room if we wished to speak with somebody. 27. The enemies were fighting; our friends sought<sup>3</sup> to interfere, and came-out (of it) with-a-wound.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *eso*.    <sup>2</sup> Cf. *A* 34.    <sup>3</sup> Use *querer*.    <sup>4</sup> *heridos*: cf. *A* 9.

---

## LESSON XXXI

### 168. Cardinal Numerals.

cero,	0.	nueve,	9.
uno (-a), <sup>1</sup>	1.	diez,	10.
dos,	2.	once,	11.
tres,	3.	doce,	12.
cuatro,	4.	trece,	13.
cinco,	5.	catorce,	14.
seis,	6.	quince,	15.
siete,	7.	diez y seis, <sup>2</sup>	16.
ocho,	8.	diez y siete,	17.

<sup>1</sup> See § 66.

<sup>2</sup> These numbers are also written in one word, as, *dieciséis*, *veintiuno* *treintaiuno*, etc.



diez y ocho,	18.	ciento, <sup>1</sup>	100.
diez y nueve,	19.	ciento y uno,	101.
veinte,	20.	ciento y diez,	110.
veinte y uno,	21.	doscientos (-as),	200.
veinte y dos,	22.	trescientos (-as),	300.
veinte y tres,	23.	cuatrocientos (-as),	400.
veinte y cuatro,	24.	quinientos (-as),	500.
veinte y cinco,	25.	seiscientos (-as),	600.
veinte y seis,	26.	setecientos (-as), <sup>2</sup>	700.
veinte y siete,	27.	ochocientos (-as),	800.
veinte y ocho,	28.	novcientos (-as), <sup>2</sup>	900.
veinte y nueve,	29.	mil,	1,000.
treinta,	30.	mil y ciento,	1,100.
treinta y uno,	31.	mil y doscientos (-as),	1,200.
cuarenta,	40.	dos mil,	2,000.
cincuenta,	50.	cien <sup>1</sup> mil,	100,000.
sesenta,	60.	doscientos (-as) mil,	200,000.
setenta,	70.	un millón,	1,000,000.
ochenta,	80.	dos millones,	2,000,000.
noventa,	90.		

a. The cardinals are invariable, except **uno** (-a), **-cientos** (-as) in the combinations from **doscientos** (-as) to **novcientos** (-as) inclusive, and **quinientos** (-as): **doscientos hombres**, 'two hundred men'; **doscientas mujeres**, 'two hundred women'; **doscientas mil personas**, 'two hundred thousand persons.'

b. In compound numerals, **uno** (-a) drops the final vowel before a masculine or a feminine noun: **treinta y un soldados**, 'thirty-one soldiers'; **cincuenta y un casas**, 'fifty-one houses.'

c. **Millón** takes **un**, but **ciento** and **mil** do not: **cien estudiantes**, 'one hundred students'; **mil pesos**, 'one thousand dollars'; **un millón de pesetas**, 'one million pesetas.'

But **ciento un**, **doscientos un**, etc., may occur before **mil**: **ciento un mil trescientos veinte y cinco**, 101,325.

d. The conjunction **y** is often used to connect the last of a series of numerals with the foregoing numeral: **mil doscientos ochenta y cinco**, 1285.

<sup>1</sup> See § 69.

<sup>2</sup> In colloquial language one sometimes hears **sietecientos** and **nuevecientos**.

e. Counting by hundreds is not carried above nine hundred in Spanish; beginning with ten hundred **mil** is used: **mil ochocientos noventa y tres**, 1893.

f. As substantives, **ciento** or **centenar**, **mil** or **millar**, are used; but only **ciento** and **millar** are regularly used to express rate: **centenares de caballos**, 'hundreds of horses'; **dos pesetas el ciento**, 'two pesetas per hundred'; **miles de aves**, 'thousands of birds'; **á peso el millar**, 'at one dollar per thousand.'<sup>1</sup>

### 169. Ordinal Numerals.

<b>primero</b> , -a ( <b>primo</b> , -a),	1st.	<b>trigésimo</b> , -a,	30th.
<b>segundo</b> , -a,	2d.	<b>cuadragésimo</b> , -a,	40th.
<b>tercero</b> , -a ( <b>tercio</b> , -a),	3d.	<b>quincuagésimo</b> , -a,	50th.
<b>cuarto</b> , -a,	4th.	<b>sexagésimo</b> , -a,	60th.
<b>quinto</b> , -a,	5th.	<b>septuagésimo</b> , -a,	70th.
<b>sexto</b> , -a or <b>sesto</b> , -a,	6th.	<b>octogésimo</b> , -a,	80th.
<b>séptimo</b> , -a or <b>sétimo</b> , -a,	7th.	<b>nonagésimo</b> , -a,	90th.
<b>octavo</b> , -a,	8th.	<b>centésimo</b> , -a,	100th.
<b>noveno</b> , -a ( <b>nono</b> , -a),	9th.	<b>centésimo primo</b> , -a,	101st.
<b>décimo</b> , -a,	10th.	<b>centésimo undécimo</b> , -a,	111th.
<b>undécimo</b> , -a,	11th.	<b>ducentésimo</b> , -a,	200th.
<b>duodécimo</b> , -a,	12th.	<b>trecentésimo</b> , -a,	300th.
<b>décimo tercio</b> , -a, <sup>2</sup>	13th.	<b>cuadragentésimo</b> , -a,	400th.
<b>décimo cuarto</b> , -a,	14th.	<b>quingentésimo</b> , -a,	500th.
<b>décimo quinto</b> , -a,	15th.	<b>sescentésimo</b> , -a,	600th.
<b>décimo sexto</b> , -a,	16th.	<b>septengésimo</b> , -a,	700th.
<b>décimo séptimo</b> , -a,	17th.	<b>octogentésimo</b> , -a,	800th.
<b>décimo octavo</b> , -a,	18th.	<b>nonagentésimo</b> , -a,	900th.
<b>décimo nono</b> , -a,	19th.	<b>milésimo</b> , -a,	1,000th.
<b>vigésimo</b> , -a,	20th.	<b>dosmilésimo</b> , -a,	2,000th.
<b>vigésimo primo</b> , -a,	21st.	<b>diezmilésimo</b> , -a,	10,000th.
<b>vigésimo segundo</b> , -a,	22d.	<b>millonésimo</b> , -a,	1,000,000th. <sup>3</sup>
<b>vigésimo tercio</b> , -a,	23d.		

<sup>1</sup> In mercantile language **uno** is usually omitted, as here, before the name of the coin.

<sup>2</sup> These are also written **décimotercio**, **décimocuarto**, etc.

<sup>3</sup> The use of the ordinals in Spanish is daily becoming less. It is hardly an exaggeration to say that only trained persons know them from 'twentieth' on.

*a.* The shorter forms, **primo**, **tercio**, and **nono** are used in compound ordinal numerals. **Sexto** and **séptimo** are usually pronounced and often written **sesto** and **sétimo**. For the apocopation of **primero** and **tercero** see § 66.

*b.* The ordinals agree in gender and number with the noun they modify. A single ordinal may precede or follow its noun; a compound ordinal regularly follows: **el primer día**, 'the first day'; **el siglo décimo sexto** (or **el siglo diez y seis**), 'the sixteenth century.'

*c.* After **primero**, the cardinals are generally used in Spanish instead of the ordinals, to specify the number of a volume, book, chapter, lesson, century, etc.: **el tomo veinte**, 'the twentieth volume' (or 'volume twenty'); **el siglo diez y nueve**, 'the nineteenth century.'

*d.* The ordinals are used up to **décimo** (or **undécimo**) to indicate the order of succession of sovereigns; but from that number on the cardinals are regularly used: **Carlos quinto**, 'Charles the Fifth';<sup>1</sup> **León trece**, 'Leo XIII.'

*e.* In dates, the cardinals are used instead of the ordinals, with the exception of **primero**: **el primero (el dos, el tres, etc.) de junio**, 'the first (the second, the third, etc.) of June.'

## 170. Fractional Numerals.

un medio,	$\frac{1}{2}$ .	un undécimo, onzavo, or once-avo,	$\frac{1}{11}$ .
un tercio,	$\frac{1}{3}$ .	un dozavo or doce-avo,	$\frac{1}{12}$ .
dos tercios,	$\frac{2}{3}$ .	un trezavo or trece-avo,	$\frac{1}{13}$ .
un cuarto,	$\frac{1}{4}$ .	un catorzavo or catorce-avo,	$\frac{1}{14}$ .
tres cuartos,	$\frac{3}{4}$ .	un quinzavo or quince-avo,	$\frac{1}{15}$ .
un quinto,	$\frac{1}{5}$ .	un diez y seisavo (seis-avo),	$\frac{1}{16}$ .
un sexto,	$\frac{1}{6}$ .	un diez y sietavo (siete-avo),	$\frac{1}{17}$ .
un séptimo,	$\frac{1}{7}$ .	un veintavo or veinte-avo,	$\frac{1}{20}$ .
un octavo,	$\frac{1}{8}$ .	un treintavo,	$\frac{1}{30}$ .
un noveno,	$\frac{1}{9}$ .	un centésimo or centavo,	$\frac{1}{100}$ .
un décimo,	$\frac{1}{10}$ .	un milésimo,	$\frac{1}{1000}$ .
		un millonésimo,	$\frac{1}{1000000}$ .

*a.* Fractional numerals may also be expressed by the ordinals with **parte**, especially when a partitive expression follows or is understood: **la tercera parte de ellos**, 'one-third of them.'

<sup>1</sup> Note the omission of the article in Spanish. See § 56 (2).

*b.* 'Half' ('a half,' 'one-half,' 'half a'), as a substantive, is expressed by **la mitad**; as an adjective, by **medio** (-a). In calculations, **medio** (-a) is used.

**la mitad de mis bienes**, 'one half of my goods.'

**medio día**, 'half a day.'

**una hora y media**, 'an hour and a half.'

## 171. Collective Numerals.

**un par**, a pair.

**una decena**, ten.

**una docena**, a dozen.

**una quincena**, fifteen.

**una veintena**, twenty, a score.

**una sesentena**, sixty.

**una centena** or **un centenar**, one hundred.

**un millar**, one thousand.

*a.* The ending **-ena** may make the numeral indefinite: *e.g.* **una veintena**, some twenty, about twenty.

## 172. Multiplicative Numerals.

**simple**, single.

**doble** or **duplicado**, double.<sup>1</sup>

**triple** or **triplicado**, treble.

**cuádruplo** or **cuadruplicado**, quadruple.<sup>1</sup>

**quíntuplo** or **quintuplicado**, quintuple.

**séxtuplo**, sextuple.

**séptuplo**, septuple.

**óctuplo**, octuple.

**décuplo**, decuple.

**centuplo** or **centuplicado**,  
centuple.

## 173. Numeral Phrases.

**una vez**, once.

**dos veces**, twice.

**tres veces**, three times (thrice).

**diez veces**, ten times.

**cien veces**, a hundred times.

**mil veces**, a thousand times.

## 174. Irregular Verbs.

**Hacer**, ' (to) make,' ' (to) do,' and **decir**, ' (to) say,' ' (to) tell.'

Study §§ 246 and 257.

<sup>1</sup> **Doble**, **triple**, etc., may also be translated 'two-fold,' 'three-fold,' etc. There are also the forms **dúplice** and **tríplice**, and **cuádruplo**, **quíntuplo**, etc.

## 175. Idiomatic Expressions.

<b>hágame usted el favor de cerrar la puerta</b> , please shut the door.	<b>hace de portero</b> , he is acting as porter.
<b>el huracán hizo temblar la casa</b> , the hurricane made the house tremble.	<b>hace frío (calor)</b> , it is cold (warm).
<b>hizo (mandó) hacer un traje</b> , he had a suit of clothes made.	<b>hace un mes (dos meses)</b> , a month (two months) ago.
<b>haz entrar al hombre</b> , have the man come in.	<b>hago construir una casa</b> , I am having a house built.
<b>no hagas caso de eso</b> , never mind that.	<b>se hizo amar por todo el mundo</b> , he made himself loved by everybody.
<b>haré por verle mañana</b> , I shall try to see him tomorrow.	<b>se hace el tonto</b> , he plays the fool.
<b>¿te hace falta dinero?</b> do you need money?	<b>se dice que, dicen que</b> , it is said that, people say that.

## Exercise XXXI

*A.* 1. Dígame Vd. ¿Cuántas son las partes del mundo?  
 2. Haga el favor de decirme su gracia (nombre). 3. Quisiera que él me dijera cuáles son sus verdaderos propósitos.  
 4. Dígale que venga acá inmediatamente. 5. ¿Qué hace Vd. allí? — Estoy haciéndole un cofre á Don Julián. 6. Hacía tanto frío que se heló el agua en nuestro cuarto. 7. Dicen que volverá pronto. 8. Se hace el tonto por conveniencia.  
 9. La torre Eiffel tiene trescientos metros de altura. ¿Sabe Vd. qué anchura tiene? 10. Colón descubrió la América el doce de Octubre de mil cuatrocientos noventa y dos. 11. Este año es el mil novecientos y cuatro. Por lo tanto, hace cuatrocientos y doce años de dicho acontecimiento y de dicha fecha.  
 12. El peso tiene cien centavos, ó diez reales de plata, ó cinco pesetas. 13. ¿Cuántos años tiene Vd.? — Veinte años.  
 14. Hágannos Vds. el favor de repasar dos veces la lección de los números cardinales y ordinales desde uno hasta sesenta y cuatro. 15. Un quebrado consta de dos guarismos; el

numerador, que es un número cardinal, y el denominador, que puede ser un número ordinal. 16. El río tiene una anchura de quinientos pies, y tiene cien millas de largo. 17. Voy a hacerme hacer un traje. 18. Un medio más dos quintos son nueve décimos. 19. El niño tiene tres manzanas y media. 20. El criado estuvo aquí hace una hora y media. 21. Hágame Vd. el favor de decirle que haga entrar al hombre. 22. No importa que digamos tres quinzavos (quince-avos) ó un quinto. 23. Algunas veces nos hacía falta dinero. 24. La sala tiene cincuenta y cinco pies de largo (longitud) y treinta y seis de ancho (anchura). 25. Á Pio Nono siguió León Trece. 26. ¿Qué hora es?—Son las diez y media. Á la una vendré aquí. 27. El hijo mayor de Felipe Primero era como emperador Carlos Quinto de Alemania y como rey Carlos Primero de España.

*B.* 1. I should like you to tell (*imperf. subj.*) me whether<sup>1</sup> you need (any) money. 2. Julian told us three months ago that he was having a house built. 3. Never mind what<sup>2</sup> he says: we shall try to see her tomorrow, if it is not too<sup>3</sup> cold. 4. We shall make ourselves beloved by everybody. 5. What<sup>4</sup> is the date?—It is the fourth of October, nineteen hundred and three. 6. How old is your father? He is fifty-two years old. 7. There are two figures in a Spanish fraction: three-sevenths has a numerator, which is a cardinal, and a denominator, which is an ordinal. Sometimes the denominator is a cardinal with *-avo*. 8. Two-thirds and (plus) one-sixth are five-sixths. 9. Alphonsus the Thirteenth is the Spanish king. 10. That servant was acting as porter three months ago. 11. The river is five hundred miles long and six hundred feet wide. 12. It was so warm that we did not go in. 13. I should not like him to play (*imperf. subj.*) the fool. 14. What time was it?—It was half-past eight. 15. Please give me three and (a) half apples. 16. He did us the favor of telling us his name. 17. They would like us to tell them how many the parts of the world are. 18. The servant is packing your four trunks.

19. The numerator of that fraction is the numeral seventeen.  
 20. It is so cold here, that we shall go into<sup>5</sup> your room; [it] is not freezing there.

<sup>1</sup> *si.*<sup>2</sup> *lo que.*<sup>3</sup> *demasiado.*<sup>4</sup> *¿Cudl?*<sup>5</sup> Use *entrar en.*

## LESSON XXXII

## 176. Adverbs.

**aquí, acá, here.****ahí, there** (near the person addressed).**allí, allá, there** (distant from

both the speaker and the person addressed).

**estoy muy bien aquí, I am very comfortable here.****á dos pasos de acá, two paces (steps) from here.****allá iremos todos, we shall all go there.**

*a.* With verbs of motion, 'here' is usually **acá**, and 'there' is **allá**; but **aquí** and **allí** are used to denote a definite, specific place: **ven acá**, 'come here'; **ven aquí**, 'come right here.'

*b.* 'Here in' is **aquí en**, and 'there in' is **ahí en** or **allá en**: **allá en Puerto Rico**, 'over there in Porto Rico.'

*c.* English expletive 'there' is not to be expressed in Spanish: **hay**, 'there is,' 'there are'; **han salido de este pueblo más de veinte familias**, 'there have left this town more than twenty families.'

177. **Mucho**, 'much,' 'a great deal'; **muy**, 'very.'**trabaja mucho, he works a great deal.****estoy muy cansado, I am very tired.**Before past participles, 'much,' 'very much,' is **muy**.**es muy estimado, he is much esteemed.****te estoy muy agradecido. I am very much obliged to you.**

But with the past participle of a perfect tense, 'much' is **mucho**: **ha escrito mucho**, 'he has written much (a great deal).'

*a.* 'Very,' when standing alone, is **mucho**: **¿es interesante el libro?** 'is the book interesting?' **sí, mucho**, 'yes, very.'



**178. Ya.** 'already,' 'now'; with a negative, 'no longer,' 'no more.'

**ya** es tarde, it is already late.

**ya** acabé, I have already finished.

**ya** entiendo, I understand now.

**ya no fuma**, he doesn't smoke any longer (any more).

**ya no tengo dinero**, I have no more money (I haven't any more money).

**179. -mente.**—In English many adverbs of manner are formed by adding the termination *-ly* to adjectives, as 'quickly' (from 'quick'), 'correctly' (from 'correct'), etc. In Spanish many adverbs are similarly formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine singular of descriptive adjectives, as **severamente** (from **severo**), 'severely,' **fácilmente** (from **fácil**), 'easily,' etc.

*a.* When several adverbs in **-mente** modify the same word, **-mente** is omitted from all but the last: **habla docta, concisa y elegantemente**, 'he speaks learnedly, concisely, and elegantly.'

**180. The Prepositions *Por* and *Para*.**—'For' is expressed by **por** or **para**. If 'for' means 'for the sake of,' 'on account of,' or 'in exchange for,' it is expressed by **por**; if it denotes *purpose* or *destination*, it is expressed by **para**.

**daría la vida por él**, I would give my life for him.

**los sacrificios que hizo por ella**, the sacrifices that he made for her.

**peleaba por la vida**, he was fighting for his life.

**le castigué por haberme dicho una mentira**, I punished him for having told me a lie.

**he pagado diez pesos por el perro**, I have paid ten dollars for the dog.

**este libro es para ti**, this book is for you.

**parto para Madrid**, I am leaving for Madrid.

*a.* **Por** also means 'through,' 'by,'<sup>1</sup> '*per.*'

<sup>1</sup> 'By' is usually **de**, after passive verbs and participles that express feeling or emotion: **es amado de todos**, 'he is beloved by all.'

**por temor**, through fear.

**entró por la ventana**, he entered through the window.

**este árbol ha sido plantado por mi abuelo**, this tree was planted by my grandfather.

**me cogió por la mano**, he caught me by the hand.

**diez por ciento**, ten per cent.

**mil pesos por año**, a thousand dollars per year (a year).

*b.* Before an infinitive, 'to,' meaning 'for the sake of,' 'in exchange for,' is **por**, and meaning 'in order to' is **para**.

**pugnando por entrar**, fighting to enter.

**lo hizo para engañarme**, he did it to deceive me.

*c.* Note also the following ways of expressing 'for' in Spanish:

**estuve allí un año**, I was there *for* a year.

**hace un año que estoy aquí**, I have been here *for* a year.

**voy á Madrid por un año**, I am going to Madrid *for* a year.

**tengo que escribir un ejercicio en castellano para mañana**, I must write a Spanish exercise *for* to-morrow.

**181.** In English nouns are often used adjectively, as in 'a wheel chair,' 'a saw-mill,' etc. A noun used adjectively in English is usually expressed in Spanish by a noun preceded by **de** or **para**.

**una estatua de mármol**, a marble statue.

**una vela de cera**, a wax candle.

**una máquina de coser**, a sewing-machine.

**un vaso para vino**, a wineglass.

**una cuchara para sopa**, a soup spoon.

**182.** With verbs meaning to take (from), to ask (of), etc., 'of' or 'from' is expressed in Spanish by **á**.

**el capitán quitó al soldado el puñal**, the captain took the dagger from the soldier.

**hemos pedido un favor á tu señor padre**, we asked a favor of your father.

**¿ á quién compraste el caballo?** of whom did you buy the horse?

*a.* A personal pronoun object is put in the dative case (indirect object).

**me han robado mucho dinero**, they have stolen a great deal of money from me.

**se lo quitó**, I took it away from him.

**183.** A preposition is usually retained before a substantive clause in Spanish, but omitted in English.

**estoy convencido de mi error**, I am convinced of my error.

**estoy convencido de que no dijo la verdad**, I am convinced that he did not tell the truth.

**me alegro de eso**, I am glad of that.

**me alegro de que no pueda venir**, I am glad that he cannot come.

**no me acuerdo de su nombre**, I do not remember his name.

**me acuerdo de que se llama Pedro**, I remember that he is called Peter.

**estoy seguro del hecho**, I am certain of the fact.

**estoy seguro de que no dará nada**, I am certain that he will give nothing.

#### 184. Idiomatic Expressions :

**ir escalera arriba (abajo)**, (to) go **río abajo**, down-stream.

upstairs (downstairs).

**días antes**, days before.

**tierra adentro**, inland.

**meses después**, months afterward.

**mar afuera**, seaward.

**dice que sí (que no)**, he says so (not).

**creo que sí (que no)**, I believe so (not).

**espero que sí (que no)**, I hope so (not).

**me parece que sí (que no)**, it seems to me so (it doesn't seem to me so)

**acaba de partir**, he has just left.

**acababa de partir**, he had just left.

**no volveré á mentir**, I shall not lie again.

**poco faltó para que se cayese (cayera)**, he almost fell.

**hoy mismo**, this very day.

**ayer mismo**, even yesterday.

**por la tarde**, in the evening.

**mañana por la mañana**, tomorrow morning.

¿vive usted por aquí? do you live about here?

voy por pan, I am going after bread.

he enviado por el médico, I have sent for the physician.

te pagaré para el 5 de mayo, I shall pay you (by) the 5th of May.

leyó la carta para sí, he read the letter to himself.

este niño es pequeño para su edad, this child is small for his age.

no sirve para nada, it is good for nothing.

estudia para médico, he is studying to be a physician.

estoy para partir, I am about to leave.

estoy por partir, I am inclined to leave.

### 185. Irregular Verbs.

Dar, (to) give.

Oír, (to) hear.

Saber, (to) know.

Ver, (to) see.

Study §§ 241, 245, 254, and 258.

**186. Saber.** '(To) know,' meaning '(to) have knowledge of,' '(to) be aware of,' is **saber** (**saber** does not take a personal object); meaning '(to) be acquainted with,' it is **conocer**.

¿sabes que es verdad? do you  
know that it is true?

¿conoces á aquel joven? do you  
know that young man?

*a. Saber* also means '(to) know how,'<sup>1</sup> '(to) learn' (in the sense of '(to) get knowledge of'); **saber á** means '(to) taste of,' '(to) savor of.'

**no sabe nadar**, he doesn't know how to swim.

**supe que no pudiste venir**, I learned that you couldn't come.

**sabe á pescado**, it tastes of fish.

*b. Can*, meaning 'know how,' is **saber**: 'can he read and write?'  
**¿sabe leer y escribir?**

<sup>1</sup> 'To know how' is **saber como**, when the main and the dependent verbs have different subjects, as in **no sé como viven**, 'I do not know how they live.' And also when the dependent clause is an indirect question, as in **no sé cómo puedo hacerlo**, 'I do not know how I can do it.'

## 187. Idiomatic Expressions :

**dar voces**, (to) call out, (to) shout.

**dar los buenos días**, (to) wish good day. [marry him.

**ella le dió el sí**, she agreed to

**dar á saber (á conocer)**, (to) make known.

**¿ya diste de comer á los caballos?** have you already fed the horses?

**dar un paseo**, (to) take a walk.

**dió en el blanco**, he hit the mark.

**la ventana da á la calle**, the window faces the street.

**me doy por vencido**, I give it up.

**luego darán las doce**, it will soon strike twelve.

**me dió la fiebre amarilla**, I caught the yellow fever.

**no sabe nada**, he doesn't know anything.

**hacer saber**, (to) make known.

**no sé qué contestar**, I do not know what to answer. [clare!

**¡oye! ¡oiga!** listen! hear! I deoigo subir<sup>1</sup> á alguno, I hear some one coming up.

**oyó gemir á los pobres cautivos**, she heard the poor captives groan.

**me oí llamar por alguno**, I heard some one call me; I heard myself called by name.

**ví caer<sup>1</sup> á mis compañeros**, I saw my companions fall.

**no tengo nada que ver con eso**, I haven't anything to do with that.

## Exercise XXXII

- A. 1. Venga Vd. acá y siéntese aquí, y dígame lo que estaba haciendo allí. 2. Vaya Vd. otra vez para allá, y enséñeme lo que estaba arreglando. 3. ¿Dónde está mi diccionario? — Por ahí anda, pero no sé donde está. 4. Lo siento mucho; estoy muy aburrido de su abandono. 5. Ya llegó su amigo, y está muy impaciente por verle á Vd.; viene elegantemente vestido. 6. Mañana parto para Sevilla por tener que asistir á las fiestas reales. 7. Empleó su capital en un negocio al ocho por ciento. 8. “Las enfermedades entran por toneladas y salen por onzas.” 9. “Come para vivir, pero no vivas para comer.” 10. Un puente de acero, una sortija de diamantes, una silla de montar, una prensa de imprimir, — ¿cuál vale más? 11. Dame un lápiz: quiero escribir una carta en castellano y otra en inglés. 12. ¿Sabe Vd. que su amigo va á dar una

<sup>1</sup> Note that a dependent infinitive immediately follows **oír** or **ver**.

recepción? 13. Hágame Vd. el favor de darme un poco de agua templada con azúcar. 14. No le he visto á Vd. hace un año; así es que á primera vista no le conocí. 15. Dar de comer al hambriento es obra de misericordia. 16. La ventana de mi cuarto da al mar: así es que hace allí siempre fresco. 17. ¿Qué hora es?—Acaban de dar las tres en el reloj de la catedral. 18. Suba Vd. á mi cuarto y bájeme mis gemelos de ópera, que se los quiero dar á este señor. 19. Si le escribe Vd. á su familia, sírvase darle mis recuerdos. 20. Un amigo íntimo me dice: “¿qué quieres?” Una persona que no conozco bien me dice: “¿qué quiere Vd.?” En la fonda el mozo me dice: “¿qué quiere el señor?”

21

MADRID, el 10 de Enero de 1905.

Muy Señor mío: <sup>1</sup>

Tengo el gusto de acusar á Vd. el recibo de su apreciable carta fechada el 2 del corriente, y en contestación le aviso que no es posible aceptar la proposición que Vd. me hace. 22. Sírvase Vd. dispensarme el que no haya contestado á vuelta de correo. Tengo el honor de suscribirme de Vd. S. S. Q. B. S. M.<sup>2</sup>

23. Querido Jacinto:

Acabo de recibir tu carta del 25 del ppdo,<sup>3</sup> en la cual me pides te envíe cincuenta pesos (\$50) por carta certificada ó por giro postal. 24. Siento decirte que no puedo adelantarte ni un centavo antes del 2 del próximo mes. Entretanto<sup>24</sup> ten cuidado con no gastar más de lo necesario.

Tu afmo<sup>4</sup> papá.

25. Sr. Dn. José Morales.

Muy Señor mío y amigo:

Por la última de Vd. del 11 del corriente he sabido la desgracia que acaban Vds. de pasar perdiendo su querido padre. 26. Acompaño á Vds. en su sentimiento y les brindo mi persona para en lo que<sup>5</sup> les pueda ser útil.

Quedo de Vd. afmo.

*B.* 1. He made many sacrifices for his friend, and I believe that he would give his life for him if it were necessary. 2. He said that he paid five hundred dollars for the horse: but he lied, and I shall punish him for having told me a lie. 3. The letter is for you, and the package is for your brother. 4. Tomorrow I leave for the City of Mexico. I have been here for six months, and I am going to Mexico for a year. 5. Are you very tired?—Yes, very; I am going into<sup>6</sup> the country to rest for a month. 6. I have already taken ten lessons in Spanish, but I have no more money, and I shall take no more lessons. 7. Go and get<sup>7</sup> a wineglass, and give me a glass of wine. 8. A soup spoon is larger than a teaspoon, and a table knife is larger than a penknife. 9. He asked several favors of me, but I could not, or rather<sup>25</sup> would not, grant them.<sup>8</sup> 10. The thief stole ten dollars from a rich man, and gave them to a poor man who needed them more. Will he be punished for that? 11. I have bought a new bicycle for you, John. I bought it of Mr. Navarro. 12. He bought a typewriter of Miss Montoya for his daughter, who will now learn to write on it. 13. I cannot remember your name, but I remember that I saw you and talked with you for an hour last summer. 14. Did the porter go up to my room and bring down my trunk?—He says so, but I don't believe it. 15. He almost died, but a skilful physician saved his life. 16. I have just seen him, and I do not wish to see him again.<sup>9</sup> 17. Come here, child, and sit down at my side. Do you feel tired after running and playing so much? 18. The boy is very large for his age, and he has already decided to study to be a lawyer.<sup>10</sup> 19. First he read it to himself, and then he read it aloud. 20. When I was ill, I sent for Dr. Menéndez y García, but he was good for nothing and did not cure me. 21. I know him well, and I know that he tells the truth. 22. I saw him go into the house, and I saw him come out; but he did not speak to me.

23. Dear Sir:

I have just<sup>11</sup> received your letter dated the 7th inst., in which you are kind enough<sup>12</sup> to acknowledge the receipt of the draft for<sup>14</sup> three hundred and twenty-four dollars in<sup>13</sup> American gold. 24. I am very sincerely yours.<sup>15</sup>



## 25. Dear Friend:

Your very kind <sup>16</sup> letter of the 3d inst. came <sup>17</sup> to hand <sup>18</sup> the 5th, and I now have the pleasure of answering <sup>19</sup> it.

It remains for me <sup>20</sup> to thank you <sup>21</sup> for your many acts of kindness <sup>22</sup> toward me and my son.

26. With affectionate regards I am very truly yours.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dear Sir.    <sup>2</sup> *S. S. Q. B. S. M.* = *seguro servidor que besa sus manos.*  
<sup>3</sup> *próximo pasado.*    <sup>4</sup> *afectísimo.*    <sup>5</sup> *para en lo que* is better than *para lo en que*, 'for that in which,' 'for anything in which.'    <sup>6</sup> *d.*    <sup>7</sup> *buscar.*    <sup>8</sup> Say: 'grant him them.'    <sup>9</sup> Use *volver.*    <sup>10</sup> Say: 'for (a) lawyer.'    <sup>11</sup> Use *acabar de.*    <sup>12</sup> *se sirve.*    <sup>13</sup> Omit.    <sup>14</sup> *de.*    <sup>15</sup> *Se reitera de Vd. con la más distinguida consideración su afmo S. S. Q. B. S. M.*    <sup>16</sup> *apreciable* or *atenta.*    <sup>17</sup> *fué.*    <sup>18</sup> *d mis manos.*    <sup>19</sup> *corresponder.*    <sup>20</sup> *réstame.*  
<sup>21</sup> *darle miles de gracias.*    <sup>22</sup> 'many acts of kindness,' *bondades.*    <sup>23</sup> 'very truly yours,' *de Vd. S. S. Q. B. S. M.*    <sup>24</sup> 'meanwhile.'    <sup>25</sup> *más bien.*

## LESSON XXXIII

## Conjunctions.

188. **y, é** (before initial **i** or **hi**), 'and.'

**padre y madre**, father and mother.    **padre é hijo**, father and son.

*a.* **y** is used before **y** and the diphthong (**h**)*ie*.

**tú y yo**, you and I.

**corta y hiere**, it cuts and wounds.

189. **ó, ú** (before initial **o** or **ho**), 'or.'

**cinco ó seis**, five or six.

**siete ú ocho**, seven or eight.

*a.* **ú** may also be used between two vowels, the first of which is **o**, as in **leyendo ú escribiendo**, 'reading or writing,' but **ó** is the more usual here.

190. **pero, mas, sino** (after a negative statement which is offset by a positive statement), 'but.'<sup>1</sup>

**somos los servidores del rey, pero no sus esclavos**, we are the king's servants, but not his slaves.

**lo dice, mas no lo creo**, he says so, but I do not believe it.

**no voy á París sino á Madrid**, I am not going to Paris, but to Madrid.

<sup>1</sup> Colloquially, **pero** is used much oftener than **mas**.

*a.* 'But,' as adverb or preposition, is often expressed by **no . . . sino**, and 'no . . . but' by **no más que**.

**no nos visita sino raramente**, he visits us but rarely.  
**no tengo más amigo que tú**, I have no friend but you.

**191. cuando** (interrogatively, **cuándo**<sup>1</sup>), 'when.'

**se lo diré cuando venga**, I shall tell him when he comes.  
**¿cuándo lo hará usted?** when will you do it?

*a.* **Que** is used instead of **cuando** to introduce a clause that limits the meaning of an adverb or adverb-phrase of time.

<b>en el momento que venga</b> , se lo	<b>un día que estuve en Barcelona</b> ,
<b>daré</b> , the moment (that) he	one day when I was in Barce-
comes I shall give it to him.	lona.

**192. donde** (interrogatively, **dónde**), 'where,' is often made more specific by prefixing **á**, **en**, or **de**.

**¿á dónde va usted?** where are you going?  
**la casa (en) donde vive**, the house in which he lives.  
**¿de dónde viene?** where does he come from?

**porque**, 'because,' **porqué**, 'why'<sup>1</sup> (also written **por qué**).

**no lo hice porque no quería hacerlo**, I did not do it because I did not want to do it.

**¿porqué no vino usted ayer?** why did you not come yesterday?

**193. Agreement of Subject and Verb.** — A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

**yo soy**, I am; **tu eres**, you are, etc.

(1) Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural: **él y ella son**, 'he and she are.'

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, the interrogatives **cuándo**, **dónde**, and **porqué** are adverbs rather than conjunctions.

(2) When subjects are of different persons, the verb is in the first person plural if any of the subjects is of the first person; and it is in the second person if the subjects are of the second and third persons.

**tu y yo somos**, you and I are.

**él y yo somos**, he and I are.

**tu y él sois**, you and he are.

#### 194. Word Order.

(1) In an affirmative sentence, the subject may precede or it may follow the verb.

**el hombre está enfermo**, the man is ill.

**ya llegó mi amigo**, my friend has already arrived.

(2) In an interrogative sentence, the subject regularly follows the verb.

**¿lo compró Juan?** did John buy it?

195. When the subject follows the verb :

(1) A noun object usually precedes a noun subject.

**¿compró la casa tu señor padre?** did your father buy the house?

But if the object is the longer, it follows.

**¿compró tu padre todas estas casas?** did your father buy all these houses?

(2) A predicate adjective usually precedes a noun subject.

**¿es interesante el libro?** is the book interesting?

(3) A pronoun subject immediately follows the verb and precedes a noun object or a predicate adjective.

**no quiero yo el caballo**, I do not want the horse.

**¿está usted enfermo?** are you ill?

196. If an adverb does not come first in the sentence, it usually follows the verb immediately.

**mañana** hablaremos el gobernador y yo, tomorrow the governor and I shall have a talk.

**aquí** se habla inglés, English is spoken here.

**dice siempre la verdad**, he always tells the truth.

**contestó muy tranquilamente el joven**, the young man answered quite calmly.

### 197. Irregular Verbs.

**andar**, (to) go.

**caber**, (to) be contained in.

**poner**, (to) put.

**asir**, (to) grasp.

**valer**, (to) be worth.

**salir**, (to) go out.

**caer**, (to) fall.

**traer**, (to) bring.

**-ducir**, (to) lead.

Study §§ 240, 244, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 255, and 256; and review **Ser**, **Haber**, **Estar**, and **Tener**, §§ 236, 237, 238, and 239.

**198. Andar**, '(to) go,' '(to) walk': '(to) go' in a definite direction, or to a definite place, is **ir**.

**el reloj no anda**, the watch doesn't go.

**voy á la ciudad**, I am going to town.

### 199. Idiomatic Expressions.

**se cayó**, he fell down.

**lo dejé caer**, I dropped it.

**la levita te cae (sienta) bien**, the coat fits you well.

**este color cae bien con este otro**, this color matches well with this other

**ya caigo en eso**, now I understand that.

**se pone pálida**, she is growing pale.

**el café se pondrá frío**, the coffee will get cold.

**¿has puesto la mesa?** have you set the table?

**el sol se pone**, the sun is setting.

**esta gallina no pone huevos**, this hen doesn't lay eggs.

**la niña se puso á llorar**, the little girl began to cry.

¿quién salió? who won?

salir á luz, (to) be published.

¿cuánto vale? how much is it worth?

no vale nada, it's good for nothing.

no vale la pena, it isn't worth while.

más vale tarde que nunca, it is better late than never.

tiene razón, he is right.

no tiene razón, he is wrong.

tengo ganas de visitar á Cuba, I am anxious to visit Cuba.

¡tenga usted cuidado! look out! take care!

no tenga usted cuidado, don't worry.

no tiene remedio, there's no help for it.

no tiene nada de particular, there's nothing strange about it.

tenga usted la bondad (de), please.

tengo que hacerlo, I have to do it.

tengo escrita la carta, I have the letter already written.

no lo hay, there isn't any.

hay que tener cuidado, one must take care.

¿que he de hacer? what am I to do?

ha de ser muy pobre, he must be very poor.

soy de Madrid, I am a native of Madrid.

esta finca es del Señor G., this plantation belongs to Mr. G.

es de notar, it should be noted.

estar en (or de) pie, (to) stand.

estarse parado, (to) stand still.

ir á pie, (to) go afoot, (to) walk.

ir á caballo, (to) ride horseback.

ir en coche, (to) drive (in a carriage).

huele á tabaco, it smells of tobacco.

sabe á ajo, it tastes of garlic.

de día, by day.

de noche, by night.

### Exercise XXXIII

- A. 1. ¿Cuándo dijo el señor médico que visitaría al enfermo?  
— Cuando sus clientes le den una hora de libertad. 2. En  
las horas que lo traté, lo conocí á fondo. 3. ¿Dónde encon-

trarias más chistes y más filosofía que en el *Quijote*? 4. El país de donde vengo está favorecido por un clima ideal. 5. Era un joven fino é inteligente, aunque sus deberes y sus gustos eran completamente opuestos. 6. Las mejores calificaciones de un estudiante son "sobresaliente" ú "óptimo." 7. No es Vd. á quien he llamado, sino á su señor padre. 8. No nos saluda sino de cuando en cuando. 9. Será su compañera mas no su esclava. 10. Deseo mucho verla, pero me es imposible. 11. No servirás á nadie más que tu Dios y Señor. 12. ¿Porqué no me avisó Vd. con anticipación? — Porque no quise molestar su ocupada atención. 13. Él tomó el mando de las tropas, y dió las órdenes necesarias. 14. Tú, él, y yo somos de la misma edad, pero yo soy mas alto que vosotros. 15. No puedo negar que ella y yo nos amamos. 16. Venció Napoleón, pero perdió sus famosos Guardias Nobles. 17. ¿Ha terminado su carrera el hijo de Vd.? — Todavía no. — ¿Estudia ingeniería ó medicina? — Estudia para médico. 18. ¿Es favorable á nuestra causa la decisión del Juzgado? — Sí; es favorable. 19. Caballero, no deseo yo la amistad de Vd. Su comportamiento es inexplicable. 20. De ese asunto para Vd. tan importante, pronto sabremos los detalles. 21. Vivía en la margen este <sup>15</sup> del río; al otro lado vivía mi primo Antonio. 22. Viste á la francesa; camina á la americana; y vive á la inglesa.<sup>17</sup> 23. ¿Á cómo se vende la tela china? — Barata, caballero, peso al metro (á la vara). 24. ¿Cuánto gana Vd. allí? — Quinientos pesos al año poco más ó menos. 25. Esta sopa sabe á cebolla <sup>16</sup> y limón. El pañuelo de Vd. huele á tabaco. 26. Á la vista de su hogar cayó de rodillas y oró en silencio.

B. 1. He says that he is not going to Seville, but to Malaga; but I do not believe it. 2. We have no friend but John, and he visits us but rarely. 3. One day when I was in Paris I went to the house in which he lives, but he was not at home. 4. It will not be long before he returns, and I shall tell him what you say

when he comes. 5. You and I live happily,<sup>1</sup> but you and John do not agree. 6. Did your brother buy the horse?<sup>2</sup> — No; my father bought it; but he bought it for my brother. 7. Is your brother ill? — No; he is in better health than he was last year. 8. Shall you walk<sup>3</sup> or ride?<sup>4</sup> — I prefer to ride, but my sister prefers to drive.<sup>5</sup> 9. I shall leave this city<sup>6</sup> the last of March or the first of April,<sup>7</sup> if the weather permits.<sup>8</sup> 10. After being in Buenos Ayres a few months, I spoke Spanish well; or, at least, I thought<sup>9</sup> that I did.<sup>10</sup> 11. He smells of garlic and tobacco, and I do not like to sit by<sup>11</sup> his side. 12. Please change for<sup>12</sup> me<sup>13</sup> this ten-dollar bill.<sup>14</sup> — I can give you two five-dollar bills for it. 13. He speaks Spanish almost every day with a Spanish friend, and in this way he is learning to speak Spanish well. 14. I went to a neighbor's to borrow a book which I wished to read. 15. The neighbor was not at home, and his wife said that she didn't know when he would return. 16. She said that as soon as he returned, she would send the book to me. 17. Poor Peter! He was blind with anger<sup>15</sup> and trembling with cold,<sup>16</sup> and he couldn't say a word. 18. In autumn the sun sets earlier each day. 19. When they gave him the news, he became<sup>17</sup> very sad and began<sup>18</sup> to weep. 20. Go to Mr. Garcia's and<sup>19</sup> learn<sup>20</sup> the news of the day. 21. The Indian served me as guide<sup>21</sup> in these forests. 22. His son works as tailor<sup>22</sup> in Valles' workshop. 23. Your handkerchief smells of oranges. Have you any in your pocket? 24. We should work by day and sleep by night, but I usually work by night and sleep by day.

<sup>1</sup> Say: 'happy.'    <sup>2</sup> Place the subject after the object.    <sup>3</sup> Say: 'go afoot.'

<sup>4</sup> Say: 'go on horseback.'    <sup>5</sup> Say: 'go in (a) carriage.'    <sup>6</sup> Omit.    <sup>7</sup> Say: 'permits it.'

<sup>8</sup> Use *creer*.    <sup>9</sup> Say: 'I spoke it well.'    <sup>10</sup> *á*.    <sup>11</sup> Dative.

<sup>12</sup> Use *ponerse*.    <sup>13</sup> *á*.    <sup>14</sup> *informarse de*.    <sup>15</sup> 'east.'    <sup>16</sup> 'onion.'

<sup>17</sup> See § 206.

## LESSON XXXIV

**200. Qualifying Suffixes.**—The Spanish diminutive and augmentative suffixes consist of endings all of which may be attached to nouns, while most diminutives may be attached to



adjectives and adverbs. They occur commonly in colloquial language, but rarely in elevated diction. The foreigner should use them with the utmost caution. It is generally safe to use **-ito**, but one not to the manner born would best avoid the other suffixes until he has become familiar with their use.

*a.* The qualifying suffixes are attached to the stem of a word after it has dropped a final unstressed vowel or, often, an unstressed diphthong.

**pájaro, pajarillo.      amigo, amiguito.      rosario, rosarito.**

**201. Diminutives.** — There are three forms of most diminutive suffixes, as follows: (1) **-ito, -illo, -uelo**, etc.; (2) **-cito, -cillo, -zuelo**, etc.; and (3) **-ecito, -ecillo, -ezuelo**, etc.

*a.* The third form (**-ecito**,<sup>1</sup> **-ecillo, -ezuelo**, etc.) is used:

(1) With monosyllables.

**flor**, flower.    **florecita**, little flower.

**pez**, fish.    **pececito**, little fish.

**rey**, king.

**reyezuelo**, little king.

(2) With words of more than one syllable, ending in **-e**.

**viaje**, journey.

**viajecito**, little trip.

**madre**, mother.

**madrecita**, dear little mother.

(3) With words ending in **-a** or **-o**, that have the radical diphthong **-ie** or **-ue**.<sup>2</sup>

**viento**, wind.

**vientecito**, slight breeze.

**piedra**, stone.

**piedrecita**, little stone.

**pueblo**, village.

**pueblecillo**, little village.

(4) With some words ending in unstressed **-ia, -io, -ua, -uo**.

**bestia**, beast.

**bestiecita**, little beast.

**genio**, genius.

**geniecillo**, little genius.

**lengua**, tongue.

**lengüecita**, little tongue.

**arduo**, arduous.

**arduecito**, rather arduous.

<sup>1</sup> **Pie** makes **piececito, piececillo**, etc.

<sup>2</sup> In old Spanish the radical diphthongs **ie** and **ue** usually reverted to **e** and **o** when a qualifying suffix was added: as in **puerta**, 'door,' **portezuela**, 'carriage door', but in modern Spanish the diphthongs are usually retained: **nieto, nietecillo; huevo, huevecillo**; etc.

*b.* The second form (-cito, -cillo, -zuelo, etc.) is used with words of more than one syllable, ending in -n or -r, especially if they have the stress on the final syllable.

<b>ladrón</b> , thief.	<b>ladroncillo</b> , petty thief.
<b>galán</b> , gallant.	<b>galancete</b> , ladies' man.
<b>joven</b> , young man.	<b>jovencito</b> , youth.
<b>autor</b> , author.	<b>autorcillo</b> , young author.
But, <b>árbol</b> , tree.	<b>arbolito</b> , little tree.

*c.* The first form (-ito, -illo, -uelo, etc.) is used in all other cases.

<b>hermano</b> , brother.	<b>hermanito</b> , little brother.
<b>pollo</b> , fowl.	<b>polluelo</b> , chick.

*d.* There are some exceptions to the above rules ; such as

<b>mano</b> , hand.	<b>manecita</b> (or <b>manita</b> ), little hand.
<b>abuelo</b> , grandfather.	<b>abuelito</b> , dear little grandfather.
<b>agrio</b> , sour.	<b>agrillo</b> , rather sour.
<b>jardín</b> , garden.	<b>jardinito</b> (or <b>jardincito</b> ), little garden.
<b>señora</b> , lady.	<b>señorita</b> , young lady.

**202.** The meaning of the various diminutive suffixes is as follows :

*a.* -ito (-a), -cito (-a), -ecito (-a), express smallness of size, quality, or degree, together with fondness, admiration, and respect. They may usually be translated 'little,' 'dear little,' etc.

<b>pobre hijita mía</b> , my poor dear child.	<b>madrecita</b> , dear little mother.
<b>gatito</b> , kitten.	<b>un poquito</b> , a very little.
<b>toditos los días</b> , almost every day.	<b>cerquita</b> , quite near.
<b>una niña grandecita</b> , a rather large girl.	

*b.* -illo (-a), -cillo (-a), -ecillo (-a), express smallness of size, quality, or degree, with indifference, or with depreciation, ridicule, or pity.

<b>ladroncillo</b> , little thief.	<b>pobre viejecillo</b> , poor old man.
<b>sonrisilla</b> , faint smile.	<b>pobrecillo</b> , poor little fellow.

*c.* -uelo (-a), -zuelo (-a), -ezuelo (-a), express smallness, together with ridicule, disdain, or mockery.

plazuela, little square.

sus ojuelos, his little eyes.

*d.* -ico (-a), -cico (-a), -ecico (-a),<sup>1</sup> have the force of -ito, except that they are generally used somewhat humorously or sarcastically.

un perrico, a pretty little dog.

*e.* -ete (-a), -cete (-a), are used in a diminutive and often depreciative sense.

un pobrete, a poor fellow.

un caballere, a 'dandy.'

*f.* -ejo (-a) usually denotes contempt.

librejo, worthless book. caminejo, wretched road. amarillejo, yellowish.

*g.* The dialectal forms -ín (-ina) and -ino (-a) are sometimes used in Castilian to express smallness.

niño chiquitín, wee little child.

cebollino, young onion.

**203. Augmentative Suffixes.** — *a.* -ón (-ona) denotes large size, with or without grotesqueness. Feminine nouns usually become masculine upon assuming this ending, unless sex is indicated.

hombrón, big man.

sillón, easy chair.

barbón, thick beard.

picarón, great rogue.

cucharón, ladle.

*b.* -azo (-a) has a meaning similar to that of -ón, but it is used less often.

bocaza, big mouth.

mujeraza, large, coarse woman.

*c.* -ote (-a) is augmentative or depreciative.

palabrota, harsh word.

ricote, rich and pretentious.

<sup>1</sup> In some parts of the Spanish-speaking world, *e.g.* Cuba, -ico replaces -ito after a stem ending in -t: as platico for platito, gatico for gatito, etc.

*d.* -acho (-a), -ucho (-a), and -ajo (-a) express disdain and contempt.

vinacho, poor wine.      casucha, hut.      trapajo, dirty rag.

**204.** Combinations of diminutive and augmentative endings occur.

chico,<sup>1</sup> chiquito, chiquitín, wee little child.

hombre, hombrón, hombronazo, big, awkward man.

pícaro, picarón, picaroncillo, small man who is a great rogue.

pícaro, picarillo, picarillón, large man who is a little rogue.

**205.** The endings -azo and -ada are often used to denote a blow, thrust, discharge, etc. These endings are neither diminutive nor augmentative, but denote the result of an action.

bastonazo, blow with a walking-stick.      fusilazo, rifle-shot.

puñalada, stab with a dagger.

## **206. Idiomatic Expressions.<sup>2</sup>**

á principios de mayo, the first of May.

á mediados de junio, the middle of June.

á fines (últimos) de julio, the last of July.

¿á cómo estamos hoy? what day of the month is this?

á los pocos años de estar en Madrid, after being in Madrid a few years

al otro lado, on the other side.      á lo menos, at least.

á la francesa, after the fashion of the French.

poco á poco, little by little.      uno á uno, one by one.

¿á cuánto se vende? what is it worth?

á peso la vara, el metro, a dollar a yard, a metre.

quinientos pesos al año, five hundred dollars a year.

caer de rodillas, (to) fall on one's knees.

trabajar de sastre, (to) work as tailor.

servir de guía, (to) serve as guide.

<sup>1</sup> Note chico, chiquito, chiquitito (chiquitico).

<sup>2</sup> Most of these illustrate the use of prepositions.

**ciego de cólera**, blind with anger.

**temblar de frío**, (to) tremble with cold.

**estoy mejor (peor) de salud**, I am in better (worse) health.

**huérfano de madre (padre)**, orphan on the mother's (father's) side.

**camino de Cádiz**, by way of Cadiz.

**un billete de á diez pesos**, a ten-dollar bill (bank note).

**de esta manera, de este modo**, in this way.

**desde luego**, at once.

**pobre de mí**, poor me.

**la buena de la Justina**, good Justine.

**estar en casa**, (to) be at home. **ir á casa**, (to) go home.

**está en casa del Señor Montejo**, he is at Mr. Montejo's.

**va á casa de un vecino**, he is going to a neighbor's.

**viene de casa de mi tío**, he comes from my uncle's.

### Exercise XXXIV

A. 1. Sólo un pillete hubiera cometido tal maldad. 2. El hombrecillo se acercó á mí y me presentó á su hijita. 3. Al salir, le dijo al portero: "Ahorita estaré de vuelta." 4. Ese hombrón es un montañés: esa mujeraza es su hermana. 5. Las dos grandecitas son sus nietas; las pequeñitas son sus sobrinistas. 6. El politiquejo se enojó, y volviéndose le echó dos ó tres palabrotas. 7. El reyezuelo osó desafiar al emperador. 8. El soldadote salió de la casa, y ciego de cólera se dirigió hacia la plazuela. 9. ¿Está Vd. mejor de salud? — Sí; un tantico. 10. El jovencito que le presenté á Vd. anoche es huérfano de padre y madre. Trabaja de ingeniero en el Ferrocarril del Norte. Dicen que tiene un talentazo descomunal. 11. La ensalada está cargadita de mostaza como á Vd. le gusta. 12. Cámbieme este doble hidalgo por dos billetes de á diez pesos, ó cuatro de á cinco. De esta manera podré pagar mis deudas. 13. "¡Pobre de mí!" exclamó el abogadillo, "no fué más que un descuidillo."

14. "Caballerito, una limosnita, un centavito, ó cualquiera cosita que quiera Vd. darme," exclamó el mendigo. 15. Poco á poco, caballero. Sé defender á mis amigos ausentes cuando se les insulta sin que puedan defenderse. 16. Uno á uno ó dos á dos marcharéis por el puente, pero por ningún concepto en pelotón. 17. ¿Acaba de llegar Vd. de casa de mi padre?—No; vengo de casa de su hermano. 18. Á mí me gusta andar aprisa. Este tren anda con una velocidad de cuarenta kilómetros por hora; pero en Alemania hay trenes que andan ciento cincuenta y aún doscientos kilómetros por hora. 19. Póngase Vd. este sombrero á ver qué tal le está, y si le gusta, salga con él y traígamelo cuando encuentre el suyo. 20. Su amigo habrá tenido que ir á declarar ante el juez: éste está en el Palacio de Justicia y es un anciano muy venerable. 21. El emperador Guillermo se cayó del caballo y se lastimó una pierna. 22. Estuve de pie (parado) toda la función, y estoy muy cansado. 23. En esa caja no caben más de trescientos volúmenes: la caja es demasiado pequeña. 24. Señora, ¿cómo está su hijito?—Muy bien, gracias; y ¿cómo está la hijita de Vd.? 25. Á las niñas grandecitas no les gusta jugar con las chiquillas. 26. El pobrecito está enfermo. El médico desea que tome el sol toditos los días.

*B.* 1. My little son<sup>1</sup> has two kittens that he loves dearly. 2. My dear little mother,<sup>1</sup> may I go to Henry's to play with him? 3. Little Anna<sup>1</sup> has a little sister<sup>1</sup> that is only two months old. 4. The little thief<sup>1</sup> is a great rogue.<sup>2</sup> 5. I shall return home in a moment<sup>1</sup> if I can find the book that I am looking for. 6. He has a large mouth<sup>2</sup> and a thick beard.<sup>2</sup> and he says many harsh words.<sup>2</sup> 7. I was talking with a dear friend<sup>1</sup> of mine when the little man<sup>1</sup> came out of his house and approached us. 8. The sun sets at five and rises at seven o'clock today. 9. He turned pale and dropped the purse that he had in his hand. 10. This coat fits you better than that one, but I do not like either one. 11. My

watch doesn't go. — Mine goes, but it is slow. 12. Cecilia, set the table. It is dinner time,<sup>5</sup> and I am very hungry. 13. Is the coffee ready? — It is ready, and it will get cold if you do not drink it soon. 14. The color of the hat does not match that of your coat. If I were you, I should not buy that hat. 15. He is usually wrong, but he always believes that<sup>3</sup> he<sup>3</sup> is<sup>4</sup> right. 16. I must work today, or they will discharge me. — There is nothing strange about that. 17. It should be noted that he is a native of Spain, but he does not speak Spanish well. He is a Catalan. 18. When will your work be published? — Next year. — It is better late than never. 19. When his son died, we gave him the fatal news little by little. 20. Do you wish to go afoot? — No; I prefer to go on horseback, but the ladies need to go in a carriage. 21. Please tell me what day of the month this is. — It is the fourth of July. 22. He always goes out with his mother or his sister. He loves his mother and his sister tenderly. 23. He speaks Spanish and English well, but he does not write these languages correctly. 24. Where are you coming from, and where are you going to? 25. Is your brother's bride pretty? — Yes; very.

<sup>1</sup> Use diminutive.<sup>2</sup> Use augmentative.<sup>3</sup> Omit.<sup>4</sup> Use infinitive.<sup>5</sup> *hora de comer.*



## THE VERB

**207.** Like its prototype, the Latin verb, the Spanish verb shows changes of mood, tense, and person, by the addition to a verb stem of certain inflexional endings:

**habl-ar**, to speak.

**habl-o**, I speak.

**habl-aba**, I used to speak, *or*

**habl-é**, I spoke.

I was speaking.

**habl-ando**, speaking.

It resembles the English verb in forming compound tenses by adding to an auxiliary verb the past participle, or the present participle, of a principal verb; *e.g.*

**he hablado**, I have spoken; **estoy hablando**, I am speaking.

**208.** For the sake of convenience we may consider the Spanish verb under five different headings: (1) the regular verb, (2) the verb with inceptive endings, (3) the radical-changing verb, (4) the **-uir** (**-üir**) verb, (5) the irregular verb.

**209.** There are six principal parts, a knowledge of which will aid in the formation of the other parts of many verbs: these are the present infinitive, the past participle, the present participle (or gerund), the first person singular of the present indicative, the first person singular of the preterite indicative, and the third person singular of the preterite indicative.

(1) The present infinitive is the basis of the future and the conditional of the indicative of all verbs. For the future, there are added to the infinitive of the verb in question the forms, or the ending (as in the case of the second plural), of the present indicative of the verb **haber**, 'to have.' The initial **h** of the forms of **haber** disappears in the composition. For the conditional, there are added to the

infinitive of the verb in question the endings of the imperfect indicative of **haber**. Irregular verbs may show a certain alteration of the infinitive basis.

(2) The past participle enters into the composition of all perfect tenses.

(3) The present participle, or gerund, enters into the composition of the periphrastic progressive tenses.

(4) The first person singular present indicative has, in *regular verbs*, the same stem as the rest of the verb, except the future and the conditional of the indicative. In irregular, inceptive, and **-uir** (but not in radical-changing) verbs, it often furnishes the stem for the whole present subjunctive.

(5) The first person singular preterite indicative has the same stem as all the rest of that tense in regular, inceptive, **-uir**, and irregular verbs; and as the second singular and the first and second plural of this same tense in radical-changing verbs. Its stem is also the same as that of the subjunctive imperfect tenses and the hypothetical (or future) subjunctive of all but radical-changing verbs.

(6) The third person singular preterite indicative has, in radical-changing verbs, the same stem as the third plural of that tense, and as the subjunctive imperfect tenses and the hypothetical subjunctive.

(Apart from regular verbs, the above rules are not complete guides, and practice must be relied on.)

**210. The Regular Verb.** — It is the custom to speak of three regular conjugations in Spanish, classified, according to their endings, as the **-ar**, or first; the **-er**, or second; and the **-ir**, or third conjugation. In actual practice, however, we find that there are but two entire conjugations, for in all but four forms (the present infinitive, the first and second persons plural of the present indicative, and the second person plural of the imperative) the **-ir** or third conjugation has the same endings as the **-er**, or second. In the four exceptional forms, the third conjugation has the distinctive vowel *i* (**-ir**, **-imos**, **-ís**, **-id**), whereas the second has *e* (**-er**, **-emos**, **-éis**, **-ed**). The following are the paradigms:

## I

## II

## III

## INFINITIVE MOOD

**Present**  
habl ar, *to speak.*

**Present**  
tem er, *to fear.*

**Present**  
viv ir, *to live.*

## PARTICIPLES

**Present**  
(GERUND)  
habl ando, *speaking.*

**Present**  
(GERUND)  
tem iendo, *fearing.*

**Present**  
(GERUND)  
viv iendo, *living.*

**Past**  
habl ado, *spoken.*

**Past**  
tem ido, *feared.*

**Past**  
viv ido, *lived.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

**Present**  
*I speak, do speak, am speaking, etc.*

habl o

habl as

habl a

habl amos

habl áis

habl an

**Present**  
*I fear, do fear, am fearing, etc.*

tem o

tem es

tem e

tem emos

tem éis

tem en

**Present**  
*I live, do live, am living, etc.*

viv o

viv es

viv e

viv imos

viv ís

viv en

**Imperfect**  
*I spoke, was speaking, used to speak, etc.*

habl aba

habl abas

habl aba

habl ábamos

habl abais

habl aban

**Imperfect**  
*I feared, was fearing, used to fear, etc.*

tem ía

tem ías

tem ía

tem íamos

tem íais

tem ían

**Imperfect**  
*I lived, was living, used to live, etc.*

viv ía

viv ías

viv ía

viv íamos

viv íais

viv ían

**Preterite***I spoke, etc.*

habl é

habl aste

habl ó

habl amos

habl asteis

habl aron

**Preterite***I feared, etc.*

tem í

tem iste

tem ió

tem imos

tem isteis

tem ieron

**Preterite***I lived, etc.*

viv í

viv iste

viv ió

viv imos

viv isteis

viv ieron

**Future***I shall speak, etc.*

hablar é

hablar ás

hablar á

hablar emos

hablar éis

hablar án

**Future***I shall fear, etc.*

temer é

temer ás

temer á

temer emos

temer éis

temer án

**Future***I shall live, etc.*

vivir é

vivir ás

vivir á

vivir emos

vivir éis

vivir án

**Conditional***I should speak, etc.*

hablar ía

hablar ías

hablar ía

hablar íamos

hablar íais

hablar ían

**Conditional***I should fear, etc.*

temer ía

temer ías

temer ía

temer íamos

temer íais

temer ían

**Conditional***I should live, etc.*

vivir ía

vivir ías

vivir ía

vivir íamos

vivir íais

vivir ían

**IMPERATIVE MOOD***speak, etc.*

2d Sg. habl a

2d Pl. habl ad

*fear, etc.*

tem e

tem ed

*live, etc.*

viv e

viv id

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

**Present**

(*That I may*) *speak,*  
(*let me*) *speak, etc.*

habl e

habl es

habl e

habl emos

habl éis

habl en

**Present**

(*That I may*) *fear,*  
(*let me*) *fear, etc.*

tem a

tem as

tem a

tem amos

tem áis

tem an

**Present**

(*That I may*) *live,*  
(*let me*) *live, etc.*

viv a

viv as

viv a

viv amos

viv áis

viv an

**Imperfect**

FIRST FORM  
(-se IMPERFECT)

(*That or if I might*)  
*speak, etc.*

habl ase

habl ases

habl ase

habl ásemos

habl aseis

habl asen

**Imperfect**

FIRST FORM  
(-se IMPERFECT)

(*That or if I might*)  
*fear, etc.*

tem iese

tem ieses

tem iese

tem iésemos

tem ieseis

tem iesen

**Imperfect**

FIRST FORM  
(-se IMPERFECT)

(*That or if I might*)  
*live, etc.*

viv iese

viv ieses

viv iese

viv iésemos

viv ieseis

viv iesen

**Imperfect**

SECOND FORM  
(-ra IMPERFECT)

*I should speak, (that or if*  
*I might) speak, etc.*

habl ara

habl aras

habl ara

habl áramos

habl arais

habl aran

**Imperfect**

SECOND FORM  
(-ra IMPERFECT)

*I should fear, (that or if*  
*I might) fear, etc.*

tem iera

tem ieras

tem iera

tem iéramos

tem ierais

tem ieran

**Imperfect**

SECOND FORM  
(-ra IMPERFECT)

*I should live, (that or if*  
*I might) live, etc.*

viv iera

viv ieras

viv iera

viv iéramos

viv ierais

viv ieran

Hypothetical (OR FUTURE)	Hypothetical (OR FUTURE)	Hypothetical (OR FUTURE)
<i>i</i> (may or shall) speak, etc.	<i>I</i> (may or shall) fear, etc.	<i>I</i> (may or shall) live, etc.
habl are	tem iere	viv iere
habl ares	tem ieres	viv ieres
habl are	tem iere	viv iere
habl áremos	tem iéremos	viv iéremos
habl areis	tem iereis	viv iereis
habl aren	tem ieren	viv ieren

**211. Compound Perfect Tenses.**—The compound tenses of all verbs, regular or not, are formed by adding their past participle (invariable) to a part of the auxiliary **haber**, ‘to have’ (see § 237); *e.g.*

## INFINITIVE

**Present Perfect***to have spoken*

haber hablado

## PARTICIPLE

**Present Perfect (Perfect Gerund)***having spoken*

habiendo hablado

## INDICATIVE

**Present Perfect***I have spoken, etc.*

he hablado

has hablado

*etc.***Preterite Perfect (Past Anterior)***I had spoken, etc.*

hube hablado

*etc.***Pluperfect***I had spoken, etc.*

había hablado

*etc.***Future Perfect***I shall have spoken, etc.*

habré hablado

*etc.***Conditional Perfect***I should have spoken, etc.*

habría hablado

*etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## Present Perfect

(That I may) have spoken, etc.

haya hablado  
etc.

## Pluperfect

SECOND FORM (-ra PLUPERFECT)

I should have spoken, etc.

hubiera hablado  
etc.

## Pluperfect

FIRST FORM (-se PLUPERFECT)

(That I might) have spoken, etc.

hubiese hablado  
etc.

## Hypothetical (or Future) Perfect

I (may or shall) have spoken, etc.

hubiere hablado  
etc.

**212. Periphrastic Progressive Tenses.**—These are formed by adding the present participle to a part of the auxiliary *estar*, 'to be' (or *ir*, 'to go,' *venir*, 'to come,' etc.); *e.g.*

*estoy (voy, etc.) hablando*, I am speaking, etc.

See § 121, *a*.

**213. Orthographic Variations.**—It is an inviolable rule of Spanish conjugation that the consonantal *sound* occurring at the end of the infinitive stem (*i.e.* immediately before the endings -ar, -er, -ir) shall be preserved throughout the verb. When, therefore, there is a change of the vowel beginning the flecational ending, the *written character* denoting the consonantal sound at the end of the infinitive stem may have to be changed, for the original character may not denote the original sound before the new vowel; thus it is obvious that a first conjugation verb in -car cannot continue to have *c* before the preterite ending, first person singular in -é; the original *k* sound of the infinitive stem can now be indicated only by *qu* before the -é.

Many of the changes here indicated for regular verbs occur also in the case of irregular verbs.



**214.** The usual variations in spelling are the following :

(1) Verbs in **-c-ar** change **c** to **qu** before flectional **e**. The change can occur only in the present subjunctive and in the first person singular of the preterite indicative.

**Sacar, to take out**

*Pret. 1st Sing.* saqué

*Pres. Subj.* saque saques saque saquemos saquéis saquen

(2) Verbs in **-g-ar** insert **u** between the **g** and flectional **e**. The cases of change are the same as for **-c-ar** verbs.

**Pagar, to pay**

*Pret. 1st Sing.* pagué

*Pres. Subj.* pague, etc.

(The **u** has no pronounceable value: it is a mere sign that the **g** is "hard" before the following **e**.)

(3) Verbs in **-gu-ar** write a diæresis over the **u** before flectional **e**. This is necessary in order to indicate that the **u**, which has a pronounceable value before the infinitive ending **-ar**, continues to have one before the **-e**. Without the diæresis **u** is silent in the combination **gue**.

**Apaciguar, to pacify**

*Pret. 1st Sing.* apacigiué

*Pres. Subj.* apacigüe, etc.

(4) Verbs in **-z-ar** change **z** to **c** before flectional **e**. The cases concerned are the same as in the three preceding classes, but the variation in spelling is a purely conventional one (due to the fact that modern Spanish does not write **z** before **e** or **i**), and no possible change of sound is involved.

**Rezar, to pray**

*Pret. 1st Sing.* recé

*Pres. Subj.* rece, etc.

**215.** The preceding cases concern only verbs of the first conjugation. In the ensuing ones we deal with second and third conjugation verbs.

(1) Verbs in **-c-er** or **-c-ir** preceded by a consonant change **c** to **z** before flectional **o** or **a**. The cases concerned here and in the three following classes are the first person singular of the present indicative and all of the present subjunctive.

**Vencer, to conquer**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* } venzo

*Pres. Subj.* venza venzas venza venzamos venzáis venzan

**Esparcir, to scatter**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* esparzo *Pres. Subj.* esparza, etc.

a. For verbs in **-cer** and **-cir** preceded by a vowel, see the Inceptive Conjugation, § 220.

(2) Verbs in **-g-er** or **-g-ir**, whether regular verbs or not, change **g** to **j** before flectional **o** or **a**.

**Coger, to gather, take, etc.**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* cojo *Pres. Subj.* coja, etc.

**Corregir, to correct**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* corrijo  
*Pres. Subj.* corrija, etc. (A radical-changing verb.)

(3) Verbs in **-qu-ir** change **qu** to **c** before flectional **o** or **a**.

**Delinquir, to be delinquent**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* delinco *Pres. Subj.* delinca, etc.

(4) Verbs in **-gu-ir** omit the **u** before flectional **o** or **a**. The **u** is a mere sign of "hard" **g** in the infinitive, and is not needed before a following **o** or **a**.

**Distinguir, to distinguish**

*Pres. Indic., 1st Sing.* distingo *Pres. Subj.* distinga, etc.

**216.** In the second and third conjugations the diphthongs **-ie-** and **-i6** occur in certain endings (present participle, third person singular, and third person plural of the preterite indicative, and throughout the two imperfects and the hypothetical of

the subjunctive). If the verb stem end in a vowel (*e.g.* **le-er**, 'to read'), the **i** of these diphthongal endings must be changed to **y**, for it is a general rule (and therefore applicable to all verbs, whether regular or not) that unaccented **i** cannot stand between two vowels.

**Le-er, to read**

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	le-yendo ( <i>for</i> le-iendo)
<i>Pret. Indic., 3d Sing.</i>	le-yó ( <i>for</i> le-ió)
<i>3d Pl.</i>	le-yeron ( <i>for</i> le-ieron)
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	le-yese, <i>etc.</i> ( <i>for</i> le-iese, <i>etc.</i> )
<i>2d Form</i>	le-yera, <i>etc.</i> ( <i>for</i> le-iera, <i>etc.</i> )
<i>Hypothetical</i>	le-yere, <i>etc.</i> ( <i>for</i> le-ie.e, <i>etc.</i> )

This change is particularly common in **-uir** verbs (**huir**, 'to flee,' **huyendo**, *etc.*).

**217.** If the verb stem end in **ll** or **ñ**, the **i** of the diphthongal endings **-ie-** and **-ió** disappears. This is true of all verbs, regular or not. Certain irregular verbs (especially **decir**, 'to say,' **traer**, 'to bring,' and **-ducir** derivatives) likewise lose the **i** of their **-ie-** endings after the **j** of their preterite stem.

**Bullir, to boil**

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	bull-endo ( <i>instead of</i> bull-iendo)
<i>Pret. Indic., 3d Sing.</i>	bull-ó ( <i>instead of</i> bull-ió)
<i>3d Pl.</i>	bull-eron ( <i>instead of</i> bull-ieron)
<i>Impf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	bull-ese, <i>etc.</i>
<i>2d Form</i>	bull-era, <i>etc.</i>
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	bull-ere, <i>etc.</i>

**Plañir, to lament**

plañ-endo	plañ-ó	plañ-eron
plañ-ese, <i>etc.</i>	plañ-era, <i>etc.</i>	plañ-ere, <i>etc.</i>

**Traer, to bring**

<i>Pret. Indic., 3d Pl.</i>	traj-eron		
<i>Subj.</i>	traj-ese, <i>etc.</i>	traj-era, <i>etc.</i>	traj-ere, <i>etc.</i>

**218.** In the three persons singular and in the third plural of the present tenses (indicative, subjunctive, and imperative), certain **-iar** and **-uar** verbs take an accent on the **i** or the **u**.

**Variar, to vary** .

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	varío	varías	varía	(variarnos)	(variáis)	varían
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	varíe	varíes	varíe	(variemos)	(variéis)	varíen
<i>Imper. Sing.</i>	varía					

**Acentuar, to accentuate, to accent**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	acentúo	acentúas	acentúa	acentúan
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	acentúe	acentúes	acentúe	acentúen
<i>Imper. Sing.</i>	acentúa			

**219.** Not all the **-iar** and **-uar** verbs take this accent; cf. **principiar**, 'to begin'; **principio**, 'I begin'; **presenciar**, 'to witness'; **presencio**, 'I witness'; **diferenciar**, 'to differentiate'; **diferencian**, 'they differentiate.' By practice only can it be determined whether the accent should fall on the **i** and the **u** or not. The verbs in the following lists are among the commonest taking the accent.

(1) **-iar**:

acuantiar	calofriar	cuantiar	enfriar	guiar	telegrafiar
aliar	cariar	desafiar	enviar	hastiar	triar
ampliar	ciar	descarriar	espíar	liar	vaciar
arriar	confiar	desconfiar	estriar	piar	vanagloriar
ataviar	contrariar	descriar	expiar	porfiar	variar
averiar	correntiar	desvariar	fiar	resfriar	vigiar
aviar	criar	desviar	gloríar	rociar	zurriar

(2) **-uar**:

acentuar	continuar	extenuar	habituár	perpetuar	situár
actuar	desvirtuar	fluctuar	individuár	puntuár	tumultuar
arruar	efectuar	ganzuar	infatuár	redituar	usufructuar
atenuar	evaluar	graduár	insinuár	ruar	valuar
conceptuar	exceptuar				

**220. Verbs with Inceptive Endings.** — There are certain verbs of the second and third conjugations whose infinitives end in *-cer* or *-cir* preceded by a vowel and the great majority of which are derived from Latin inceptive (*-scere*) verbs. In the present stem (indicative and subjunctive) these insert a *z* before the *c*, wherever the verb ending begins with *o* or *a*. Only seven forms undergo this change; namely, the first person singular present indicative, and the six forms of the present subjunctive. All other forms of these verbs are regular.<sup>1</sup>

**Conocer, to know, conociendo, conocido**

*Pres. Indic.*

conozc-o    conoc-es    conoc-e    conoc-emos    conoc-éis,    conoc-en

*Pres. Subj.*

conozc-a    conozc-as    conozc-a    conozc-amos    conozc-áis    conozc-an

*Pres. Imperat.* conoce, conoc-ed

*Indic. Imperf.* conocía, etc.

*Pret.* conocí, etc.

*Fut.*            conoceré, etc.

*Cond.* conocería, etc.

*Subj. Imperfs.* conociese, etc. conociera, etc.

*Hyp.*            conociere, etc.

**Lucir, to shine, luciendo, lucido**

*Pres. Indic.* luzc-o    luc-es    luc-e    luc-imos    luc-ís    luc-en

*Pres. Subj.* luzc-a    luzc-as    luzc-a    luzc-amos    luzc-áis    luzc-an

All other forms regular as in the third conjugation.

*Exceptions:* — *a. mecer*, 'to rock' (and its derivative *remecer*), simply changes *c* to *z* before *o* or *a* (*mezo*, *meza*, etc.); it is a regular verb of the second conjugation. *Cocer*, 'to boil,' *recocer*, 'to boil again,' and *escocer*, 'to smart,' likewise change *c* to *z*; they are radical-changing verbs of the first class, *e.g.* *cuezo*, *cueza*, etc.; cf. § 223 (4); but *cocer* is little used in forms taking *z*. *Hacer*, 'to do,' 'to make,' *decir*, 'to say,' and their derivatives, are irregular verbs and not of the inceptive class.

<sup>1</sup> The inceptive or "beginning" sense is not necessarily present in these verbs. It was already gone to a large degree in Latin.

Irregular, too, are **yacer**, 'to lie,' and **placer**, 'to please.' **Pacer**, 'to graze,' and **balbucir**, 'to stammer,' are hardly used in the forms that would have an inserted **z**.

*b.* Certain irregular verbs conjugate their present tenses after the fashion of the inceptive verb. Thus the **-ducir** derivatives (**conducir**, **inducir**, etc.) have in the pres. indic. **-duzco**, and in the pres. subj. **-duzca**, **-duzcas**, **-duzca**, **-duzcamos**, **-duzcáis**, **-duzcan**. The rest of their present forms are also like those of **lucir**; that is, are those of regular verbs of the third conjugation. Their preterite tenses are irregular. See § 256.

**221. Radical-changing Verbs.**—Quite a number of verbs are regular as to their flecational endings, but under certain conditions modify the vocalic nature of their radical or root syllable. In these verbs the infinitive shows the unmodified root vowel, which must be either **e** or **o**. As a result of accentual influences or of apparent umlaut (*e.g.* the influence of the **i** of one of the diphthongs **ie**, **io**, in the following syllable) the **e** may become **ie** or even **i** and the **o** may become **ue** or even **u**.

**222.** There are three main classes of these radical-changing verbs. Their variations may be represented by this scheme :

- |      |                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                       |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I.   | Root vowel <b>e</b> becomes <b>ie</b>                                                                                                                                                | } under the accent.                   |
|      | Root vowel <b>o</b> becomes <b>ue</b>                                                                                                                                                |                                       |
| II.  | Root vowel <b>e</b> becomes <b>ie</b>                                                                                                                                                | } under the accent.                   |
|      | Root vowel <b>o</b> becomes <b>ue</b>                                                                                                                                                |                                       |
|      | Root vowel <b>e</b> becomes <b>i</b>                                                                                                                                                 | } when not accented, if the following |
|      | Root vowel <b>o</b> becomes <b>u</b>                                                                                                                                                 |                                       |
|      | syllable have <b>a</b> or one of the diphthongs <b>ie</b> , <b>io</b> .                                                                                                              |                                       |
| III. | Root vowel <b>e</b> becomes <b>i</b> , both (1) under the accent and (2) when not accented, if followed by a syllable with <b>a</b> or one of the diphthongs <b>ie</b> , <b>io</b> . |                                       |

NOTE.—It is well for students to be on their guard against all verbs showing **e** or **o** in what seems to be the root vowel of the infinitive. A verb list should be consulted for the purpose of ascertaining whether they are radical-changing or not.

—223. This first class of radical-changing verbs embraces only **-ar** and **-er** verbs. In these, **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** when the root syllable has the accent. It can have the accent only in the three persons singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and in the second person singular of the imperative. These forms alone, then, show any change: all the other forms are perfectly regular. The variations may be illustrated by the verbs

**pensar**, to think.

**contar**, to count, to tell.

**perder**, to lose.

**mover**, to move.

(1) **Pensar, pensando, pensado**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ <div>piens-o</div> <div>piens-as</div> <div>piens-a</div>
---------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

*Imperf. Indic.* pens-aba, pens-abas, etc.

*Pret. Indic.* pens-é, pens-aste, etc.

*Fut. Indic.* pensar-é, pensar-ás, etc.

*Cond. Indic.* pensar-ía, pensar-ías, etc.

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form* pens-ase, pens-ases, etc.

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form* pens-ara, pens-aras, etc.

*Hyp. Subj.* pens-are, pens-ares, etc.

(2) **Perder, perdiendo, perdido**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ <div>pierd-o</div> <div>pierd-es</div> <div>pierd-e</div>
---------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------



<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	perd-ía, perd-ías, etc.
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	perd-í, perd-iste, etc.
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	perder-é, perder-ás, etc.
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	perder-ía, perder-ías, etc.
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	perd-iese, perd-ieses, etc.
<i>Imperf. Subj., 2d Form</i>	perd-iera, perd-ieras, etc.
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	perd-iere, perd-ieres, etc.

(3) **Contar, contando, contado**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ cuent-o cuent-as cuent-a }	{ cont-amos cont-áis cuent-an cont-emos }	All other forms are regular.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ cuent-e cuent-es cuent-e }	{ cont-éis }	
<i>Imperat.</i>	cuent-a	cont-ad	

Cont-aba, etc. ; cont-é, etc. ; contar-é, etc. ; contar-ía, etc. ; cont-ase, etc. ; cont-ara, etc. ; cont-are, etc.

(4) **Mover, moviendo, movido**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ muev-o muev-es muev-e }	{ mov-emos mov-éis muev-en }	All other forms are regular.
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ muev-a muev-as muev-a }	{ mov-amos mov-áis muev-an }	
<i>Imperat.</i>	muev-e	mov-ed	

Mov-ía, etc. ; mov-í, etc. ; mover-é, etc. ; mover-ía, etc. ; mov-iese, etc. ; mov-iera, etc. ; mov-iere, etc.

NOTE. — The change of the root vowels *e* and *o* to *ie* and *ue* under the accent started with verbs having as their root vowels in Latin *ē* or *ae* (vulgar Latin open *e*) and *ō*. In the development of Latin into Spanish these vowels could not remain under the accent (as the long vowels did), but when stressed they broke into the corresponding diphthongs *ie*, *ue*.

When not under the accent, they ordinarily preserved their integrity in Spanish: cf. Latin *pētra*, Spanish **pedra**, 'stone'; Latin *tērra*, Spanish **tierra**, 'earth'; Latin *cērtus*, Spanish **cierto**, 'certain'; Latin *caecus*, Spanish **ciego**, 'blind'; Latin *fōrtis*, Spanish **fuerte**, 'strong'; but with unaccented and therefore retained root vowel, Latin \**pētrārius*, Spanish **pedrero**, 'stone-cutter'; Latin *tērrēnus*, Spanish **terreno**, 'land,' etc., etc.

**224.** Certain verbs in **-olver** are of this first radical-changing class, but have only an irregular past participle in **-uelto**.

These are chiefly

**volver**, to return, to come back;

*Pres. Indic.* vuelvo, vuelves, etc.;      *Past Part.* vuelto;

and its derivatives. **devolver**, 'to give back'; **envolver**, 'to wrap up'; **revolver**, 'to stir,' etc., and **solver**, 'to loosen,' and its derivatives, **absolver**, 'to absolve'; **disolver**, 'to dissolve'; **resolver**, 'to resolve,' etc.

**225.** Orthographic changes already indicated for regular verbs are to be observed also in radical-changing verbs; cf. §§ 213-217, e.g.:

<b>c to qu,</b>	revolcarse, 'to wallow':	{ <i>Pret., 1st Sing.</i> me revolqué <i>Pres. Sbj., 1st Sing.</i> me revuelque, etc.
<b>g to gu,</b>	cegar, 'to blind':	{ <i>Pret. 1st Sing.</i> cegué <i>Pres. Sbj. 1st Sg.</i> ciegue, etc.
<b>z to c,</b>	tropezar, 'to stumble':	{ <i>Pret. 1st Sing.</i> tropecé <i>Pres. Sbj. 1st Sing.</i> tropiece
<b>ç to z,</b>	torcer, 'to twist':	{ <i>Pres. Ind.</i> tuerzo, but tuerces, tuerce, etc. <i>Pres. Sbj.</i> tuerza, tuerzas, etc.
<b>&lt;g&gt;o to (g)üe,</b>	degollar, 'to behead':	{ <i>Pres. Ind.</i> degüello, degüellas, etc. <i>Pres. Sbj.</i> degüelle, etc.

**226.** The verbs **errar**, 'to err,' and **oler**, 'to have an odor,' 'to smell,' are of this first radical-changing class, but wherever they stress their root syllables, the resulting **ie** of **errar** is changed to **ye**, and the resulting **ue** of **oler** to **hue**, because of the rule that no word should begin with the diphthongs **ie** or **ue**.

(1) **Errar, errando, errado**

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	yerr-o	yerr-as	yerr-a	err-amos	err-áis	yerr-an
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	yerr-e	yerr-es	yerr-e	err-emos	err-éis	yerr-en
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	yerr-a	—	—	err-ad	—
		<i>etc.</i>			<i>etc.</i>	

(2) **Oler, oliendo, olido**

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	huel-o	huel-es	huel-e	ol-emos	ol-éis	huel-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	huel-a	huel-as	huel-a	ol-amos	ol-áis	huel-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	huel-e	—	—	ol-ed	—
		<i>etc.</i>			<i>etc.</i>	

*a.* An **h** is also inserted before the **ue** of the stressed root syllables of **desosar**, 'to bone,' 'to unbone,' and **desovar**, 'to spawn.' Here the **h** is due to the analogy of the related nouns **hueso**, 'bone,' and **huevo**, 'egg.'

**Desosar, desosando, desosado**

*Pres. Indic.*

deshueso deshuelas deshuesa desosamos desosáis deshuesan

*Pres. Subj.*

deshuese deshueses deshuese desosemos desoséis deshuesen

*Imperat.*

—	deshuesa	—	—	desosad	—
	<i>etc.</i>			<i>etc.</i>	

In similar fashion **desovar** has

deshuevo deshuevas deshueva desovamos *etc.*

**227.** Instead of **o** in the unaccented syllables, to correspond to **ue** of the accented syllables, **jugar**, 'to play,' now shows **u**. But the **u** has simply taken the place of older **o**. The **ue** remains wherever originally developed. Before flexional **e** of the ending, **u** is inserted after the **g**.

**Jugar, jugando, jugado**

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	juego	juegas	juega	jugamos	jugáis	juegan
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	juegue	juegues	juegue	juguemos	juguéis	jueguen
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	juega	—	—	jugad	—
<i>Pret. Ind.</i>	jugué, etc.					

All other forms have **u**.

**228.** Three verbs in **-ir** seem to belong to this class, which regularly comprises only **-ar** and **-er** verbs. These are **discernir**, 'to discern,' **concernir**, 'to concern' (cf. § 264), **adquirir**, 'to acquire,' and **inquirir**, 'to inquire.' But they are derivatives and are related to simple verbs in **-er**, viz. **cerner** and **querer**.<sup>1</sup> **Adquirir** and **inquirir** show the further peculiarity of an **i** in the unstressed root forms, to correspond to the **ie** of the stressed root syllables; but it is to be observed that **querer** shows the original **e**.

(1) **Discernir, discerniendo, discernido**

*Pres. Indic.*

discierno disciernes discierne discernimos discernís disciernen

*Pres. Subj.*

discierna disciernas discierna discernamos discernáis disciendan

*Imperat.*

— discierne — — discernid —

All other forms are regular as of the **-ir** conjugation.

<sup>1</sup> **Querer** is irregular, **adquirir** and **inquirir** are regular, in the preterite and allied forms.

(2) **Adquirir, adquiriendo, adquirido***Pres. Indic.*

adquiero adquieres adquire adquirimos adquirís adquieren

*Pres. Subj.*

adquiera adquieras adquiera adquiramos adquiráis adquieran

*Imperat.*

— adquiere — — adquirid —

All other forms are regular as of the **-ir** conjugation.

**229.** The second radical-changing class embraces only verbs of the third conjugation with the root vowel **e** or **o**.

As in the first class, **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** under the accent. When not accented the **e** is changed to **i** and the **o** to **u**, if the strong vowel **a** or one of the diphthongs **ie**, **ió** occur in the next syllable. In all other cases the original **e** and **o** remain. This class may be illustrated by the conjugation of the verbs **sentir**, 'to feel,' and **dormir**, 'to sleep.'

(1) **Sentir, sintiendo, sentido***Pres. Indic.*

sient-o sient-es sient-e sent-imos sent-ís sient-en

*Pres. Subj.*

sient-a sient-as sient-a sint-amos sint-áis sient-an

*Imperat.*

— sient-e — — sent-id —

*Fut. Indic.* sentir-é, etc. (Regular)*Cond. Indic.* sentir-ía, etc. (Regular)*Imperf. Indic.* sent-ía, etc. (Regular)*Pret. Indic.*

sent-í sent-iste sint-ió sent-imos sent-isteis sint-ieron

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

sint-iese sint-ieses sint-iese sint-iésemos sint-ieseis sint-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

sint-iera sint-ieras sint-iera sint-iéramos sint-ierais sint-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.*

sint-iere sint-ieres sint-iere sint-iéremos sint-iereis sint-ieren

(2) **Dormir, durmiendo, dormido**

*Pres. Indic.* { duerm-o duerm-es duerm-e  
{ dorm-imos dorm-ís duerm-en

*Pres. Subj.* { duerm-a duerm-as duerm-a  
{ durm-amos durm-áis duerm-an

*Imperat.* { ——— duerm-e ———  
{ ——— dorm-id ———

*Fut. Indic.* dormir-é, etc. (*Regular*)

*Cond. Indic.* dormir-la, etc. (*Regular*)

*Imperf. Indic.* dorm-la, etc. (*Regular*)

*Pret. Indic.* { dorm-í dorm-iste durm-ió  
{ dorm-imos dorm-isteis durm-ieron

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form* { durm-iese durm-ieses durm-iese  
{ durm-iésemos durm-ieseis durm-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form* { durm-iera durm-ieras durm-iera  
{ durm-iéramos durm-ierais durm-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.* { durm-iere durm-ieres durm-iere  
{ durm-iéremos durm-iereis durm-ieren

It is a useful fact to remember that in this class the subjunctive imperfections and hypothetical always show the same stem as the preterite, third person singular.

a. The number of **o** verbs in this second radical-changing class is small: **dormir**, 'to sleep,' and **morir**, 'to die,' are the only *simple* verbs in it. **Morir** is conjugated exactly like **dormir** except in its past participle, which has only the irregular form **muerto**. The past participle **muerto** is not only intransitive, meaning 'died,' 'dead' (**el hombre ha muerto**, 'the man has died,' 'the man is dead'); but with a *personal* object it may be transitive, meaning 'killed' (**hemos muerto al soldado**, 'we have killed the soldier').

230. The third radical-changing class consists only of third-conjugation verbs with the root vowel *e*. A change occurs only in the same cases as in Class II, viz. under the accent, and where the root syllable is not accented if it be followed by *a* or one of the diphthongs *ie*, *io*. In both these cases the *e* becomes *i* (so that there is no diphthong in the root syllable of these verbs). In all other forms the *e* remains and those forms are regular as of the third conjugation. The class may be illustrated by the conjugation of *vestir*, 'to clothe.'

**Vestir, vistiendo, vestido**

*Pres. Indic.*

vist-o	vist-es	vist-e	vest-imos	vest-ís	vist-en
--------	---------	--------	-----------	---------	---------

*Pres. Subj.*

vist-a	vist-as	vist-a	vist-amos	vist-áis	vist-an
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperat.*

—	vist-e	—	—	vest-id	—
---	--------	---	---	---------	---

*Fut. Indic.*      vestir-é, etc.      (*Regular*)

*Cond. Indic.*    vestir-ía, etc.      (*Regular*)

*Imperf. Indic.* vestir-ía, etc.      (*Regular*)

*Pret. Indic.*

vest-í	vest-iste	vist-ió	vest-imos	vest-isteis	vist-ieron
--------	-----------	---------	-----------	-------------	------------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

vist-iese	vist-ieses	vist-iese	vist-iésemos	vist-ieseis	vist-iesen
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

vist-iera	vist-ieras	vist-iera	vist-iéramos	vist-ierais	vist-ieran
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Hyp. Subj.*

vist-iere	vist-ieres	vist-iere	vist-iéremos	vist-iereis	vist-ieren
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

As in the second class, it is to be noted that the stem of the preterite, third person singular, prevails throughout the subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical.



231. The orthographical changes stated for regular verbs are to be observed here: cf. §§ 213-217.

gu to g,	seguir, 'to follow':	{	<i>Pres. Indic.</i> , 1st Sing. <i>sigo</i>
		{	<i>Pres. Subj.</i> <i>siga</i> , <i>sigas</i> , etc.
g to j,	elegir, 'to elect':	{	<i>Pres. Indic.</i> , 1st Sing. <i>elijo</i>
		{	<i>Pres. Subj.</i> <i>elija</i> , <i>elijas</i> , etc.
ñie to ñe,	ceñir, 'to gird':	{	<i>Pres. Part.</i> <i>ciñendo</i> ( <i>for</i> <i>ciñiendo</i> )
ñió to ñó,			<i>Pret.</i> 3d Sing. <i>ciñó</i> , 3d Pl. <i>ciñeron</i>
			<i>Imperf. Subj.</i> , 1st Form, <i>ciñese</i> , etc.
			<i>Imperf. Subj.</i> , 2d Form, <i>ciñera</i> , etc.
		{	<i>Hyp. Subj.</i> <i>ciñere</i> , etc.

232. The verb **erguir**, 'to erect,' may in the stressed root syllables of its present tenses have either the diphthong **ie** (written **ye** because it is at the beginning of the word) or the vowel **i**. It may be conjugated throughout as of either the second or the third radical-changing class. Of course its **u** disappears before **o** or **a**.

### Erguir, irguiendo, erguido

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	{	yerg-o    yergu-es    yergu-e	{	ergui-mos    ergu-ís	{	yergu-en
	{	irg-o    irgu-es    irgu-e	{		{	irgu-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{	yerg-a    yerg-as    yerg-a	{	irg-amos    irg-áis	{	yerg-an
	{	irg-a    irg-as    irg-a	{		{	irg-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	{	—    yergu-e    —	{	—    ergu-id	{	—
	{	—    irgu-e    —	{		{	—
<i>Fut. Ind.</i>	erguir-é, etc.			(Regular)		
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	erguir-ía, etc.			(Regular)		
<i>Imp. Ind.</i>	ergu-ía, etc.			(Regular)		
<i>Pret. Ind.</i>	ergu-í    ergu-iste    irgu-ió    ergu-imos    ergu-isteis    irgu-ieron					
<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	{	irgu-iese, etc.				
1st Form,						
<i>Imp. Subj.</i>	{	irgu-iera, etc.				
2d Form,						
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	irgu-iere, etc.					

**233.** There are certain verbs in **-eír** that belong to this class. They change their **e** to **i** in the same cases as **vestir**, but whenever that **i** comes into conjunction with **i** of a following diphthong **ie** or **ió**, one of the two **i**'s disappears, as in **reír**, 'to laugh.'

**Reír, riendo** (*for* **ri-iendo**), **re-ído**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	rí-o	rí-es	rí-e	re-ímos	re-ís	rí-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	rí-a	rí-as	rí-a	ri-amos	ri-áis	rí-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	rí-e	—	—	re-íd	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	reir-é, etc.		(Regular)			
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	reir-ía, etc.		(Regular)			
<i>Imperf. Ind.</i>	re-ía, etc.		(Regular)			
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	re-i	re-íste	{ ríó ( <i>for</i> ) ri-íó } }	re-ímos	re-ísteis	{ rieron ( <i>for</i> ) ri-ieron } }
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	riese ( <i>for</i> ri-iese)		rieses, etc.			
<i>Imperf. Subj., 2d Form</i>	riera ( <i>for</i> ri-iera)		rieras, etc.			
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	riere ( <i>for</i> ri-iere)		rieres, etc.			

*a.* This is now the customary conjugation of **reír** and other **-eír** verbs of this class. Formerly—at least in the case of **reír** itself—the **i** was not lost necessarily, and there resulted such forms as **riyendo** (unaccented **i** changed to **y** between vowels), **riyó**, **riyeron**, **riyese**, etc., **riyera**, etc., **riyere**, etc. Note the many forms of **reír** requiring a written accent.

**234.** The verb **podrir**, 'to putrefy,' was once included in this class as an example of a change of **o** to **u** in conjugation. But in practice it has become a regular verb of the third conjugation, with **u** everywhere in the root syllable. The **o** is retained only in by-forms of the infinitive and past participle, **podrir** and **podrido**. **Pudrir** is preferred to **podrir**, but as the passive participle **podrido** seems to be still the commoner form.

**235. -Uir Verbs.**—These include only verbs with a pronounced **u** (written with a diæresis when **g** precedes, as in **argüir**, 'to argue')

Their peculiarity consists in adding **y** to their stem vowel **u**, except where the flecional ending begins with **i** (whether stressed **i** or **i** of the diphthongs **ie**, **io**). Of course, the future and conditional indicative do not take the **y**, being based on the infinitive. Besides this **y** added to the stem, the conjugation of these verbs shows a **y** (in the present participle, the preterite, third singular, and third plural, and the subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical) which is not an addition, but merely represents the unaccented **i** of the diphthongal ending, which has chanced to come between vowels: cf. § 216.

The class may be illustrated by the conjugation of **huir**, 'to flee.'

**Huir, huyendo** (*for* hu-iendo), **huido**

*Pres. Indic.*

huy-o	huy-es	huy-e	hu-imos	hu-is	buy-en
-------	--------	-------	---------	-------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

huy-a	huy-as	huy-a	huy-amos	huy-áis	huy-an
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperat.*

—	huy-e	—	—	hu-id	—
---	-------	---	---	-------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

huir-é, *etc.* (*Regular*)

*Cond. Indic.*

huir-ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

*Imperf. Indic.*

hu-ía	hu-ías	hu-ía	hu-íamos	hu-íais	hu-ían
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pret. Indic.*

hu-f	hu-iste	hu-yó	hu-imos	hu-isteis	hu-yeron
------	---------	-------	---------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

hu-yese	hu-yeses	hu-yese	hu-yésemos	hu-yeseis	hu-yesen
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

hu-yera	hu-yeras	hu-yera	hu-yéramos	hu-yerais	hu-yeran
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

hu-yere	hu-yeres	hu-yere	hu-yéremos	hu-yereis	hu-yeren
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

a. Verbs in **-güir** require their diæresis only before a written **i**: it disappears before **y**: *eg.*

**argüir**, 'to argue,' but **arguyendo**, **arguyo**, **arguye**, **arguyen**, **arguya**, etc.  
**argüia**, **argüi**, but **arguyó**, **arguyese**, etc.

## The Irregular Verb

### 236. Ser, to be

#### Ser, siendo, sido

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	soy	eres	es	somos	sois	son
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	se-a	se-as	se-a	se-amos	se-áis	se-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	sé	—	—	sed	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	ser-é	ser-ás	ser-á	ser-emos	ser-éis	ser-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	ser-ía	ser-ías	ser-ía	ser-íamos	ser-íais	ser-ían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	fu-i	fu-iste	fu-é	fu-imos	fu-isteis	fu-eron
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 1st Form	} fu-ese	} fu-eses	} fu-ese	} fu-ésemos	} fu-eseis	} fu-esen
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 2d Form						
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	fu-ere	fu-eres	fu-ere	fu-éremos	fu-ereis	fu-eren

### 237. Haber, to have

#### Haber, habiendo, habido

##### *Pres. Indic.*

he	has	ha	hemos	hab-éis	han
----	-----	----	-------	---------	-----

##### *Pres. Subj.*

hay-a	hay-as	hay-a	hay-amos	hay-áis	hay-an
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

##### *Imperat.*

—	(hé)	—	—	hab-ed	—
---	------	---	---	--------	---

##### *Fut. Indic.*

habr-é	habr-ás	habr-á	habr-emos	habr-éis	habr-án
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

##### *Cond. Indic.*

habr-ía	habr-ías	habr-ía	habr-íamos	habr-íais	habr-ían
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

hab-ía	hab-ías	hab-ía	hab-íamos	hab-íais	hab-ían
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

hub-e	hub-iste	hub-o	hub-imos	hub-isteis	hub-ieron
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form.*

hub-iese	hub-ieses	hub-iese	hub-iésemos	hub-ieseis	hub-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form.*

hub-iera	hub-ieras	hub-iera	hub-iéramos	hub-ierais	hub-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

hub-iere	hub-ieres	hub-iere	hub-iéremos	hub-iereis	hub-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*a.* Note that the future and the conditional of the indicative are based on a contract form of the infinitive. The form **hé** is, in accordance with the example set by the Spanish Academy, usually classed as imperative singular of **haber**; it may, however, represent a peculiar phonetic development of the imperative singular of the verb **ver**, 'to see,' as the grammarian Cuervo suggests. It is most common in combination with the adverb **aquí**, 'here,' **hé aquí**, 'behold.' As the impersonal verb 'to be,' **haber** takes the suffix **y** (an old adverb meaning 'there') in the present indicative, whence **hay**, 'there is' or 'there are.' For the other moods and tenses it simply has the third person singular forms without the appended **y**: **había**, 'there was (were),' **habrá**, 'there will be,' etc.

It is characteristic of many irregular verbs that in the first and third singular of the preterite indicative they stress the stem vowel and not the ending: compare **hube**, **hubo** with **temí**, **temió**.

238. **Estar, to be****Estar, estando, estado***Pres. Indic.*

est-oy	est-ás	est-á	est-amos	est-áis	est-án
--------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

est-é	est-és	est-é	est-emos	est-éis	est-én
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperat.*

—	est-á	—	—	est-ad	—
---	-------	---	---	--------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

estar-é    estar-ás    estar-á    estar-emos    estar-éis    estar-án

*Cond. Indic.*

estar-ía    estar-ías    estar-ía    estar-íamos    estar-íais    estar-ían

*Imperf. Indic.*

est-aba    est-abas    est-aba    est-ábamos    est-abais    est-aban

*Pret. Indic.*

estuv-e    estuv-iste    estuv-o    estuv-imos    estuv-isteis    estuv-ieron

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

estuv-iese    estuv-ieses    estuv-iese    estuv-iésemos    estuv-ieseis    estuv-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

estuv-iera    estuv-ieras    estuv-iera    estuv-iéramos    estuv-ierais    estuv-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.*

estuv-iere    estuv-ieres    estuv-iere    estuv-iéremos    estuv-iereis    estuv-ieren

a. The present tenses of **estar** are perfectly regular as of the first conjugation, except for the **y** appended to the first person singular, present indicative form (cf. the **y** of **soy**, 'I am,' from **ser**; of **doy**, 'I give,' from **dar**; and of **voy**, 'I go,' from **ir**). **Estar** is the Latin verb *stare*, 'to stand,' which has had its sense weakened to 'to be,' and has received an initial (prosthetic) **e**, because in Spanish no word properly begins with **s** plus a consonant. All Latin words beginning with such a combination and surviving in Spanish take this **e** prefix (cf. also French *état* from Latin *statum*, etc.).

## 239. Tener, to have

## Tener, teniendo, tenido

*Pres. Indic.*

teng-o    tien-es    tien-e    ten-emos    ten-éis    tien-en

*Pres. Subj.*

teng-a    teng-as    teng-a    teng-amos    teng-áis    teng-an

*Imperat.*

—    ten    —    —    ten-ed    —

*Fut. Indic.*

tendr-é    tendr-ás    tendr-á    tendr-emos    tendr-éis    tendr-án

*Cond. Indic.*

tendr-ía    tendr-ías    tendr-ía    tendr-íamos    tendr-íais    tendr-ían

*Imperf. Indic.*

ten-ía    ten-ías    ten-ía    ten-íamos    ten-íais    ten-ían

*Pret. Indic.*

tuv-e    tuv-iste    tuv-o    tuv-imos    tuv-isteis    tuv-ieron

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

tuv-iese    tuv-ieses    tuv-iese    tuv-iésemos    tuv-ieseis    tuv-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

tuv-iera    tuv-ieras    tuv-iera    tuv-iéramos    tuv-ierais    tuv-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.*

tuv-iere    tuv-ieres    tuv-iere    tuv-iéremos    tuv-iereis    tuv-ieren

*a.* The infinitive basis of the future and the conditional of the indicative is contract, but with inserted **d**. The second and third person singular and the third person plural, present indicative, have the peculiarity of a radical-changing verb. The imperative singular has no inflectional ending.

**240. Andar, to go, walk****Andar, andando, andado**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ and-o and-amos	and-as and-áis	and-a and-an
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ and-e and-emos	and-es and-éis	and-e and-en
<i>Imperat.</i>	{ — —	and-a and-ad	— —
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	{ andar-é andar-emos	andar-ás andar-éis	andar-á andar-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	{ andar-ía andar-íamos	andar-ías andar-íais	andar-ía andar-ían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	{ and-aba and-ábamos	and-abas and-abais	and-aba and-aban



<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	{ anduv-e anduv-imos	anduv-iste anduv-isteis	anduv-o anduv-ieron
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	{ anduv-iese anduv-iésemos	anduv-ieses anduv-ieseis	anduv-iese anduv-iesen
<i>Imperf. Subj., 2d Form</i>	{ anduv-iera anduv-iéramos	anduv-ieras anduv-ierais	anduv-iera anduv-ieran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	{ anduv-iere anduv-iéremos	anduv-ieres anduv-iereis	anduv-iere anduv-ieren

a. This verb is perfectly regular as of the first conjugation in all its forms except the preterite indicative and the three subjunctive tenses based on it. Note the resemblance of the preterite stems of **estar**, **tener**, and **andar**, *i.e.* **estuv-**, **tuv-**, and **anduv-**, to that of **haber**, *i.e.* **hub-** (spelled with **v** instead of **b** in earlier Spanish).

## 241. Dar, to give

### Dar. dando, dado

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	d-oy	d-as	d-a	d-amos	d-ais	d-an
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	d-é	d-es	d-é	d-emos	d-eis	d-en
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	d-a	—	—	d-ad	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	dar-é	dar-ás	dar-á	dar-emos	dar-éis	dar-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	dar-ía	dar-ías	dar-ía	dar-íamos	dar-íais	dar-ían
<i>Imp. Indic.</i>	d-aba	d-abas	d-aba	d-ábamos	d-abais	d-aban
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	d-í	d-iste	d-íó	d-imos	d-isteis	d-ieron
<i>Imp. Subj., 1st Form</i>	{ d-iese }	d-ieses	d-iese	d-iésemos	d-ieseis	d-iesen
<i>Imp. Subj., 2d Form</i>	{ d-iera }	d-ieras	d-iera	d-iéramos	d-ierais	d-ieran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	d-iere	d-ieres	d-iere	d-iéremos	d-iereis	d-ieren

a. The stem of this verb is **d-**. Thereon are based the present tenses and the imperfect indicative with the regular endings of the first conjugation. The first person singular, present indicative, has also a **y** suffix (cf. **ser**, **estar**, and **ir** with **soy**, **estoy**, and **voy**). The preterite and the subjunctive imperfect and hypothetical tenses simply add to **d-** the regular endings of the second and third conjugation.

**242. Querer, to wish, want****Querer, queriendo, querido***Pres. Indic.*

quier-o	quier-es	quier-e	quer-emos	quer-éis	quier-en
---------	----------	---------	-----------	----------	----------

*Pres. Subj.*

quier-a	quier-as	quier-a	quer-amos	quer-áis	quier-an
---------	----------	---------	-----------	----------	----------

*Imperat.*

—	quier-e	—	—	quer-ed	—
---	---------	---	---	---------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

querr-é	querr-ás	querr-á	querr-emos	querr-éis	querr-án
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Cond. Indic.*

querr-ía	querr-ías	querr-ía	querr-íamos	querr-íais	querr-ían
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

quer-ía	quer-ías	quer-ía	quer-íamos	quer-íais	quer-ían
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Pret. Indic.*

quis-e	quis-iste	quis-o	quis-imos	quis-isteis	quis-ieron
--------	-----------	--------	-----------	-------------	------------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

quis-iese	quis-ieses	quis-iese	quis-iésemos	quis-ieseis	quis-iesen
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

quis-iera	quis-ieras	quis-iera	quis-iéramos	quis-ierais	quis-ieran
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

*Hyp. Subj.*

quis-iere	quis-ieres	quis-iere	quis-iéremos	quis-iereis	quis-ieren
-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

a. In the present tenses the verb is conjugated exactly like a radical-changing verb of the first class. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive **querr-**, whose **rr** must be carefully pronounced, especially to distinguish the conditional from the imperfect indicative.

**243. Poder, to be able****Poder, pudiendo, podido***Pres. Indic.*

pued-o	pued-es	pued-e	pod-emos	pod-éis	pued-en
--------	---------	--------	----------	---------	---------

*Pres. Subj.*

pued-a	pued-as	pued-a	pod-amos	pod-áis	pued-an
--------	---------	--------	----------	---------	---------

*Imperat.**Fut. Indic.*

podr-é	podr-ás	podr-á	podr-emos	podr-éis	podr-án
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Cond. Indic.*

podr-ia	podr-ías	podr-ía	podr-íamos	podr-íais	podr-ían
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

pod-ía	pod-ías	pod-ía	pod-íamos	pod-íais	pod-ían
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

pud-e	pud-iste	pud-o	pud-imos	pud-isteis	pud-ieron
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

pud-iese	pud-ieses	pud-iese	pud-iésemos	pud-ieseis	pud-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

pud-iera	pud-ieras	pud-iera	pud-iéramos	pud-ierais	pud-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

pud-iere	pud-ieres	pud-iere	pud-iéremos	pud-iereis	pud-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

a. The present indicative and subjunctive follow the model of a radical-changing verb of the first class, but the present participle has the same stem as the preterite. The future and conditional indicatives are based on a contract infinitive. The verb has no imperative.

**244. Caber, to be contained, find room****Caber, cabiendo, cabido***Pres. Indic.*

quep-o	cab-es	cab-e	cab-emos	cab-éis	cab-en
--------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

quep-a	quep-as	quep-a	quep-amos	quep-áis	quep-an
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperat.*

—	cab-e	—	—	cab-ed	—
---	-------	---	---	--------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

cabr-é	cabr-ás	cabr-á	cabr-emos	cabr-éis	cabr-án
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Cond. Indic.*

cabr-fa	cabr-fas	cabr-fa	cabr-famos	cabr-fais	cabr-fan
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

cab-fa	cab-fas	cab-fa	cab-famos	cab-fais	cab-fan
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

cup-e	cup-iste	cup-o	cup-imos	cup-isteis	cup-ieron
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

cup-iese	cup-ieses	cup-iese	cup-iésemos	cup-ieseis	cup-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

cup-iera	cup-ieras	cup-iera	cup-iéramos	cup-ierais	cup-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

cup-iere	cup-ieres	cup-iere	cup-iéremos	cup-iereis	cup-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

a. Note the two stems, one regular and the other irregular, in the present tenses. As is frequently the case, the present subjunctive uses throughout the irregular stem as found in the first person singular, present indicative. The future and conditional are based on a contract infinitive. The preterite **cupe** represents the Latin *capui* become *cope* and then *cupe*.

**245. Saber, to know, be aware****Saber, sabiendo, sabido***Pres. Indic.*

sé	sab-es	sab-e	sab-emos	sab-éis	sab-en
----	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

sep-a	sep-as	sep-a	sep-amos	sep-áis	sep-an
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperat.*

—	sab-e	—	—	sab-ed	—
---	-------	---	---	--------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

sabr-é	sabr-ás	sabr-á	sabr-emos	sabr-éis	sabr-án
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Cond. Indic.*

sabr-ía	sabr-fas	sabr-ía	sabr-famos	sabr-fais	sabr-fan
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

sab-ía	sab-fas	sab-ía	sab-famos	sab-fais	sab-fan
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

sup-e	sup-iste	sup-o	sup-imos	sup-isteis	sup-ieron
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

sup-iese	sup-ieses	sup-iese	sup-iésemos	sup-ieseis	sup-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

sup-iera	sup-ieras	sup-iera	sup-iéramos	sup-ieraís	sup-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

sup-iere	sup-ieres	sup-iere	sup-iéremos	sup-iereís	sup-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

α. The conjugation of **saber** is quite like that of **caber**. In the first person singular, present indicative, however, **saber** has a contract form **sé** instead of a form **sepo**, which might have been expected: but the irregular stem **sep-** has remained in the present subjunctive.

246. **Hacer**, to do, make**Hacer, haciendo, hecho***Pres. Indic.*

hag-o	hac-es	hac-e	hac-emos	hac-éis	hac-en
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

hag-a	hag-as	hag-a	hag-amos	hag-áis	hag-an
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperat.*

—	haz	—	—	hac-ed	—
---	-----	---	---	--------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

har-é	har-ás	har-á	har-emos	har-éis	har-án
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Cond. Indic.*

har-ía	har-ías	har-ía	har-íamos	har-íais	har-ían
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperf. Indic.*

hac-ía	hac-ías	hac-ía	hac-íamos	hac-íais	hac-ían
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

hic-e	hic-iste	hiz-o	hic-imos	hic-isteis	hic-ieron
-------	----------	-------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

hic-iese	hic-ieses	hic-iese	hic-iésemos	hic-ieseis	hic-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

hic-iera	hic-ieras	hic-iera	hic-iéramos	hic-ierais	hic-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

hic-iere	hic-ieres	hic-iere	hic-iéremos	hic-iereis	hic-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*a.* The past participle is irregular (from Latin *factum*). The imperative singular has no flecional ending, but consists only of the regular present stem as found in **hac-es**, etc., with, of course, **z**, and not **c**, in the final position. The future and conditional are based on a contract infinitive **har**. The preterite **hice** represents the Latin *fēcī*. Like **hacer** are conjugated its derivatives. Some of these, like **satisfacer**, 'to satisfy,' have instead of **h** the original Latin *f* of *facere*. Besides an imperative singular **satisfaz** there is found also a regular form **satisface**.

## 247. Ir, to go

**Ir, yendo, ido***Pres. Indic.*

voy	vas	va	vamos	vais	van
-----	-----	----	-------	------	-----

*Pres. Subj.*

vaya	vayas	vaya	vayamos	vayáis	vayan
------	-------	------	---------	--------	-------

*Imperat.*

—	ve	—	vamos	id	—
---	----	---	-------	----	---

*Fut. Indic.*

ir-é	ir-ás	ir-á	ir-emos	ir-éis	ir-án
------	-------	------	---------	--------	-------

*Cond. Indic.*

ir-ía	ir-ías	ir-ía	ir-íamos	ir-íais	ir-ían
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Imperf. Indic.*

iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban
-----	------	-----	--------	-------	------

*Pret. Indic.*

fu-í	fu-iste	fu-é	fu-imos	fu-isteis	fu-eron
------	---------	------	---------	-----------	---------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

fu-ese	fu-eses	fu-ese	fu-ésemos	fu-eseis	fu-esen
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

fu-era	fu-eras	fu-era	fu-éramos	fu-eráis	fu-eran
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Hyp. Subj.*

fu-ere	fu-eres	fu-ere	fu-éremos	fu-ereis	fu-eren
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

a. There are three different Latin verbs discernible in the make-up of this verb. The infinitive, present participle, past participle, imperative plural, future and conditional indicative, and imperfect indicative are associated with **ire**, 'to go.' The present indicative and subjunctive and the imperative singular forms come from **vadere**, 'to go.' The preterite and the subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical represent the Latin *fui, fuisset*, etc.; that is, they are simply borrowed from the corresponding tenses of the Spanish **ser**, 'to be.' Cf. in colloquial English 'I *was* to Boston yesterday' = 'I *went* (and returned).'

b. **Ir** is apparently the only Spanish verb having an imperative first plural form, viz. **vamos**. But authorities regard this as another form of the first plural, present subjunctive (*i.e.* while **vayamos** may represent a Latin *vadamus*, **vamos** may represent a Latin *vadamus* which passed through the stage **vaamos**). In Cervantes and other classic writers there is found also a second form of the second plural, present subjunctive, viz. **vais** (*i.e.* while Latin *vadeatis* gave **vayais**, *vadatis* gave **vais** through **vaais**). In optative constructions **vamos**, 'let us go,' etc., alone can be used: **vayamos** is restricted in use to subordinate clauses. **Vamos** and **vaya** are frequently used as interjections (cf. French *allons*), meaning 'come now!' etc.

248. **Venir**, to come**Venir**, viniendo, venido*Pres. Indic.*

veng-o	vien-es	vien-e	ven-imos	ven-ís	vien-en
--------	---------	--------	----------	--------	---------

*Pres. Subj.*

veng-a	veng-as	veng-a	veng-amos	veng-áis	veng-an
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------



*Imperat.*

— ven — — — — — ven-id —

*Fut. Indic.*

vendr-é vendr-ás vendr-á vendr-emos vendr-éis vendr-án

*Cond. Indic.*

vendr-ía vendr-ías vendr-ía vendr-íamos vendr-íais vendr-ían

*Imperf. Indic.*

ven-ía ven-ías ven-ía ven-íamos ven-íais ven-ían

*Pret. Indic.*

vin-e vin-iste vin-o vin-imos vin-isteis vin-ieron

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

vin-iese vin-ieses vin-iese vin-iésemos vin-ieseis vin-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

vin-iera vin-ieras vin-iera vin-iéramos vin-ierais vin-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.*

vin-iere vin-ieres vin-iere vin-iéremos vin-iereis vin-ieren

*a.* Certain forms have characteristics of a radical-changing verb (cf. present participle, second and third singular and third plural of present indicative, etc.). The imperative singular is without a flectional ending. The future and conditional of the indicative are based on a contract infinitive with inserted **d**. The preterite **vine** represents Latin *vēnī*.

**249. Poner, to put****Poner, poniendo, puesto***Pres. Indic.*

pong-o pon-es pon-e pon-emos pon-éis pon-en

*Pres. Subj.*

pong-a pong-as pong-a pong-amos pong-áis pong-an

*Imperat.*

— pon — — — — — pon-ed —

*Fut. Indic.*

pondr-é   pondr-ás   pondr-á   pondr-emos   pondr-éis   pondr-án

*Cond. Indic.*

pondr-ía   pondr-ías   pondr-ía   pondr-íamos   pondr-íais   pondr-ían

*Imperf. Indic.*

pon-ía   pon-ías   pon-ía   pon-íamos   pon-íais   pon-ían

*Pret. Indic.*

pus-e   pus-iste   pus-o   pus-imos   pus-isteis   pus-ieron

*Imperf Subj., 1st Form*

pus-iese   pus-ieses   pus-iese   pus-iésemos   pus-ieseis   pus-iesen

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

pus-iera   pus-ieras   pus-iera   pus-iéramos   pus-ierais   pus-ieran

*Hyp. Subj.*

pus-iere   pus-ieres   pus-iere   pus-iéremos   pus-iereis   pus-ieren

a. The present stem shows both a regular and an irregular (**pong-**) form. The imperative singular is without flecional ending. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive with inserted **d**. The preterite **puse** came through an intervening **pose** from Latin *posui*. The past participle **puesto** is irregular; cf. Latin *positum*.

**250. Asir, to grasp****Asir, asiendo, asido***Pres. Indic.*

asg-o   as-es   as-e   as-imos   as-ís   as-en

*Pres. Subj.*

asg-a   asg-as   asg-a   asg-amos   asg-áis   asg-an

*Imperat.*

—   as-e   —   —   as-id   —

*Fut. Indic.*

asir-é   asir-ás   asir-á   asir-emos   asir-éis   asir-án

*Cond. Indic.*

asir-ía   asir-ías   asir-ía   asir-íamos   asir-íais   asir-ían

*Imperf. Indic.*

as-ía	as-ías	as-ía	as-íamos	as-íais	as-ían
-------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pret. Indic.*

as-í	as-iste	as-ió	as-imos	as-isteis	as-ieron
------	---------	-------	---------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

as-iese	as-ieses	as-iese	as-iésemos	as-ieseis	as-iesen
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

as-iera	as-ieras	as-iera	as-iéramos	as-ierais	as-ieran
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

as-iere	as-ieres	as-iere	as-iéremos	as-iereis	as-ieren
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

α. This verb is irregular in only seven forms, viz. the first singular, present indicative, and all the present subjunctive, which show a stem **asg-**. All other forms are as of the third regular conjugation.

**251. Valer, to be worth****Valer, valiendo, valido***Pres. Indic.*

valg-o	val-es	val-e	val-emos	val-éis	val-en
--------	--------	-------	----------	---------	--------

*Pres. Subj.*

valg-a	valg-as	valg-a	valg-amos	valg-áis	valg-an
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Imperat.*

—	val or vale	—	—	val-ed	—
---	-------------	---	---	--------	---

*Fut. Indic.*

valdr-é	valdr-ás	valdr-á	valdr-emos	valdr-éis	valdr-án
---------	----------	---------	------------	-----------	----------

*Cond. Indic.*

valdr-ía	valdr-ías	valdr-ía	valdr-íamos	valdr-íais	valdr-ían
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Indic.*

val-ía	val-ías	val-ía	val-íamos	val-íais	val-ían
--------	---------	--------	-----------	----------	---------

*Pret. Indic.*

val-f	val-iste	val-ió	val-imos	val-isteis	val-ieron
-------	----------	--------	----------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 1st Form*

val-iese	val-ieses	val-iese	val-iésemos	val-ieseis	val-iesen
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Imperf. Subj., 2d Form*

val-iera	val-ieras	val-iera	val-iéramos	val-ierais	val-ieran
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

*Hyp. Subj.*

val-iere	val-ieres	val-iere	val-iéremos	val-iereis	val-ieren
----------	-----------	----------	-------------	------------	-----------

a. The present tenses have both a regular and an irregular (**valg-**) stem. The imperative singular may have a flec-tional vowel or not; it usually does nowadays. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract stem with inserted **d**. All other forms are perfectly regular.

**252. Salir, to go out, come out****Salir, saliendo, salido**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	salg-o	sal-es	sal-e	sal-imos	sal-ís	sal-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	salg-a	salg-as	salg-a	salg-amos	salg-áis	salg-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	sal	—	—	sal-id	—

a. All other forms follow the model of **valer**, from which, moreover, **salir** differs only in the four flec-tional forms characteristic of the third conjugation and in having only the imperative singular without a flec-tional vowel.

**253. Caer, to fall****Caer, cayendo, caído**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ caig-o	ca-es	ca-e
	{ ca-emos	ca-éis	ca-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ caig-a	caig-as	caig-a
	{ caig-amos	caig-áis	caig-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	{ —	ca-e	—
	{ —	ca-ed	—
<i>Fut. Indic</i>	{ caer-é	caer-ás	caer-á
	{ caer-emos	caer-éis	caer-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	{ caer-ía	caer-ías	caer-ía
	{ caer-íamos	caer-íais	caer-ían

<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	{ ca-ía ca-íamos	ca-ías ca-íais	ca-ía ca-ían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	{ ca-í ca-ímos	ca-íste ca-ísteis	ca-yó ca-yeron
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 1st Form	{ ca-yese ca-yésemos	ca-yeses ca-yeseis	ca-yese ca-yesen
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 2d Form	{ ca-yera ca-yéramos	ca-yeras ca-yerais	ca-yera ca-yeran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	{ ca-yere ca-yéremos	ca-yeres ca-yereis	ca-yere ca-yeren

a. The present tenses have a regular and an irregular (*caig-*) stem. The rest of the verb is perfectly regular. Note, however, that a written accent is required on the *i* of the past participle and of the second singular and the first and second plural of the preterite, and that unaccented *i* between vowels has been changed to *y* in the preterite third singular and third plural, in the subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical, and in the present participle.

## 254. Oír, to hear

### Oír, oyendo, oído

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	oig-o	oy-es	oy-e	o-ímos	o-ís	oy-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	oig-a	oig-as	oig-a	oig-amos	oig-áis	oig-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	oy-e	—	—	o-íd	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	oir-é	oir-ás	oir-á	oir-emos	oir-éis	oir-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	oir-ía	oir-ías	oir-ía	oir-íamos	oir-íais	oir-ían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	o-ía	o-ías	o-ía	o-íamos	o-íais	o-ían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	o-í	o-íste	o-yó	o-ímos	o-ísteis	o-yeron
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 1st Form	{ o-yese o-yésemos	o-yeses o-yeseis	o-yese o-yésemos	o-yeseis o-yeseis	o-yesen o-yesen	o-yesen
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 2d Form	{ o-yera o-yéramos	o-yeras o-yerais	o-yera o-yéramos	o-yerais o-yerais	o-yeran o-yeran	o-yeran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	o-yere	o-yeres	o-yere	o-yéremos	o-yereis	o-yeren

a. Three stems are visible in the present, viz. *oig-* (first singular, present indicative, and all of present subjunctive), *oy-* (second and third singular and third plural of present indicative and imperative singular), and the

regular stem **o-** (first and second plural, present indicative, and imperative plural). The rest of the verb is regular, but unaccented **i** between vowels is changed to **y** (third singular and plural of preterite, and all of subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical, as well as present participle). Note that stressed **i** after **o** requires a written accent.

## 255. Traer, to bring

### Traer, trayendo, traído

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ traig-o tra-emos	tra-es tra-éis	tra-e tra-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ traig-a traig-amos	traig-as traig-áis	traig-a traig-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	{ — —	tra-e tra-ed	— —
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	{ traer-é traer-emos	traer-ás traer-éis	traer-á traer-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	{ traer-ía traer-íamos	traer-ías traer-íais	traer-ía traer-ían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	{ tra-ía tra-íamos	tra-ías tra-íais	tra-ía tra-ían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	{ traj-e traj-imos	traj-iste traj-isteis	traj-o traj-eron
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	{ traj-ese traj-ésemos	traj-eses traj-eseis	traj-ese traj-esen
<i>Imperf. Subj., 2d Form</i>	{ traj-era traj-éramos	traj-eras traj-eráis	traj-era traj-eran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	{ traj-ere traj-éremos	traj-eres traj-ereis	traj-ere traj-eren

a. The present tenses show a regular and an irregular (**traig-**) stem; the present participle exhibits the change of unaccented **i** between vowels to **y** (**tra-iendo** — **tra-yendo**). Note the written accent of the past par-

ticiples. The preterite **traje** represents the Latin *traxi* (a Latin *x* between vowels has usually become *j* in Spanish). The *i* of the diphthong *ie* has disappeared after the *j*; cf. § 217.

### 256. -ducir, to lead

This verb (from Latin *ducere*) is found in modern Spanish only in certain derivatives (**conducir**, **deducir**, **inducir**, **reducir**, etc.). Its conjugation may be illustrated by one of these.

#### Conducir, to conduct

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	{ conduzc-o	conduc-es	conduc-e
	{ conduc-imos	conduc-ís	conduc-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	{ conduzc-a	conduzc-as	conduzc-a
	{ conduzc-amos	conduzc-áis	conduzc-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	{ ———	conduc-e	———
	{ ———	conduc-id	———
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	{ conducir-é	conducir-ás	conducir-á
	{ conducir-emos	conducir-éis	conducir-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	{ conducir-ía	conducir-las	conducir-ía
	{ conducir-íamos	conducir-lais	conducir-ían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	{ conduc-ía	conduc-ías	conduc-ía
	{ conduc-íamos	conduc-lais	conduc-ían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	{ conduj-e	conduj-iste	conduj-o
	{ conduj-imos	conduj-isteis	conduj-eron
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i>	{ conduj-ese	conduj-eses	conduj-ese
<i>1st Form</i>	{ conduj-ésemos	conduj-eseis	conduj-esen
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i>	{ conduj-era	conduj-eras	conduj-era
<i>2d Form</i>	{ conduj-éramos	conduj-erais	conduj-eran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	{ conduj-ere	conduj-eres	conduj-ere
	{ conduj-éremos	conduj-ereis	conduj-eren

*a.* The present tenses show the peculiarities of the inceptive verbs, to which, because there is a vowel before the **-cir**, this verb has been attracted. The preterite **-duje** represents the Latin *duxi*, and as usual the *i* absorbs the *i* of a following diphthong **-ie-**.



## 257. Decir, to say

## Decir, diciendo, dicho

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	dig-o	dic-es	dic-e	dec-imos	dec-ís	dic-en
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	dig-a	dig-as	dig-a	dig-amos	dig-áis	dig-an
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	di	—	—	decid	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	dir-é	dir-ás	dir-á	dir-emos	dir-éis	dir-án
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	dir-ía	dir-ías	dir-ía	dir-íamos	dir-íais	dir-ían
<i>Imp. Indic.</i>	dec-ía	dec-ías	dec-ía	dec-íamos	dec-íais	dec-ían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	dij-e	dij-iste	dij-o	dij-imos	dij-isteis	dij-eron
<i>Imp. Subj.,</i> 1st Form }	dij-ese	dij-eses	dij-ese	dij-ésemos	dij-eseis	dij-esen
<i>Imp. Subj.,</i> 2d Form }	dij-era	dij-eras	dij-era	dij-éramos	dij-erais	dij-eran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	dij-ere	dij-eres	dij-ere	dij-éremos	dij-ereis	dij-eren

a. The present tenses and the present participle show vocalic conditions like those of the third class of radical-changing verbs. The past participle is irregular (from Latin *dictum*); the imperative singular lacks a flecational ending (cf. Latin *dic*). The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive, **dir**. **Dije** represents the Latin *dīxi*, and after the **j** the **i** of the diphthong **ie** has disappeared (in preterite third plural and subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical). There is an indefinite form **diz**, 'it is said,' 'people say,' etc., which may represent a contraction of *dice* + *se*.

b. Derivatives of **decir** are **bendecir**, 'to bless,' and **maldecir**, 'to curse.' These imitate **decir** in their conjugation, except that they base their future and conditional indicative upon the uncontracted infinitive **decir**, whence the forms **bendeciré**, etc., **maldeciré**, etc., and have a flecational vowel in their imperative singular, **bendice** and **maldice**. Furthermore, they have regular past participles, **bendecido** and **maldecido**. The participles **bendicho** and **maldicho** are now antiquated, and the forms **bendito** and **maldito** occur only as adjectives. The derivatives **contradecir**, 'to contradict,' **desdecir**, 'to gainsay,' and **predecir**, 'to predict,' differ from **decir** only in having the full form of the imperative singular, **contradice**, **desdice**, **predice**.

## 258. Ver, to see

## Ver, viendo, visto

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<b>ve-o</b>	<b>v-es</b>	<b>v-e</b>	<b>v-emos</b>	<b>v-eis</b>	<b>v-en</b>
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<b>ve-a</b>	<b>ve-as</b>	<b>ve-a</b>	<b>ve-amos</b>	<b>ve-áis</b>	<b>ve-an</b>
<i>Imperat.</i>	—	<b>v-e</b>	—	—	<b>v-ed</b>	—
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	<b>ver-é</b>	<b>ver-ás</b>	<b>ver-á</b>	<b>ver-emos</b>	<b>ver-éis</b>	<b>ver-án</b>
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	<b>ver-ía</b>	<b>ver-ías</b>	<b>ver-ía</b>	<b>ver-íamos</b>	<b>ver-íais</b>	<b>ver-ían</b>
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	<b>ve-ía</b>	<b>ve-ías</b>	<b>ve-ía</b>	<b>ve-íamos</b>	<b>ve-íais</b>	<b>ve-ían</b>
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	<b>v-í</b>	<b>v-iste</b>	<b>v-ió</b>	<b>v-imos</b>	<b>v-isteis</b>	<b>v-ieron</b>
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 1st Form	<b>v-iese</b>	<b>v-ieses</b>	<b>v-iese</b>	<b>v-iésemos</b>	<b>v-ieseis</b>	<b>v-iesen</b>
<i>Imperf. Subj.,</i> 2d Form	<b>v-iera</b>	<b>v-ieras</b>	<b>v-iera</b>	<b>v-iéramos</b>	<b>v-ierais</b>	<b>v-ieran</b>
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	<b>v-iere</b>	<b>v-ieres</b>	<b>v-iere</b>	<b>v-iéremos</b>	<b>v-iereis</b>	<b>v-ieren</b>

a. The true present stem of this verb is **ve-**, which is seen in the first singular, present indicative (**ve-o**), and throughout in the present subjunctive (**ve-a**, etc.) and the imperfect indicative (**ve-ía**, etc.). Before a flexional **e** the stem loses its **e**, as in the remaining forms of the present indicative, the infinitive, and the imperative. It also loses the **e** in the present participle. The past participle is irregular. The preterite **ví** represents the Latin *vīdī*.<sup>1</sup> In poetry an imperfect indicative **vía**, **vías** (with reduced stem **v-**) is sometimes found even now.

b. Compounds of **ver** which show the reduced present stem (**v-**), such as **antever**, 'to foresee,' **prever**, 'to foresee,' **rever**, 'to see again,' 'to review,' are conjugated exactly like it. On the other hand, the derivative **proveer**, 'to provide,' which shows the full present stem (**ve-**), is conjugated throughout as a perfectly regular verb. It has, however, both a regular past participle, **proveído**, and an irregular one, **provisto**; and in the present participle, the preterite, third singular and third plural, and the subjunctive imperfect and hypothetical, it changes the **i** of the diphthongs **-ie-**, **-ió**, to **y**:

<sup>1</sup> Vide, for **ví**, still survives in some dialects, for instance, in New Mexico.

**Proveer, proveyendo, proveído or provisto**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	prove-o	prove-es, etc.	
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	prove-a	prove-as, etc.	
<i>Imperat.</i>		prove-e, etc.	
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	proveer-é, etc.		
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	proveer-ía, etc.		
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	prove-ía, etc.		
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	{ prove-í	prove-iste	prove-yó
	{ prove-ímos	prove-ísteis	prove-yeron
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i> , 1st Form	{ prove-yese, etc.		
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i> , 2d Form	{ prove-yera, etc.		
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	prove-yere, etc.		

Note the accent required in the regular past participle and the second singular, and the first and second plural of the preterite.

**Anomalous Past Participles**

**259.** Four regular verbs of the third conjugation have only irregular past participles.

**abrir**, to open, **abierto**.

**cubrir**, to cover, **cubierto**.

**escribir**, to write, **escrito**.

**imprimir** { to print }  
                  { to impress }, **impreso**

This peculiarity is shared by their compounds.

*a.* The participle **escribido** is found in what is perhaps punning use in such an expression as **un hombre (bien) leído y escrito**, 'a man who can read and write' (cf. the influence of the participle **leído**; its attractive force may explain **escribido**).

**260.** Two regular verbs of the second conjugation have both a regular and an irregular past participle.

**prender**, to catch, **prendido** and **preso**.

**romper**, to break, **rompido** and **roto**.

**Preso** and **roto** are preferred for the compound tenses ; **rompido**, however, is far more common than **roto** in the intransitive use.

**261.** Two regular verbs of the third conjugation have both a regular and an irregular past participle.

**oprimir**, to oppress, **oprimido** and **opreso**.

**suprimir**, to suppress, **suprimido** and **supreso**.

The regular participle alone seems now to be used in the compound tenses ; the other forms are practically adjectives.

### Defective Verbs

**262. Placer**, 'to please.' Used now chiefly as an impersonal verb, *i.e.* only in the third person singular forms of its tenses. Traces of other forms are occasionally found in the present tenses ; *e.g.* **placen**. Its impersonal conjugation is this :

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	place	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	plega, plegue <i>or</i> plazca
<i>Impf. Ind.</i>	{ placía (rare)	<i>Impf. Subj.,</i> 1st Form	{ pluguiese <i>or</i> placiese
<i>Pret. Ind.</i>	{ plugo <i>or</i> plació	<i>Impf. Subj.,</i> 2d Form	{ pluguiera <i>or</i> placiera
<i>Fut. Ind.</i>	placerá	<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	pluguiere <i>or</i> placiere
<i>Cond. Ind.</i>	placería	<i>Pres. Part.</i>	placiendo

*a.* The commonest form is **pluguiera**, which is used in optative expressions : ¡**pluguiera á Dios!** 'would to God!'

*b.* The derivative **complacer** is of the class of verbs with inceptive endings ; another derivative, **aplayer**, is found in the third person singular and plural forms, such as **aplace**, **aplacen**, **aplacia**, and **aplacian**.

**263. Yacer**, 'to lie.' This verb has many peculiarities of the inceptive class. It is nearly obsolete, and is chiefly used in the third person forms.

**Yacer, yaciendo, yacido**

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{yazco} \\ \text{yazgo} \\ \text{yago} \end{array} \right\}$	yaces	yace	yacemos	yacéis	yacen
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{yazca} & \text{yazcas, etc.} \\ \text{yazga} & \text{yazgas, etc.} \\ \text{yaga} & \text{yagas, etc.} \end{array} \right\}$					
<i>Imperat.</i>	yace or yaz					

The other forms are regular.

yací, etc.; yaciese, etc.; yaciera, etc.; yaciere, etc.; yaceré, etc.; yacería, etc.

**264. Concernir**, 'to concern,' occurs only in the third person singular and plural forms.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	concierne	conciernen
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	concierna	conciernan
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	concernirá	concernirán
<i>Cond. Indic.</i>	concerniría	concernirían
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	concernía	concernían
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	concernió	concernieron
<i>Imperf. Subj., 1st Form</i>	concerniese	concerniesen
<i>Imperf. Subj., 2d Form</i>	concerniera	concernieran
<i>Hyp. Subj.</i>	concerniere	concernieren

**265. Soler**, 'to be accustomed,' is used now in hardly any forms except those of the present and imperfect indicative.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	suelo	sueles	suele	solemos	soléis	suelen
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	solía	solías	solía	solíamos	solíais	solían

The present participle **soliendo**, the past participle **solido**, and the preterite **solí**, etc., are exceedingly rare. All other forms do not occur.

**266. Atañer**, 'to appertain,' is only found in the third person forms, especially of the present indicative.

atañe    atañen

**267. Raer**, 'to erase,' is but little used. Its conjugation is like that of **caer**, with the additional forms **raya**, **rayas**, etc., in the present subjunctive.

**268. Roer**, 'to gnaw.' This may have any one of three present stems before its endings **-o** and **-a**; otherwise it is a regular verb of the second conjugation.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ro-o} \\ \text{roig-o} \\ \text{roy-o} \end{array} \right\}$	roes	roe	roemos	roéis	roen
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ro-a} \\ \text{roig-a} \\ \text{roy-a} \end{array} \right\}$	ro-as, etc.				
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{roig-a} \\ \text{roy-a} \end{array} \right\}$	roig-as, etc.				
		roy-as, etc.				

But the first person singular, present indicative, and all the present subjunctive are rather shunned in actual use.

a. The derivative **corroer**, 'to corrode,' avoids the stems ending in **-ig** and **-y**.

**269.** It is generally stated that the preterite forms **repuse**, 'I replied,' **repusiste**, 'thou didst reply,' etc., are from the verb **reponer**, which does not in its other tenses and forms connect itself with the sense of "reply." But **repuse**, etc., may rather connect themselves with the Vulgar Latin irregular preterite of *respondere*, viz. \* **resposi**, etc.

**270.** Some ten verbs of the third regular conjugation occur only in the forms whose flecional ending begins with **i**. These are

<b>abolir</b> , to abolish.	<b>despavorir</b> , to become frightened.
<b>aguerrir</b> , to make warlike.	<b>embaír</b> , to impose upon.
<b>arrecirse</b> , to become numb.	<b>empedernir</b> , to harden.
<b>aterirse</b> , to become numb.	<b>garantir</b> , to guarantee.
<b>desmarrirse</b> , to become sad.	<b>manir</b> , to become tender.

For these there can occur in the present indicative and imperative only the forms in *-imos*, *-ís*, and *-id* (e.g. *abolimos*, *abolís*, *abolid*). They have no subjunctive present forms. They may have all the rest of the conjugation, since the endings begin with *i*.

## 271. List of Verbs.

The following list embraces radical-changing, *-uir*, irregular, and anomalous verbs. The verbs with inceptive endings (*-cer* or *-cir* preceded by a vowel) are not included: they simply follow the models given in § 220. In the case of derivatives reference is made to the conjugation of the simple verbs, which they follow. The numbers refer to paragraphs.

- abnegar**, renounce: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**abolir**, abolish: 270.  
**abrir**, open: *p. p. irr.*, 259.  
**absolver**, absolve: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 224.  
**abstenerse**, abstain: *irr.*, 239.  
**abstraer**, abstract: *irr.*, 255.  
**abuñolar**, make fritter-shaped: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. *abuñuelar, reg.*  
**acertar**, hit the mark: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**aclocarse**, stretch out, brood: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 225.  
**acordar**, resolve, remind, tune; —*se*, to remember: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).  
**acostar**, lay down: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).  
**acrecentar**, increase: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**adestrar**, guide: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); also *adiestrar, reg.*  
**adherir**, adhere: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).  
**adormir**, make drowsy: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (2).  
**adquirir**, acquire: *Rad.-ch. I*, 228.  
**aducir**, adduce: *irr.*, 256.  
**advertir**, observe, advise: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).  
**afollar**, blow with bellows: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).  
**aforar**, give a charter: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3). **Aforar**, gauge, *reg.*  
**agorar**, divine, prognosticate: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 225.  
**aguerrir**, inure to warfare: 270.  
**alebrarse**, squat, cower: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**alentar**, breathe, encourage: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**aliquebrar**, break the wings: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**almorzar**, breakfast: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.  
**alongar**, lengthen: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**amoblar**, furnish: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3). Also *amueblar, reg.*  
**amolar**, whet: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).  
**amover**, remove, dismiss: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (4).  
**andar**, go, walk: *irr.*, 240.  
**antedecir**, foretell: *irr.*, 257.  
**anteponer**, put before, prefer: *irr.*, 249.  
**antever**, foresee: *irr.*, 258.  
**apacentar**, graze: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).  
**apercollar**, collar, snatch: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).



- apernar**, seize by the legs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- aplacer**, please: *irr.*, 262.
- apostar**, bet, post: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); post troops, *reg.*
- apretar**, squeeze, press: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- aprobar**, approve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- argüir**, argue: 235.
- arrecirse**, become benumbed: 270.
- arrendar**, rent, hire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- arrepentirse**, repent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- ascender**, ascend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- asentar**, seat, set down: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- asentir**, assent, acquiesce: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- aserrar**, saw: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- asir**, seize, grasp: *irr.*, 250.
- asolar**, level to ground, raze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- asoldar**, hire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- asonar**, assonate, be in assonance: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- asosegar**, *v. sosegar*.
- atañer**, belong, appertain: 266.
- atender**, attend, mind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- atenerse**, abide, hold: *irr.*, 239.
- atentar**, try: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- Atentar**, to attempt a crime, *reg.*
- aterirse**, become rigid with cold: 270.
- aterrar**, fell: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); terrify, *reg.*
- atestar**, cram, stuff: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1). **Atestar**, attest, *reg.*
- atraer**, attract: *irr.*, 255.
- atravesar**, cross: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- atribuir**, attribute: 235.
- atronar**, make a thundering din, stun: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- avenir**, reconcile: *irr.*, 248.
- aventar**, fan, winnow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- avergonzar**, shame: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.
- azolar**, shape with the adze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- balbucir**, stammer: 220 *a.*
- bendecir**, bless: *irr.*, 257.
- bienquerer**, esteem, wish well: *irr.*, 242.
- bruñir**, burnish: 217.
- bullir**, boil: 217.
- caber**, be contained, find room: *irr.*, 244.
- caer**, fall: *irr.*, 253.
- calentar**, warm: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- cegar**, blind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- ceñir**, gird: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 217 and 231.
- cerner**, sift: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- cerrar**, close: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- cimentar**, found, establish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- circuir**, encircle: 235.
- clocar**, cluck: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- cocer**, boil, bake: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 220, *Exceptions* (a).
- coextenderse**, be coextensive: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- colar**, strain, filter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- colegir**, collect: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (2) and 231.
- colgar**, hang up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- comedirse**, behave: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- comenzar**, commence: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (4).
- competir**, compete: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- complacer**, please, content: *irr.*, 262.
- componer**, compose: *irr.*, 249.
- comprobar**, verify, confirm: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- concebir**, conceive: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- concernir**, concern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223; but cf. 264.

**concertar**, concert, regulate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**concluir**, conclude: 235.

**concordar**, accord, agree: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**condescender**, condescend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

**condolerse**, condole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**conducir**, conduct: *irr.*, cf. 256 and 220 *b*.

**conferir**, confer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**confesar**, confess: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**confluir**, join: 235.

**conmover**, move, affect: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**conseguir**, obtain, attain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (4) and 231.

**consentir**, consent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**consolar**, console; *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**consonar**, be in consonance, rhyme: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**constituir**, constitute: 235.

**constreñir**, compel, constrain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 231.

**construir**, construct: 235.

**contar**, count, tell: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**contender**, contend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

**contener**, contain: *irr.*, 239.

**contorcerse**, be distorted, writhe: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 215 (1).

**contradecir**, contradict: *irr.*, 257.

**contraer**, contract: *irr.*, 255.

**contrahacer**, counterfeit: *irr.*, 246.

**contraponer**, oppose, compare: *irr.*, 249.

**contravenir**, contravene: *irr.*, 248.

**contribuir**, contribute: 235.

**controvertir**, controvert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**convenir**, agree, fit: *irr.*, 248.

**convertir**, convert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**corregir**, correct: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (2) and 231.

**corroer**, corrode: *irr.*, 268.

**costar**, cost: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**creer**, believe: cf. 216.

**cubrir**, cover: *p.p. irr.*, 259.

**dar**, give: *irr.*, 241.

**decaer**, decay: *irr.*, 253.

**decentar**, begin to use: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**decir**, say: *irr.*, 257.

**deducir**, deduce: *irr.*, cf. 256 and 220 (*b*).

**defender**, defend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

**deferir**, defer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**degollar**, behead, cut the throat: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 225.

**demoler**, demolish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**demostrar**, demonstrate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**denegar**, deny: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.

**denostar**, insult: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**dentar**, tooth, indent; teeth: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**deponer**, depose, depone: *irr.*, 249.

**derrengar**, sprain the hip, cripple: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.

**derretir**, melt: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.

**derrocar**, pull down, demolish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.

**derruir**, cast down, destroy: 235.

**desacertar**, blunder, err: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**desacordar**, make discordant; —se, forget: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**desaferrar**, loosen, unfurl: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**desalentar**, put out of breath, discourage: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**desamoblar**, unfurnish, remove furniture: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3). Also **desamueblar**, *reg.*

**desandar**, retrace steps, undo: *irr.*, 240.

**desapretar**, slacken, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

- desaprobar**, disapprove: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- desarrendarse**, shake off the bridle: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desasentar**, disagree, displease; —**se**, get up: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desasir**, let go, release hold: *irr.*, 250.
- desasosegar**, disturb, disquiet: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- desatender**, disregard, neglect: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- desatentar**, perturb, perplex: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desavenir**, discompose, disconcert: *irr.*, 248.
- descender**, descend: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- desceñir**, ungird: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230; cf. 217 and 231.
- descolgar**, unhang, take down: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- descollar**, stand forth, excel: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- descomedirse**, be disrespectful, behave ill: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230.
- descomponer**, disconcert, decompose: *irr.*, 249.
- desconcertar**, disconcert, confound: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desconsentir**, dissent: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).
- desconsolar**, make disconsolate: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- descontar**, discount: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- desconvenir**, disagree, be unlike: *irr.*, 248.
- descordar**, remove cords: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- descornar**, remove horns: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- descubrir**, uncover, discover; *p. p. irr.*, 259.
- desdar**, untwist: *irr.* 241.
- desdecir**, gainsay: *irr.*, 257.
- desdentar**, remove teeth: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desempedrar**, unpave: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desencerrar**, release from confinement: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desencordar**, remove strings, loosen: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- desengrosar**, make lean: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- desentenderse**, disregard, feign not to notice: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desenterrar**, disinter: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desenvolver**, unfold, unravel: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, cf. 224.
- deservir**, neglect duty, do a disservice: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230.
- desflocar**, remove flocks (of wool): *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 225.
- desgobernar**, derange the government, misgovern: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- deshacer**, undo, destroy: *irr.*, 246.
- deshelar**, thaw: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desherber**, pluck out herbs: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desherrar**, uniron, remove horseshoes: 223 (1).
- desleir**, dilute: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230 and 233.
- deslendrar**, remove nits (from hair): *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desmajolar**, uproot vines: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- desmarrirse**, become sad: 270.
- desmedirse**, go beyond bounds, be unreasonable: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230.
- desmembrar**, dismember: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desmentir**, belie: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).
- desnegar**, retract denial: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- desnevar**, melt away (of snow): *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- desobstruir**, remove obstruction: 235.
- desoír**, not to heed, feign not to hear: *irr.*, 254.

- desolar**, make desolate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- desoldar**, unsolder: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- desollar**, flay: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- desosar**, remove bones: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 226 a.
- desovar**, spawn: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 226 a.
- despavorir**, be terrified, stand aghast: 270.
- despedir**, dismiss; —**se**, take leave: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- despernar**, remove legs, cripple: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- despertar**, awaken: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- despezar**, arrange (stones) at intervals, taper at the end: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 225.
- desplacar**, displease: 262.
- desplegar**, unfold, unfurl: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- despoblar**, depopulate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- desproveer**, leave unprovided, deprive of supplies: 216; cf. 258 b.
- desteñir**, discolor, fade: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 217 and 231.
- desterrar**, exile: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- destituir**, deprive, remove from office: 235.
- destorcer**, untwist: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 215 (1) and 225.
- destrocar**, return a bartered object: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- destruir**, destroy: 235.
- desventar**, vent, let out air: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- desvergonzarse**, be shameless or impudent: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.
- detener**, detain: *irr.*, 239.
- detraer**, detract: *irr.*, 255.
- devolver**, give back: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- diferir**, defer, delay, differ: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- digerir**, digest: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- diluir**, dilute: 235.
- discernir**, discern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2) and 228 (1).
- disconvenir**, *v. desconvenir*.
- discordar**, disagree, be discordant: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- disentir**, dissent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- disminuir**, diminish, 235.
- disolver**, dissolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4): *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- disonar**, be in dissonance: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- dispertar**, *v. despertar*.
- displacer**, displease: *irr.*, 262.
- disponer**, dispose: *irr.*, 249.
- distender**, distend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- distraer**, distract: *irr.*, 255.
- distribuir**, distribute: 235.
- divertir**, divert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- dolar**, plane, smooth (wood, etc.): *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- doler**, pain, grieve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).
- dormir**, sleep: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (2).
- educir**, educe, bring out: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 b.
- elegir**, elect: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (2) and 231.
- embair**, impose, deceive: 270.
- embestir**, invest, attack: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- emparentar**, be related by marriage: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- empedernir**, harden, make inveterate: 270.
- empedrar**, pave: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- empeller**, urge, push: 217.
- empezar**, begin: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (4) and 225.
- emporcar**, sully, befoul: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- encender**, light, kindle: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

- ancentar**, begin to use for first time: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- encerrar**, shut up, confine: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- enclocar**, cluck: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 225.
- ancomendar**, commend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- encontrar**, meet, find: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- encorar**, cover with leather, renew the skin: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- encordar**, string (musical instruments), lash: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- encovar**, put into a cave *or* cellar, lock up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- encubertar**, cover over: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- endentar**, mortise in: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- engorar**, lay addled eggs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 225.
- engreír**, elate, puff up: *Rad.-ch.* III, 233.
- engrosar**, fatten, strengthen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- enhestar**, erect, set upright: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- enmelar**, honey, sweeten: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- enmendar**, amend, correct: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- enrodar**, break on the wheel: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- ensangrentar**, cover with blood: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- entender**, hear, understand: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- enterrar**, inter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- entortar**, make crooked; deprive of one eye: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- entrededir**, interdict: *irr.*, 257.
- entremorir**, pine away: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (2); *p. p. irr.*, 229 a.
- entreoír**, hear indistinctly: *irr.*, 254.
- entrepernar**, put the legs in between (something else): *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- entreponer**, interpose: *irr.*, 249.
- entretener**, delay, entertain: *irr.*, 239.
- entrever**, see imperfectly, catch a glimpse of: *irr.*, 258.
- envolver**, involve, wrap up, complicate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- equivaler**, equal, be equivalent: *irr.*, 251.
- erguir**, erect: *Rad.-ch.* II or III, 232, 229, and 230; cf. 215 (4) and 226.
- errar**, err, wander: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 226.
- escarmentar**, give warning example, learn by experience: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- escocer**, smart: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 220 (a) and 225.
- escribir**, write: *p. p. irr.*, 259.
- esforzar**, strengthen — ~~so~~, attempt: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.
- estar**, be: *irr.*, 238.
- estatuír**, establish, 235.
- estregar**, rub, scour, grind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- estrenir**, bind, restrain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 217.
- excluir**, exclude: 235.
- expedir**, expedite, despatch: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- exponer**, expose: *irr.*, 249.
- extender**, extend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- extraer**, extract: *irr.*, 255.
- ferrar**, put on iron points, etc.: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- fluir**, flow: 235.
- follar**, blow with bellows: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- forzar**, force: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.

**fregar**, rub, cleanse: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**freir**, fry: *Rad.-ch.* III, 233.

**garantir**, guarantee: 270.  
**gemir**, groan, moan: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.  
**gobernar**, govern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).  
**gruir**, cry like cranes: 235.  
**gruñir**, grunt: 217.

**haber**, have: *irr.*, 237.  
**hacendar**, transfer property: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**hacer**, do, make: *irr.*, 246.  
**heder**, have a stench, stink: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

**helar**, freeze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).  
**henchir**, stuff, cram: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.  
**hender**, cleave, split: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).  
**herbar**, dressskins: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).  
**herir**, wound: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).  
**hervir**, boil, bubble: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**herrar**, shoe (horses), brand (cattle): *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**holgar**, rest, cease working: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (2) and 225.

**hollar**, trample on, tread on: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**huir**, flee: 235.

**imbuir**, imbue: 235.

**impedir**, impede: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.

**imponer**, impose: *irr.*, 249.

**imprimir**, print: *p. p. irr.*, 259.

**improbar**, disapprove, censure: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**incensar**, perfume, incense: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**incluir**, include: 235.

**indisponer**, indispose, disincline: *irr.*, 249.

**inducir**, induce: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 b.

**inferir**, infer: *Rad.-ch.*, II, 229 (1).

**infernar**, damn, vex: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**influir**, influence: 235.

**ingerir**, graft, insert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**inquirir**, inquire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 228 (2).

**instituir**, institute: 235.

**instruir**, instruct: 235.

**interdecir**, indict: *irr.*, 257.

**interponer**, interpose: *irr.*, 249.

**intervenir**, intervene: *irr.*, 248.

**introducir**, introduce: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 b.

**invernar**, winter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**invertir**, invert, spend, invest: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**investir**, invest, gird: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.  
**ir**, go: *irr.*, 247.

**jugar**, play: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 227.

**leer**, read: 216.

**llover**, rain: *Rad.-ch.* I, *impers.*, 223 (4).

**maldecir**, curse: *irr.*, 257.

**malherir**, wound seriously: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**malquerer**, dislike, abhor: *irr.*, 242.

**malsonar**, make cacophony: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**maltraer**, maltreat: *irr.*, 255.

**manifestar**, manifest: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**manir**, mellow, mature meat: 270.

**mantener**, maintain: 239.

**mecer**, rock, lull, mix: 220 a.

**medir**, measure: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.

**melar**, boil to honey, deposit honey (of bees): *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**mentar**, mention: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**mentir**, lie: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**merendar**, lunch: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**moblar**, furnish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

Also **mueblar**, reg.

**moler**, grind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**morder**, bite: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).



**morir**, die: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (2); *p. p.* *irr.*, 229 *a.*

**mostrar**, show: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**mover**, move: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**negar**, deny: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1) <sup>4</sup>; cf. 214 (2) and 225.

**nevar**, snow: *Rad.-ch.* I, *impers.*, 223 (1).

**obstruir**, obstruct: 235.

**obtener**, obtain: *irr.*, 239.

**oír**, hear: *irr.*, 254.

**oler**, smell, have an odor: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 226 (2).

**oponer**, oppose: *irr.*, 249.

**oprimir**, oppress: 261.

**pedir**, ask: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.

**pensar**, think, mean, believe: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**perder**, to lose, spoil, destroy: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).

**perniquebrar**, break the legs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**perseguir**, pursue, persecute: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 231.

**pervertir**, pervert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229.

**placer**, please: *irr.*, 262.

**plañir**, lament, bewail: 217.

**plegar**, fold: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.

**poblar**, found, people, fill: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**poder**, be able, can: *irr.*, 243.

**podrir**, rot: 234.

**poner**, put: *irr.*, 249.

**poseer**, possess: 216.

**posponer**, place after, postpone: *irr.*, 249.

**predecir**, predict: *irr.*, 257.

**predisponer**, predispose: *irr.*, 249.

**preferir**, prefer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**premorir**, die first *or* prematurely: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (2) and *a.*

**prender**, arrest, catch: 260.

**preponer**, put before, prefer: *irr.*, 249.

**presentir**, forebode, foresee: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**presuponer**, presuppose: *irr.*, 249.

**prevalerse**, prevail: *irr.*, 251.

**prevenir**, forestall, prevent: *irr.*, 248.

**prever**, foresee: *irr.*, 258.

**probar**, prove, try, taste: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**producir**, produce: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 *b.*

**proferir**, utter, pronounce: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).

**promover**, promote: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4).

**proponer**, propose: *irr.*, 249.

**proseguir**, pursue, prosecute: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (4) and 231.

**prostituir**, prostitute: 235.

**proveer**, provide: 216; cf. 258 *b.*

**provenir**, proceed: *irr.*, 248.

**podrir**, rot: 234.

**quebrar**, break: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**querer**, wish, like: *irr.*, 242.

**raer**, scrape, grate, erase: *irr.*, 267.

**rarefacier**, rarify: *irr.*, 246.

**reapretar**, squeeze again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**rebendecir**, bless again: *irr.*, 257.

**recaer**, fall back, relapse: *irr.*, 253.

**recalentar**, treat again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**recentar**, leaven: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**recluir**, shut up, seclude: 235.

**recocer**, boil again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 220 *a.*, 215 (1), and 225.

**recolar**, strain again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).

**recomendar**, recommend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).

**recomponer**, recompose, mend: *irr.*, 249.

**reconducir**, renew lease *or* contract: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 *b.*

**reconstruir**, reconstruct: 235.



- recontar**, recount: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**reconvenir**, accuse, rebuke: *irr., 248*.  
**recordar**, remind: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**recostar**, lean against, recline: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**redargüir**, reargue: 235.  
**reducir**, reduce: *irr., 256*; cf. 220 b.  
**reelegir**, reëlect: *Rad.-ch. III, 230*; cf. 215 (2) and 231.  
**referir**, relate, refer: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**refluir**, flow back: 235.  
**reforzar**, strengthen, fortify: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*; cf. 214 (4).  
**refregar**, rub over again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**refreír**, fry again: 233.  
**regar**, water: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**regimentar**, raise a regiment: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**regir**, rule, direct: *Rad.-ch. III, 230*; 215 (2) and 231.  
**regoldar**, belch, eruct: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*; cf. 225.  
**rehacer**, make again, mend: *irr., 246*.  
**rehenchir**, fill again, restuff: *Rad.-ch. III, 230*.  
**reherir**, wound again: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**reherrar**, shoe (horses) again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**rehervir**, reboil: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**rehollar**, trample under foot: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**rehuir**, withdraw, deny: 235.  
**reír**, laugh, 233.  
**remendar**, repair, patch: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**rementir**, lie again: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**remoler**, grind again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (4)*.  
**remorder**, bite repeatedly, cause remorse: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (4)*.  
**remover**, remove, alter: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (4)*.  
**rendir**, subdue, render; —**se**, surrender: *Rad.-ch. III, 230*.  
**renegar**, deny, disown: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**renovar**, renovate, renew: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**reñir**, quarrel, scold: *Rad.-ch. III, 230*; cf. 217 and 231.  
**repensar**, think over again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**repetir**, repeat, recite: *Rad.-ch. I, 230*.  
**replegar**, refold, double again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**repoblar**, repopulate: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**repodrir**, decay, rot inwardly: 234.  
**reponer**, put back, replace: *irr., 249*.  
**reprobar**, reject, condemn: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**reproducir**, reproduce: *irr., 256*; cf. 220 b.  
**repudrir**, decay, rot inwardly: cf. 234.  
**requibrar**, court, make love: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**requerer**, wish much, like well: *irr., 242*.  
**requerir**, investigate, require, request: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**resaber**, know well: *irr., 245*.  
**resalir**, project, be prominent: *irr., 252*.  
**resegar**, reap again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.  
**resembrar**, sow again: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**resentirse**, begin to give way, resent: *Rad.-ch. II, 229 (1)*.  
**resolver**, resolve: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (4)*; *p. p. irr., 224*.  
**resollar**, respire: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**resonar**, resound: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (3)*.  
**resquebrar**, crack, split, burst: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*.  
**restituir**, restore, reestablish: 235.  
**restregar**, scrub: *Rad.-ch. I, 223 (1)*; cf. 214 (2) and 225.

- retemblar**, shake, tremble much, brandish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- retener**, retain: *irr.*, 239.
- retentar**, threaten with a relapse: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- reteñir**, dye over again: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 217 and 231.
- retorcer**, twist, contort: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); cf. 215 (1) and 225.
- retostar**, toast again, scorch well: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- retraer**, retract: *irr.*, 255.
- retribuir**, make retribution, recompense: 235.
- retronar**, thunder again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- retrotraer**, make retroactive, retroact: *irr.*, 255.
- revenirse**, be consumed gradually, sour, ferment: *irr.*, 248.
- reventar**, burst: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- rever**, see again, review, revise: *irr.*, 258.
- reverter**, revert: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- revestir**, put on vestments: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- revolar**, fly again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- revolcarse**, wallow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- revolver**, stir, revolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- rodar**, roll: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- roer**, gnaw: *irr.*, 268.
- rogar**, entreat, ask: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3); cf. 214 (2) and 225; *derivatives reg.*
- saber**, know: *irr.*, 245.
- salir**, go out, come out: *irr.*, 252.
- salpimentar**, season with pepper and salt: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sarmantar**, gather prunings of vine: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- satisfacer**, satisfy: *irr.*, 246.
- segar**, reap: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- seguir**, follow: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230; cf. 215 (4) and 231.
- sembrar**, sow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sementar**, sow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sentar**, seat, set, suit: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sentir**, feel, regret: *Rad.-ch.* II, 229 (1).
- ser**, to be: *irr.*, 236.
- serrar**, saw: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- servir**, serve: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- sobre(e)nder**, be understood: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- sobreponer**, put above, add: *irr.*, 249.
- sobresalir**, rise above, surpass: *irr.*, 252.
- sobresembrar**, sow over again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sobresolar**, pave again, put on new sole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- sobrevenir**, happen, supervene: *irr.*, 248.
- sobreventar**, get the weather gauge: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1).
- sobrevertirse**, overflow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (2).
- sobrevestir**, put on an outer coat: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230.
- sofreir**, fry slightly: *Rad.-ch.* III, 233.
- solar**, floor, pave, sole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- soldar**, solder, mend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- soler**, be wont or accustomed: *Rad.-ch.* I and defective; cf. 265.
- soltar**, untie, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- solver**, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- sonar**, sound: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- sonreir**, smile: *Rad.-ch.* III, 230 and 233.
- sonrodarse**, stick in the mud: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- soñar**, dream: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (3).
- sorregar**, change channels: *Rad.-ch.* I, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.

- sosegar**, appease, rest: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- sostener**, sustain: *irr.*, 239.
- soterrar**, put underground, bury: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- subarrendar**, take a sublease, sub-rent: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- subentender**, subintend: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- subseguir**, be next in sequence: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230; cf. 215 (4) and 231.
- substituir**, *v. sustituir*.
- substraer**, *v. sustraer*.
- subtender**, subtend: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- subvenir**, aid, give a subvention: *irr.*, 248.
- subvertir**, subvert: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).
- sugerir**, suggest: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).
- superponer**, superimpose: *irr.*, 249.
- supervenir**, supervene: *irr.*, 248.
- suponer**, suppose: *irr.*, 249.
- suprimir**, suppress: 261.
- sustituir**, substitute: 235.
- sustraer**, subtract: *irr.*, 255.
- tañer**, ring, peal, touch: 217.
- temblar**, tremble: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- tender**, stretch: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- tener**, have, hold: *irr.*, 239.
- tentar**, feel, try: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- teñir**, tinge, dye, stain: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230; cf. 217 and 231.
- torcer**, twist, bend: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (4); cf. 215 (1) and 225.
- tostar**, toast: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- traducir**, translate: *irr.*, 256; cf. 220 *b*.
- traer**, bring: *irr.*, 255.
- transcender**, *v. trascender*.
- transferir**, transfer: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).
- transfregar**, *v. trasfregar*.
- transponer**, *v. trasponer*.
- trascender**, transcend: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- trascolar**, filter through: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- trascordarse**, forget: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- trasegar**, upset, decant: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- trasfregar**, rub: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1); cf. 214 (2) and 225.
- trasoir**, misunderstand, hear imperfectly: *irr.*, 254.
- trasonar**, dream: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- trasponer**, transpose; —**se**, set (of sun): *irr.*, 249.
- trastrocár**, change about, invert order: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- trasverter**, overflow: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- trasvolar**, fly across or beyond: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- travesar**, cross: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- trocár**, exchange, barter: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- tronar**, thunder: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- tropezar**, stumble: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (4) and 225.
- valer**, be worth: *irr.*, 251.
- venir**, come: *irr.*, 248.
- ventar**, blow: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (1).
- ver**, see: *irr.*, 258.
- verter**, pour, shed: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2).
- vestir**, dress, clothe: *Rad.-ch. III*, 230.
- volar**, fly, rise, blow up: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3).
- volcar**, overturn: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (3); cf. 214 (1) and 225.
- volver**, return, come back: *Rad.-ch. I*, 223 (2); *p. p. irr.*, 224.
- yacer**, lie: *irr.*, 263.
- yuxtaponer**, put in juxtaposition: *irr.*, 249.
- za(m)bullirse**, dive: 217.
- zaherir**, reproach, censure: *Rad.-ch. II*, 229 (1).

# VO.CABULARY



# VOCABULARY

## SPANISH-ENGLISH

### A

- á**, to, at, on, from, *sign of the personal accusative.*
- abandonar**, to abandon, leave.
- abandono**, *m.*, neglect, slovenliness.
- abierto**, *pp. of abrir.*
- abogadillo** (*fr. abogado*), *m.*, little lawyer.
- aborrecer**, to abhor.
- abrazar**, to embrace.
- abrigo**, *m.*, shelter, wrap, overcoat.
- abril**, *m.*, April.
- abrir**, to open.
- abuelo**, *-a, m. and f.*, grandfather, grandmother; *m. pl.*, grandparents.
- aburrir**, to weary, bore; *refl.*, to be bored.
- acá**, hither, here.
- acabar**, to end, finish; — **de**, to have just.
- acción**, *f.*, deed, action.
- aceite**, *m.*, oil.
- aceptar**, to accept.
- acera**, *f.*, sidewalk.
- acerca de**, about.
- acercarse á**, to approach, go near.
- acero**, *m.*, steel.
- aclarar**, to light up, brighten.
- acometer**, to attack.
- acompañar**, to accompany, go with, sympathize with.
- aconsejar**, to advise.
- acontecer**, to happen.
- acontecimiento**, *m.*, happening, event, occurrence.
- acostar**, to lay down, put to bed; *refl.*, to lie down, go to bed.
- activo**, *-a*, active.
- acusar**, to accuse, acknowledge.
- adelantar**, to advance, go forward, be fast (*as a watch*).
- advertir**, to observe, warn.
- aficionado**, *-a (á)*, fond (of).
- afmo**=**afectísimo**, most affectionate.
- agosto**, *m.*, August.
- agradar**, to please.
- agradecer**, to thank, be grateful for.
- agua**, *f.*, water.
- aguardar**, to wait for, await.
- aguardiente**, *m.*, distilled liquor (*such as brandy, whiskey, rum*).
- ahí**, there.
- ahora**, now.
- ahorita** (*fr. ahora*), very soon, in a minute.
- ahorrar**, to spare, save.

- al**, to the.  
**alabar**, to praise.  
**aldea**, *f.*, village.  
**alegar**, to allege.  
**alegre**, happy, joyous, merry.  
**Alejandro**, *m.*, Alexander.  
**Alemán**, -*ana*, *m. and f.*, German.  
**alemán**, -*ana*, German.  
**Alemania**, *f.*, Germany.  
**alfiler**, *m.*, pin.  
**Alfredo**, *m.*, Alfred.  
**algo**, something, anything; some-  
   what.  
**alguien**, some one, somebody.  
**algún**; *cf. alguno*.  
**alguno**, -*a*, some, any; *pl.*, some,  
   certain, a few; **no** . . . —, not . . .  
   any, no . . . whatsoever; **ni** . . . —,  
   nor . . . any; **sin** . . . —, without  
   any . . . whatsoever.  
**alma**, *f.*, soul.  
**almorzar**, to breakfast.  
**alquilar**, to rent, hire.  
**alto**, -*a*, high, tall, loud.  
**altura**, *f.*, height.  
**allá**, there, thither.  
**allí**, there.  
**amable**, kind, lovable.  
**amar**, to love, like.  
**amarillo**, -*a*, yellow.  
**ambos**, -*as*, both.  
**América**, *f.*, America.  
**Americano**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, American.  
**americano**, -*a*, American.  
**amigo**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, friend.  
**amiguito**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, little friend.  
**amistad**, *f.*, friendship.  
**anciano**, -*a*, aged.  
**ancho**, -*a*, broad, wide; *noun*  
   breadth, width.  
**anchura**, *f.*, breadth, width.  
**andar**, to go, walk, run (*as a watch*).  
**animal**, *m.*, animal.  
**anoche**, last night.  
**anochecer**, to become night; arrive  
   (at) or be (in) at night; **anochece**,  
   night is coming on.  
**anteayer**, the day before yesterday,  
   two days ago.  
**antes**, before, beforehand; — **de**, be-  
   fore; — (**de**) **que**, before; **cuanto**  
   —, as soon as possible; — **de ayer**,  
   the day before yesterday.  
**anticipación**, *f.*, anticipation; **con**  
   —, in advance.  
**antiguo**, -*a*, old, early, ancient.  
**Antonio**, *m.*, Anthony.  
**año**, *m.*, year; — **bisiesto**, leap year;  
   **tener** . . . **años**, to be . . . years old.  
**apagar**, to put out (*a fire or light*).  
**aparecer**, to appear.  
**apariencia**, *f.*, appearance.  
**apuesto**, *m.*, room, apartment.  
**apreciable**, estimable, kind.  
**apreciar**, to appreciate, esteem.  
**aprender** (**á**), to learn to.  
**aprisa**, fast, quickly.  
**apuntar**, to note down.  
**aquel**, -*ella*, *adj.*, that, the former.  
**aqué**, *aquella*, *aquello*, that one,  
   that, the one, the former.  
**aquí**, here.  
**arancelario**, -*a*, relating to the tariff.  
**árbol**, *m.*, tree.  
**arguïr**, to argue; **arguyamos**, *pres*  
   *subj.*, 1st *pl.*



A

B

C

**argumento**, *m.*, argument.  
**aritmética**, *f.*, arithmetic.  
**armaduras**, *f. pl.*, armor.  
**armería**, *f.*, armory.  
**arqueólogo**, *m.*, archæologist.  
**arquitecto**, *m.*, architect.  
**arte**, *f. (and m.)*, art.  
**artista**, *m.*, artist.  
**arreglar**, to arrange, regulate, see to.  
**arrepentirse**, to repent.  
**asesinar**, to assassinate.  
**así**, as, so, thus; — **como**, as well as.  
**Asiria**, *f.*, Assyria.  
**asistir**, to be present.  
**asno**, -a, *m. and f.*, ass, donkey.  
**asunto**, *m.*, matter, affair, business.  
**atención**, *f.*, attention. [*watch*].  
**atrasar**, to retard, be slow (*as a*).  
**atrevimiento**, *m.*, daring.  
**atribuir**, to attribute, ascribe.  
**aunque**, although, even if.  
**ausente**, absent.  
**autor**, -ora, *m. and f.*, author.  
**avanzar**, to advance.  
**avariento**, -a, *m. and f.*, miser.  
**averiguar**, to ascertain; **averigüé**,  
*pret. indic., 1st. sing.*  
**avisar**, to inform, advise, give notice.  
**ayer**, yesterday; **antes de** —, day  
before yesterday.  
**ayuda**, *f.*, aid.  
**azúcar**, *m.*, sugar.  
**azul**, blue.

**bajar**, to go down, take down.  
**dajo**, -a, low.  
**bala**, *f.*, ball, bullet.  
**barato**, -a, cheap.

**bastante**, enough, sufficient; suffi-  
ciently, quite, rather.  
**bautismo**, *m.*, baptism.  
**beber**, to drink.  
**bello**, -a, beautiful.  
**besar**, to kiss.  
**biblioteca**, *f.*, library.  
**bibliotecario**, *m.*, librarian.  
**bicicleta**, *f.*, bicycle.  
**bien**, well, comfortable.  
**billete**, *m.*, bill, bank-note, ticket.  
**blanco**, -a, white; **lo** —, white.  
**bobo**, -a, *m. and f.*, fool.  
**bola**, *f.*, marble.  
**bolita**, *f. (fr. bola)*, marble.  
**bondad**, *f.*, goodness, kindness.  
**bonito**, -a, pretty.  
**botar**, to throw away.  
**brasas**, *f. pl.*, glowing coals; **quien**  
**huye del fuego, da en las** —, out  
of the frying-pan into the fire.  
**brazo**, *m.*, arm.  
**brillante**, brilliant.  
**brindar**, to drink a toast to, offer.  
**Bruto**, *m.*, Brutus.  
**buen**, *cf. bueno*.  
**bueno**, -a, good, well.  
**bullir**, to boil, seethe.  
**burlarse (de)**, to make fun, make  
sport (of).  
**buscar**, to seek, look for.  
**buzón**, *m.*, letter-box.  
**caballerito (fr. caballero)**, *m.*, young  
gentleman.  
**caballero**, *m.*, gentleman, sir.  
**caballo**, *m.*, horse.  
**caber**, to be contained.

**cabeza**, *f.*, head.

**cabo**, *m.*, end; **llevar á** —, to carry out.

**cada**, *adj.*, each, every; — **uno** (*-a*), *prn.*, each, each one.

**caer**, to fall; *refl.*, to fall down.

**café**, *m.*, coffee.

**caja**, *f.*, box.

**caliente**, hot, warm.

**calificación**, *f.*, qualification, grade.

**calor**, *m.*, heat, warmth; **tener** —, to be warm (*as a person*); **hacer** —, to be warm (*as the weather*).

**calumniar**, to calumniate.

**callarse**, to hush, be silent.

**calle**, *f.*, street.

**cama**, *f.*, bed.

**camaleón**, *m.*, chameleon.

**cambiar**, to change, exchange.

**cambio**, *m.*, change.

**caminar**, take one's way, journey along, walk.

**camino**, *m.*, road, way.

**campesino**, *-a*, *m. and f.*, peasant.

**campo**, *m.*, field, country; **casa de** —, country house.

**cansado**, *-a*, tired, (*with ser*) tire-some.

**cansar**, to tire, fatigue.

**cantar**, to sing.

**capital**, *m.*, capital; *f.*, capital (city).

**capitán**, *m.*, captain.

**carbón**, *m.*, coal.

**cardinal**, cardinal.

**carecer de**, to be without, lack.

**carga**, *f.*, burden.

**cargadito**, *-a* (*fr. cargado*), slightly seasoned.

**cargar**, to load, charge, season.

**Carlos**, *m.*, Charles.

**carta**, *f.*, letter.

**cartero**, *m.*, postman, letter-carrier.

**carrera**, *f.*, course of (professional) study.

**carro**, *m.*, wagon, car.

**casa**, *f.*, house; **en** —, at home; **á** —, home.

**casar**, to marry; **casarse con**, to marry, be married to.

**casi**, almost.

**caso**, *m.*, case; **en** — **que**, in case.

**castellano**, *-a*, Castilian; **el** —, Spanish.

**castigo**, *m.*, punishment.

**catedral**, *f.*, cathedral.

**catedrático**, *m.*, university professor.

**catorce**, fourteen.

**causa**, *f.*, cause, lawsuit; **á** — **de**, on account of.

**cautiverio**, *m.*, captivity.

**cegar**, to blind.

**célebre**, celebrated.

**cenar**, to have supper, sup.

**centavito** (*fr. centavo*), *m.*, only a cent, mite.

**centavo**, *-a*, hundredth.

**centavo**, *m.*, centavo, cent.

**centésimo**, *-a*, hundredth.

**céntimo**, *m.*, centime.

**central**, central.

**ceremonia**, *f.*, ceremony.

**certificar**, to certify, register.

**Cervantes**, Cervantes.

**cerveza**, *f.*, beer.

**cerrar**, to shut, close.

**César**, *m.*, Cæsar.

cesta, *f.*, basket.  
 ciego, -a, blind.  
 cielo, *m.*, heaven, sky.  
 ciencia, *f.*, science.  
 ciento, cien, one hundred.  
 cinco, five.  
 cincuenta, fifty.  
 ciudad, *f.*, city.  
 ciudadano, *m.*, citizen.  
 clase, *f.*, class, kind, sort.  
 cliente, *m. and f.*, patient.  
 clima, *m.*, climate.  
 coalición, *f.*, coalition.  
 cobarde, *m. and f.*, coward.  
 cocina, *f.*, kitchen, cooking.  
 cofre, *m.*, box, trunk; **hacer un —**  
   á, to pack a trunk for.  
 coger, to catch; **cojamos**, *pres. subj.*,  
   *1st pl.*  
 colección, *f.*, collection.  
 cólera, *f.*, anger.  
 colmado, -a, filled (*to overflowing*).  
 Colón, *m.*, Columbus.  
 color, *m.*, color.  
 comedor, *m.*, dining-room.  
 comer, to eat, dine.  
 cometer, to commit.  
 como, as, like; while.  
 cómo, how.  
 cómodo, -a, comfortable.  
 compañero, -a, *m. and f.*, com-  
   panion.  
 compañía, *f.*, company.  
 compatriota, *m. and f.*, compatriot.  
 completamente, completely, entirely,  
   wholly.  
 completo, -a, complete.  
 cómplice, *m. and f.*, accomplice.

comportamiento, *m.*, deportment,  
   conduct.  
 comprar, to buy.  
 común, common; **por lo —**, com-  
   monly.  
 con, with, toward; **para —**, toward;  
   — **tal que**, provided that.  
 concebir, to conceive.  
 concepto, *m.*, conception, sense; **en**  
   **mi —**, to my mind.  
 conciudadano, -a, *m. and f.*, fellow-  
   citizen.  
 conde, *m.*, count.  
 condición, *f.*, condition.  
 conducir, to conduct, lead, guide.  
 conducta, *f.*, behavior, conduct.  
 conjugación, *f.*, conjugation.  
 conmigo, with me.  
 conocer, to know, be acquainted with.  
 conocimientos, *m. pl.*, attainments.  
 conozco, *pres. indic.*, *1st sing. of*  
   *conocer*.  
 conquistador, *m.*, conqueror.  
 conquistar, to conquer.  
 conseguir, to obtain, succeed in.  
 consentir (**en**), to consent (**to**).  
 conservar, to preserve, keep.  
 considerar, to consider.  
 consigo, with himself, herself, etc.  
 consiguiente, *m.*, consequence; **por**  
   **—**, consequently.  
 constante, constant.  
 constar (**de**), to consist (**of**).  
 constituir, to constitute.  
 contar, to count, tell, relate.  
 contendiente, *m.*, contestant, oppo-  
   nent.  
 contener, to contain.

contestación, *f.*, answer.  
 contestar, to answer.  
 contigo, with you, with thee.  
 continuar, to continue.  
 contrario, -a, contrary.  
 contribución, *f.*, tax.  
 conveniencia, *f.*, convenience.  
 convertir, to convert.  
 convidar, to invite.  
 copiar, to copy.  
 copo, *m.*, flake.  
 cortar, to cut.  
 corte, *f.*, court, capital, Madrid.  
 cortés, polite, courteous.  
 corto, -a, short.  
 corregir, to correct; *corrijan*, *pres. subj.*, 3d *pl.*  
 correo, *m.*, mail, post-office.  
 correr, to run.  
 corrida, *f.*, coursing match; — *de toros*, bull-fight.  
 corriente, present (month), current.  
 cosa, *f.*, thing, affair; matter.  
 cosita (*fr. cosa*), *f.*, little thing, trifle.  
 costar, to cost.  
 costoso, -a, costly, expensive.  
 costumbre, *f.*, custom, manner.  
 creer, believe, think; *creyendo*, *pres. p.*  
 criada, *f.*, servant, maid.  
 criado, *m.*, servant.  
 cristal, *m.*, pane.  
 cristiano, -a, *m. and f.*, Christian.  
 Cristo, *m.*, Christ.  
 Cristóbal, *m.*, Christopher.  
 cuadra, *f.*, city block.  
 cuadro, *m.*, picture.

cual, which; *el (la) cual*, who, which, whom.  
 cuál, *interrog. adj. and pron.*, which, what.  
 cuando, when; *cuándo*, when, *interrog.*; *de — en —*, from time to time.  
 cuanto, -a, how much, as much, all the, all that; *todo —*, all that; — *antes*, as soon as possible; — . . .  
 tanto, the . . . the; -os, -as, *pl.*, how many, as many, all the.  
 cuánto, -a, *interrog. and exclam.*, how much; *pl.*, how many; — *tiempo*, how long; ¿—s años tienes? how old are you?  
 cuarenta, forty.  
 cuarto, *m.*, room.  
 cuarto, -a, fourth.  
 cuatro, four.  
 cuatrocientos, -as, four hundred.  
 Cuba, *f.*, Cuba.  
 Cubano, -a, *m. and f.*, Cuban.  
 cubano, -a, Cuban.  
 cuenta, *f.*, account, bill.  
 cuidado, *m.*, care; *ten —*, look out! *no tengas —*, don't worry.  
 cumpleaños, *m.*, anniversary of birth-day.  
 cumplir, to fulfil, complete.  
 cuñado, -a, *m. and f.*, brother-in-law, sister-in-law.  
 cuyo, -a, whose, of which.  
 cuyo, -a, *interrog.*, whose.  
 chino, -a, Chinese. [tot.  
 chiquillo, -a (*fr. chico*), little fellow,  
 chismes, *m. pl.*, tittle-tattle, gossip.

**chiste**, *m.*, witty saying, jest.

**chocolate**, *m.*, chocolate.

**D.** (=don), Mr.

**dar**, to give, face, hit, strike (*of a clock*); — **en**, to strike against, fall upon.

**de**, of, from, since, with, in.

**debajo de**, under, beneath.

**deber**, to be (morally) obliged to, ought, owe.

**deber**, *m.*, duty.

**decidido**, *-a*, decided, resolved, determined.

**décimo**, *-a*, tenth.

**decir**, to say, tell.

**decisión**, *f.*, decision.

**declarar**, to make a declaration, depose upon oath.

**defecto**, *m.*, fault.

**defender**, to defend.

**dejar**, to leave; — **de**, to cease to; **no — de**, not to fail to, not to omit.

**del**, of the, from the; — **cual**, of whom.

**deleitar**, to delight.

**delincamos**, *pres. subj. 1st pl. of delinquir*.

**delinquir**, to be delinquent, to transgress.

**demás**, other, rest.

**demasiado**, *-a*, *adj.*, too much (many); *adv.*, too, too much.

**denominador**, *m.*, denominator.

**dentro de**, inside of, within.

**derecho**, *-a*, right, straight.

**derrotar**, to rout.

**desafiar**, to challenge.

**desagradable**, disagreeable.

**desaparecer**, to disappear.

**descansar**, to rest.

**descanso**, *m.*, rest.

**descender**, to descend, to be descended.

**descomunal**, extraordinary, unusual.

**descubrir**, to discover.

**descuidillo** (*fr. descuido*), *m.*, slight neglect.

**desde**, from, since; — . . . **hasta**, from . . . to; — **que**, since.

**desear**, to desire, wish.

**desgracia**, *f.*, misfortune.

**desgraciado**, *-a*, unfortunate, wretched.

**designio**, *m.*, design, purpose.

**despacho**, *m.*, office; — **de billetes**, ticket office.

**despedirse**, *refl.*, to take leave.

**despertar**, to awake, *m.*, wake up; *refl.*, to awake.

**después**, afterward; — **de**, after; — **que**, after.

**detalle**, *m.*, detail.

**deuda**, *f.*, debt.

**devolver**, to return, give back.

**día**, *m.*, day; **de —**, by day; **ocho días**, a week; **quince días**, a fortnight; **días**, saint's day.

**diamante**, *m.*, diamond.

**dibujo**, *m.*, drawing.

**diccionario**, *m.*, dictionary.

**dice**, *pres. indic. 3d sing. of decir*, to say.

**diciembre**, *m.*, December.

**dicho**, *-a*, said, the said.

- diente, *m.*, tooth.  
 diez, ten.  
 diferir, to defer, differ.  
 difícil, difficult.  
 difunto, *-a*, deceased.  
 digno, *-a*, worth, worthy.  
 digo, *pres. indic. 1st. sing. of decir*.  
 dijeron, *pret. indic. 3d pl. of decir*.  
 dinero, *m.*, money.  
 Dios, *m.*, God.  
 directo, *-a*, direct, through.  
 dirigir, to direct; *refl.*, to make one's way, address, turn, direct one's self.  
 discípulo, *-a, m. and f.*, pupil, scholar.  
 díscolo, *-a*, peevish.  
 discurso, *m.*, discourse, speech.  
 disminuir, to diminish.  
 dispensar, to excuse.  
 disputar, to dispute.  
 distancia, *f.*, distance.  
 distinguamos, *pres. subj. 1st pl. of distinguir*.  
 distinguir, to distinguish.  
 distribuir, to distribute.  
 diversión, *f.*, diversion, amusement, sport.  
 divino, *-a*, divine.  
 doble, double.  
 doce, twelve.  
 docena, *f.*, dozen.  
 doler, to ache.  
 dolor, *m.*, pain, ache, grief; — *de* cabeza, headache.  
 domesticar, to tame.  
 domingo, *m.*, Sunday.  
 dominio, *m.*, dominion, domain, power.  
 don, doña, *m. and f.*, Mr., Mrs. and Miss; — Quijote, Don Quixote.  
 donde, where, in which; *en* —, where, in which.  
 dónde, *interrog.*, where.  
 dondequiera, wherever.  
 Dn = don.  
 Dña = doña.  
 dormir, to sleep; *refl.*, to fall asleep.  
 dos, two; los (las) —, both.  
 doscientos, *-as*, two hundred.  
 duda, *f.*, doubt.  
 dudar, to doubt.  
 dueño, *m.*, master.  
 duque, *m.*, duke.  
 durar, to endure, last.  
 duro, *m.*, dollar.  
 duro, *-a*, hard, severe.  
 é, and.  
 echar, to throw, cast, pour (*as water*); *refl.*, to throw one's self down, lie down.  
 Edad, *f.*, Age; — Media, Middle Ages.  
 edificio, *m.*, building.  
 educación, *f.*, education.  
 educar, to educate.  
 Eiffel, Eiffel; la torre —, the Eiffel tower.  
 ejercicio, *m.*, exercise.  
 ejército, *m.*, army.  
 el (la, lo, los, las), the, that, the one, those; — que, who, whom, he who, etc.  
 él, he, him, it.  
 eléctrico, *-a*, electric.  
 elefante, *-a, m. and f.*, elephant.

**elegantemente**, elegantly.

**ella**, she, her, it.

**ello**, it.

**ellos, ellas**, they, them.

**emperador, m.**, emperor.

**empezar**, to begin.

**emplear**, to employ, use.

**emprender**, to undertake.

**empresa, f.**, enterprise, undertaking.

**en**, in, into, on.

**enamorado, -a**, in love.

**encantar**, to delight.

**encarnado, -a**, flesh-colored, (bright) red.

**encender**, to light, kindle.

**encontrar**, to meet, find.

**enemigo, -a, m. and f.**, enemy; *adj.*, hostile.

**enero, m.**, January.

**enfadar**, to vex, anger; *refl.*, to become angry.

**enfermedad, f.**, illness, sickness.

**enfermo, -a**, ill, sick.

**enojarse**, to become (get) angry.

**Enrique, m.**, Henry.

**ensalada, f.**, salad.

**enseñar**, to teach, show.

**entender**, to understand; — **de**, to understand, be skilled in.

**entero, -a**, entire, whole, firm.

**entonces**, then, at that time.

**entrada, f.**, entrance.

**entrar**, to enter, go into; **hacer** —, to show in, admit.

**entre**, between, among.

**entregar**, to deliver, hand over.

**entristecer**, to sadden.

**enviar**, to send.

**eran, v. ser.**

**errar**, to err.

**error, m.**, error, mistake.

**es, pres. ind. 3d sing. of ser.**

**escapar**, to escape.

**esclavo, -a, m. and f.**, slave.

**Escorial, m.**, Escorial (town and palace).

**escribir**, to write.

**escrito, p. p. of escribir.**

**escuchar**, to listen.

**escuela, f.**, school.

**escultor**, sculptor.

**Esdras, Esdras.**

**ese (esa, eso, esos, esas)**, that (those); **ése**, etc., that one, etc.; **eso**, that which you say.

**esencialmente**, essentially.

**España, f.**, Spain.

**Español, -ola, m. and f.**, Spaniard, Spanish woman.

**español, -ola**, Spanish.

**esperar**, to hope, wait for, expect.

**espléndido, -a**, splendid, fine.

**esposo, -a, m. and f.**, husband-wife.

**esquina, f.**, corner.

**establecerse, refl.**, to establish one's self, settle.

**estación, f.**, station, season.

**estado, m.**, state.

**Estados Unidos, m. pl.**, United States.

**estar**, to be.

**estatua, f.**, statue.

**éste (ésta, éstos, éstas)**, this, this one (these), the latter; **ésta, f.**, this place (city, town).





- este** (*esta, esto, estos, estas*), *adj.*,  
 this (these), the latter.  
**estimación**, *f.*, esteem.  
**esto**, this (that I say).  
**estrecho**, -a, narrow.  
**estudiar**, to study.  
**evitar**, to avoid.  
**exacto**, -a, exact.  
**excepto**, except.  
**exclamar**, to exclaim.  
**éxito**, *m.*, outcome, result, issue,  
 success.  
**extranjero**, -a, foreign.  
**extranjero**, -a, *m. and f.*, stranger,  
 foreigner.  
  
**fabricar**, to make, manufacture.  
**fácil**, easy.  
**facilidad**, *f.*, ease, facility.  
**facilitar**, to oblige with.  
**falso**, -a, false.  
**falta**, *f.*, fault, mistake; defect,  
 want, lack; **hacer** —, to be  
 needed; **nos hacía** —, we needed.  
**familia**, *f.*, family.  
**famoso**, -a, famous.  
**fatigado**, -a, fatigued, tired.  
**favor**, *m.*, favor; **hacer el** —, to do  
 the favor.  
**favorable**, favorable.  
**favorecer**, to favor.  
**febrero**, *m.*, February.  
**fecha**, *f.*, date.  
**fechar**, to date.  
**felicidad**, *f.*, happiness.  
**felicitar**, congratulate.  
**Felipe**, *m.*, Philip.  
**feliz**, happy.  
  
**feo**, -a, ugly, homely.  
**ferrocarril**, *m.*, railway.  
**festín**, *m.*, banquet, feast.  
**fiebre**, *f.*, fever.  
**fiel**, faithful.  
**fiesta**, *f.*, feast, festival, festivity.  
**figurar**, to figure; *refl.*, to fancy,  
 imagine.  
**filosofía**, *f.*, philosophy.  
**finalmente**, finally.  
**fino**, -a, courteous, refined.  
**flor**, *f.*, flower.  
**fonda**, *f.*, inn, restaurant.  
**fondo**, *m.*, bottom, depth; **á** —,  
 thoroughly, perfectly.  
**formar**, to form.  
**fortuna**, *f.*, fortune.  
**Francés**, -esa, *m. and f.*, French-  
 man, Frenchwoman.  
**francés**, -esa, French.  
**franco**, -a, frank.  
**franqueza**, *f.*, frankness.  
**frente**, *f.*, front, forehead; — **á** —,  
 face to face.  
**fresco**, -a, fresh, cool.  
**frío**, *m.*, cold; **tengo** —, I am cold;  
**hace** —, it is cold.  
**frío**, -a, *adj.*, cold.  
**fuego**, *m.*, fire; **quien huye del** —,  
**da en las brasas**, out of the  
 frying-pan into the fire.  
**fuelle**, *f.*, fountain, spring.  
**fuera**, *impf. subj. 3d sing. of ir*, to go.  
**fuera de**, apart from, outside of.  
**fuerte**, strong, mighty, powerful;  
 — **resfriado**, bad cold.  
**fumar**, to smoke (*as tobacco*).  
**función**, *f.*, performance.

G

gana, *f.*, inclination, desire; tener

ganas de, to have a desire

ganado, *m.*, live stock

ganar, to earn, make (money), gain,

win; — á, to surpass.

gastar, to spend, waste.

gatito, -a, *m. and f.*, kitten.gato, -a, *m. and f.*, cat.gemelos, *m. pl.*, (opera or field)

game.

gemir, to groan, moan.

general, *m.*, general.

generalmente, generally.

Gentil, *m.*, Gentile.geografía, *f.*, geography.giro, *m.*, turn, revolution; draft,

order.

Godo, -a, *m. and f.*, Goth.Goya, *m.*, Goya (modern Spanish painter).gracia, *f.*, name, grace; *pl.*, thanks,

I thank you.

gramática, *f.*, grammar.gran, *cf.* grande.

grande, great, big, large, grand.

grandecito, -a (*fr.* grande), rather large, biggish.

grave, important, serious.

guante, *m.*, glove.

guardar, to keep, protect; — cama, to stay in bed.

guardia, *f.*, guard; *m.*, guardsman, guard, policeman.guarismo, *m.*, numeral, cipher, figure.guerra, *f.*, war.guerrero, *m.*, warrior.Guillermo, *m.*, William.

gustar, to taste, please; me gusta, I like.

gusto, *m.*, taste, pleasure.ha, *pres. indic. 3d sing. of haber.*

haber, to have, be; hay, there is (are); — de, to have to; ha de suceder, is to happen.

hablador, -ora, talkative.

hablar, to speak, talk.

hacendoso, -a, active, industrious.

hacer, to make, do; — un cofre á, to pack a trunk for; — falta, to be needed; — hacer, to have made; hace frío, it is cold; hace una hora y media, an hour and a half ago; hace cuatrocientos doce años, it is 412 years; ¿cuánto tiempo hace? how long is it? *refl.*, to become; hacerse el tonto, to play the fool.

hacia, toward(s).

hallar, to find.

hambre, *f.*, hunger; tener —, to be hungry.

hambriento, -a, hungry.

haragán, -ana, lazy.

hasta, to, up to, until, as far as, even.

hay, *cf.* haber.hecho, *m.*, deed.helar (*also refl.*), to freeze.hembra, *f.*, female.herido, *m.*, wounded man.

herido, -a, wounded, with a wound.

herir, to strike, wound.

hermano, -a, *m. and f.*, brother sister.

**H**  
**hermoso**, -a, beautiful, handsome,  
 fine.

**heroico**, -a, heroic.

**hervir**, to boil, bubble.

**hidalgo**, *m.*, Mexican coin = 10 dol-  
 lars; **doble hidalgo** = 20 dollars.

**hierro**, *m.*, iron.

**hija**, *f.*, daughter.

**hijito**, -a, *m. and f. (fr. hijo)*, little  
 son, daughter.

**hijo**, -a, *m. and f.*, son, daughter;  
*m. pl.*, sons, children.

**hirviente**, boiling, bubbling.

**historia**, *f.*, history.

**historiador**, *m.*, historian.

**hogar**, *m.*, hearth, home.

**hola**, hello.

**hombre**, *m.*, man.

**hombrecillo** (*fr. hombre*), *m.*, little  
 man.

**hombrón** (*fr. hombre*), *m.*, large  
 (big) man.

**honra**, *f.*, honor.

**hora**, *f.*, hour; ¿**qué — es?** what  
 time is it?

**hoy**, today.

**hubo**, there was, there were; *cf. haber*.

**huele**, *pres. indic. 3d sing. of oler*.

**huelga**, *f.*, strike (of workmen).

**huérfano**, -a, *m. and f.*, orphan.

**huevo**, *m.*, egg.

**huir**, to flee.

**humano**, -a, human.

**ideal**, ideal.

**idioma**, *m.*, language.

**imaginar**, to imagine; *refl.*, to ima-  
 gine.

**I**  
**impaciente**, impatient.

**impedir**, to prevent, impede.

**imperativo**, imperative.

**importante**, important.

**importar**, to be of importance, con-  
 cern; ¡**no importa!** no matter!

**imposible**, impossible.

**imprimir**, to print, impress.

**indicativo**, *m.*, indicative.

**indio**, -a, Indian.

**industrioso**, -a, industrious.

**inexplicable**, inexplicable.

**influir** (*en*), to influence.

**informes**, *m. pl.*, information.

**ingeniatura**, *f.*, engineering.

**ingeniero**, *m.*, engineer.

**Inglaterra**, *f.*, England.

**inglés**, -esa, English.

**Inglés**, -esa, *m. and f.*, English-  
 man, Englishwoman.

**inmediatamente**, immediately.

**inmortal**, immortal.

**insigne**, illustrious.

**instante**, *m.*, instant; **al —**, instantly.

**instruir**, to instruct.

**insultar**, to insult.

**inteligente**, intelligent.

**intención**, *f.*, intention.

**interés**, *m.*, interest.

**interesante**, interesting.

**interesar**, to interest.

**interior**, *m.*, interior.

**intervenir**, to interfere.

**íntimo**, -a, intimate.

**inválido**, -a, incapacitated, crip-  
 pled.

**invencible**, invincible.

**invierno**, *m.*, winter.

I J K L

**ir**, to go, go on, continue; *refl.*, to go off, go away.

**ira**, *f.*, anger.

**irritar**, to provoke, anger.

**Israel**, Israel.

**Israelita**, *m. and f.*, Israelite.

**Italiano**, *-a, m. and f.*, Italian.

**italiano**, *-a*, Italian.

**izquierdo**, *-a*, left.

**jamás**, ever, never; **no . . . jamás**, never.

**Jícara**, Jicara; *as a common noun*, coffee cup.

**Jorge**, *m.*, George.

**José**, *m.*, Joseph.

**joven**, *m. and f.*, (young) man, woman, youth.

**joven**, young.

**jovencito**, *-a, (fr. joven), m. and f.*, young fellow, youth, young girl.

**Juan**, *m.*, John.

**Juana**, *f.*, Jane.

**jueves**, *m.*, Thursday.

**juez**, *m.*, judge.

**jugar**, to play.

**Julián**, *m.*, Julian.

**Julio**, *m.*, Julius.

**junio**, *m.*, June.

**junto**, *-a*, united, joined together; — **á**, near.

**justicia**, *f.*, justice.

**juzgado**, *m.*, tribunal, court of justice.

**juzgar**, to judge.

**kilómetro**, *m.*, kilometre.

**la**, *f.*, the, that, the one, she, her; it; *pl.*, the, those, they.

**la**, *pers. prn.*, her, it; *pl.*, them.

**lado**, *m.*, side.

**ladrón**, *-ona, m. and f.*, thief.

**lágrima**, *f.*, tear.

**lámpara**, *f.*, lamp.

**lápiz**, *m.*, pencil.

**largo**, *-a*, long; **largo**, *n.*, length.

**lástima**, *f.*, pity.

**lastimar**, to hurt, injure.

**lavandera**, *f.*, laundress.

**lavar**, to wash.

**le**, him, it, you; to him, her, it, you.

**lección**, *f.*, lesson.

**leche**, *f.*, milk.

**leer**, to read.

**lejano**, *-a*, distant.

**lejos**, far.

**lengua**, *f.*, tongue, language.

**leña**, *f.*, wood.

**León**, *m.*, Leo.

**les**, to them, to you.

**levantar**, to raise; *refl.*, to rise, get up.

**ley**, *f.*, law.

**libertad**, *f.*, liberty.

**libra**, *f.*, pound.

**libre**, free.

**librero**, *m.*, bookseller.

**libro**, *m.*, book.

**limón**, *m.*, lemon.

**limosna**, *f.*, alms.

**limosnita** (*fr. limosna*), *f.*, little alms, trifle for charity's sake.

**lindo**, *-a*, pretty.

**línea**, *f.*, line.

**lingüístico**, *-a*, linguistic.

L. M.

**lirio**, *m.*, lily.**lo**, the, it, him, you, so; **lo que**, that, which, what; **lo cual**, which.**lodo**, *m.*, mud.**longitud**, *f.*, length.**los**, the, them, you; — **que**, those who (whom); — **suyos**, his own.**Louvre**, *m.*, Louvre (palace and museum at Paris).**lucir**, show off, display.**lucha**, *f.*, struggle.**luego**, directly, soon; — **que**, as soon as.**lugar**, *m.*, place.**Luis**, *m.*, Lewis, Louis.**luna**, *f.*, moon.**lunes**, *m.*, Monday.**luz**, *f.*, light.**llamar**, to call, knock, ring; *refl.*, to be named.**llegar**, to arrive.**llevar**, to bear, carry, take, lead; — **á cabo**, to carry out.**llorar**, to weep, cry.**llover**, to rain.**macho**, *m.*, male.**madre**, *f.*, mother.**maduro**, -a, ripe.**maestro**, -a, *m. and f.*, (school) master, mistress, teacher.**magnífico**, -a, magnificent, splendid.**mal**, badly, poorly; *noun*, evil, harm; *adj.*, *cf.* **malo**.**maldad**, *f.*, misdeed, wicked act.**malísimo**, -a (*fr.* **malo**), very bad.**malo**, -a, bad, ill, sick.**man**, *m.*, mamma, mother.**mandar**, to command, order, send.**mando**, *m.*, command.**manera**, *f.*, manner, way.**mano**, *f.*, hand.**mantequilla**, *f.*, butter.**manzana**, *f.*, apple, city block.**mañana**, *f.*, morning, tomorrow;— **por la** —, tomorrow morning;**pasado** —, day after tomorrow.**mar**, *m. or f.*, sea.**marchar**, to march, go; *refl.*, to go away.**margen**, *f.*, margin, bank.**María**, *f.*, Mary.**martes**, *m.*, Tuesday.**marzo**, *m.*, March.**mas**, but.**más**, more, most, plus; **no** — **que**, only.**matar**, to kill.**mayo**, *m.*, May.**mayor**, greater, greatest; elder, older, oldest.**me**, me, to me.**Media**, *f.*, Media.**mediados**, *m. pl.*: **á** — **de**, about the middle of.**medicamento**, *m.*, medicine.**medicina**, *f.*, medicine.**médico**, *m.*, physician, doctor (of medicine).**medio**, -a, half, a half, middle;**Edad Media**, Middle Ages.**Mejicano**, -a, *m. and f.*, Mexican.**mejicano**, -a, Mexican.**Méjico**, *m.*, Mexico.

M N

**mejor**, better, best.  
**mendigo**, -a, *m. and f.*, beggar.  
**menester**, *m.*, necessity, need; **ser** —, to be necessary.  
**menor**, smaller, smallest; younger, youngest.  
**menos**, less, least; **á — que**, unless.  
**mentir**, to lie.  
**mentira**, *f.*, lie, lying.  
**menudo**: **á —**, often.  
**merecer**, to merit, deserve.  
**mes**, *m.*, month.  
**metro**, *m.*, metre.  
**mezclar**, to mix; **mezclarse con**, to mingle with.  
**mi**, my.  
**mí**, me.  
**miedo**, *m.*, fear; **tener — de**, to be afraid of.  
**miércoles**, *m.*, Wednesday.  
**Miguel**, *m.*, Michael.  
**mil**, (one) thousand; *noun m.*, thousand.  
**militar**, *m.*, soldier, officer.  
**milla**, *f.*, mile.  
**millón**, *m.*, million.  
**minuto**, *m.*, minute.  
**mío**, -a, my, mine; **el (la, los, las, lo) mío (-a, -os, -as, -o)**, mine.  
**misericordia**, *f.*, mercy.  
**mismo**, -a, self, himself, etc.; same, very; — **que**, same as.  
**modo**, *m.*, way, mode, manner.  
**molestar**, to annoy, trouble, disturb.  
**molestia**, *f.*, trouble.  
**momento**, *m.*, moment.  
**moneda**, *f.*, coin.

**mono**, -a, *m. and f.*, monkey.  
**montañés**, -esa, *m. and f.*, mountaineer.  
**montar**, to mount, ride; — **á caballo**, to ride on horseback; **montado en**, riding on.  
**morar**, to dwell, live.  
**morir**, to die; *refl.*, to die, be dying.  
**mosca**, *f.*, fly.  
**mostaza**, *f.*, mustard.  
**mover**, to move, actuate.  
**mozo**, -a, youth, lad, lass; waiter, waitress.  
**muchacho**, -a, *m. and f.*, boy, girl.  
**muchísimo**, -a (*fr. mucho*), very much.  
**muchísimos**, -as, very many.  
**mucho**, -a, much, a great deal; *pl.*, many; *adv.*, much, a great deal, very.  
**mueble**, *m.*, article (piece) of furniture; *pl.*, furniture.  
**muerte**, *f.*, death.  
**mujer**, *f.*, woman, wife.  
**mujeraza**, *f.*, large, coarse woman.  
**mula**, *f.*, mule.  
**multitud**, *f.*, multitude.  
**mundo**, *m.*, world; **todo el —**, everybody.  
**Murillo**, *m.*, Murillo (Spanish painter).  
**muro**, *m.*, wall.  
**museo**, *m.*, museum.  
**música**, *f.*, music.  
**muy**, very.  
**nacer**, to be born.  
**nacionalidad**, *f.*, nationality.

- nada**, nothing, anything, any respect;  
 no . . . **nada**, nothing.  
**nadador**, *m.*, swimmer.  
**nadie**, no one, nobody, any one, any-  
 body; **no** . . . —, nobody, not any-  
 body.  
**naranja**, *f.*, orange.  
**nariz**, *f.*, nose.  
**neblina**, *f.*, fog, mist.  
**necesario**, -*a*, necessary.  
**necesitar**, to need, want.  
**negar**, to deny.  
**negocio**, *m.*, business, affair.  
**negro**, -*a*, black.  
**nevar**, to snow.  
**ni**, nor, or; **ni** . . . **ni**, neither . . .  
 nor; **ni** . . . **tampoco**, not . . .  
 either, nor . . . either.  
**nieto**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, grandson,  
 granddaughter.  
**nieve**, *f.*, snow.  
**ninguno**, -*a*, no, none; **no** . . . **nin-**  
**guno**, -*a*, not any.  
**niño**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, child, (small)  
 boy, girl.  
**no**, not, no; **no poder menos de**,  
 not to be able to help.  
**noble**, noble.  
**noche**, *f.*, night; **esta** —, tonight.  
**nombre**, *m.*, name.  
**nono**, -*a*, ninth.  
**norte**, *m.*, north.  
**Norte-Americano**, -*a*, *m. and f.*,  
 North American.  
**norte-americano**, -*a*, North Ameri-  
 can.  
**nos**, us, ourselves, each other, one  
 another; to us, to ourselves.
- nosotros**, -*as*, we, us.  
**noticias**, *f. pl.*, news.  
**novcientos**, -*as*, nine hundred.  
**novela**, *f.*, novel.  
**noveno**, -*a*, ninth.  
**noventa**, ninety.  
**noviembre**, *m.*, November.  
**nuestro**, -*a*, our, ours; **el** (*la*, *lo*,  
*los*, *las*) **nuestro** (-*a*, -*o*, -*os*,  
 -*as*), ours.  
**nueve**, nine.  
**nuevo**, -*a*, new.  
**numerador**, *m.*, numerator.  
**número**, *m.*, number; **gran** —, a  
 large number.  
**nunca**, never, ever; **no** . . . **nunca**,  
 never, not ever.
- ó**, or.  
**obedecer**, to obey.  
**objeto**, *m.*, object.  
**obligar**, to oblige, compel.  
**obra**, *f.*, work; — **maestra**, master-  
 piece.  
**octavo**, -*a*, eighth.  
**octubre**, *m.*, October.  
**ocupación**, *f.*, occupation.  
**ocupado**, -*a*, busy, occupied.  
**ochenta**, eighty.  
**ocho**, eight; **las** —, eight o'clock.  
**ochocientos**, -*as*, eight hundred.  
**odiar**, to hate.  
**oído**, *m.*, hearing, (inner) ear.  
**oír**, to hear.  
**ojo**, *m.*, eye.  
**oler**, to smell; — **á**, to smell of.  
**once**, eleven; **las** — **y media**, half-  
 past eleven o'clock.



onza, *f.*, ounce.

ópera, *f.*, opera.

opinar, to opine, be of the opinion.

opinión, *f.*, opinion.

óptimo, *-a*, best, excellent.

opuesto, *-a*, opposite, opposed.

orador, *m.*, orator.

orar, to pray.

orden, *f.*, order.

ordinal, ordinal.

oriental, oriental.

origen, *m.*, origin.

original, original.

oro, *m.*, gold.

os, you.

osar, to dare.

oscurecer, to grow dark.

otro, *-a*, other, another.

Pablo, *m.*, Paul.

padre, *m.*, father, priest; *pl.*, fathers, parents.

pagar, to pay.

página, *f.*, page.

pagué, *pret. indic. 1st sing. of pagar.*

pague, *pres. subj. 3d sing. of pagar.*

país, *m.*, country, region, land.

palabra, *f.*, word.

palabrota (*fr. palabra*), *f.*, coarse expression, harsh word.

palacio, *m.*, palace.

pan, *m.*, bread.

pañuelo, *m.*, handkerchief.

papá, *m.*, papa, father.

papel, *m.*, paper; — *secante*, blotting paper.

paquete, *m.*, package.

para, for, to, in order to; — *que*, in order that, that.

parado, *-a*, stopped, erect, standing.

parecer, seem, appear; *parecerse á*, to be like to, resemble.

pariente, *-a, m. and f.*, relative, relation.

parte, *f.*, part; *por todas partes*, everywhere; *la mayor* —, most.

partir, to depart, leave; to split, crack; — *de*, to leave.

pasado, *-a*, past, last; *lo* —, the past; — *mañana*, day after tomorrow.

pasar, to pass, pass through, pass over, spend (time).

pasearse, to take a walk *or* a ride, go about.

paseo, *m.*, public promenade.

pasión, *f.*, passion.

patria, *f.*, (native) country.

paz, *f.*, peace; *paces, f. pl.*, peace.

pecado, *m.*, sin.

pedir, to ask for; — *á*, to ask of.

pelear, to fight.

peligro, *m.*, peril, danger.

pelota, *f.*, ball.

pelotón, *m.*, platoon.

pensar, to think, intend, mean (*followed directly by an infinitive*); — *en*, to think of, recall; — *de*, to think of, form an opinion of.

peor, worse, worst.

pequeñito, *-a (fr. pequeño)*, very small, wee, little, tiny.

pequeño, *-a*, little, small, slight.

perder, to lose; — *á*, to ruin.

perdón, *m.*, pardon.  
 perdonar, to pardon.  
 perecer, to perish.  
 perezoso, -a, lazy, idle.  
 periódico, *m.*, newspaper, periodical.  
 permitir, to permit.  
 pero, but.  
 persona, *f.*, person.  
 personaje, *m.*, personage.  
 pertenecer, to belong.  
 perro, *m.*, dog.  
 pesar, to weigh.  
 peseta, *f.*, peseta, franc (nearly twenty cents).  
 peso, *m.*, weight, dollar.  
 piano, *m.*, piano.  
 pie, *m.*, foot.  
 piedad, *f.*, pity, piety.  
 pierna, *f.*, leg.  
 pillete (*fr. pillo*), *m.*, low rascal, base rogue.  
 pintar, to paint.  
 pintor, *m.*, painter.  
 pintura, *f.*, painting.  
 Pío, Pius.  
 piso, *m.*, story, floor.  
 pizarra, *f.*, slate.  
 plan, *m.*, plan.  
 planchar, to iron.  
 plata, *f.*, silver.  
 plato, *m.*, plate.  
 plazuela (*fr. plaza*), *f.*, little square.  
 pluma, *f.*, pen, feather; — tintero, fountain pen.  
 pobre, poor.  
 pobrecito, -a (*fr. pobre*), poor little (fellow).

poco, -a, little; un poco, a little;  
 pocos, -as, few; — ha, a short while ago.  
 poder, to be able, can, may; — más, to have the more power, be the stronger; no — más, to be played out, be able to do no more; no — menos de, not to be able to help; puede que, it is possible that.  
 poder, *m.*, power.  
 poderoso, -a, powerful.  
 poeta, *m.*, poet.  
 político, -a, political; *noun m.*, politician.  
 politiquero (*fr. político*), *m.*, low politician.  
 poner, to put, place, set (a table), lay (eggs); *refl.*, to put on (clothing), become, begin.  
 por, for, through, by, along, on account of, per; — allí, over there; — la mañana, in the morning.  
 pormenor, *m.*, detail.  
 porque, because; por qué, why (*interrog.*).  
 porqué, why.  
 portero, *m.*, porter.  
 poseer, to possess, own.  
 posible, possible.  
 postal, postal.  
 ppdo. = próximo pasado.  
 Prado, *m.*, meadow; *name of a promenade and park at Madrid.*  
 preferir, to prefer.  
 preguntar (á), to ask (of).  
 preguntón, -ona, inquisitive.  
 premio, *m.*, prize.

## P Q

**prensa**, *f.*, press.

**presentar**, to present.

**presente**, present; **lo** —, the present (*time*); **al** —, at present.

**presente**, *m.*, present.

**prestar**, to lend.

**primer(o)**, -*a*, first.

**primo**, -*a*, *m. and f.*, cousin.

**principal**, principal, leading, of importance.

**principio**, *m.*, beginning; **á principios de**, near the beginning of.

**prisa**, *f.*, hurry; **tener** —, to be in a hurry; **de** —, quickly, fast.

**pró**, *m.*, advantage; **en — de**, in favor of.

**probable**, probable.

**probablemente**, probably.

**probar**, to prove, test.

**profesor**, *m.*, professor.

**profeta**, *m.*, prophet.

**progenitor**, *m.*, progenitor.

**prohibir**, to forbid, prohibit.

**prometer**, to promise.

**pronto**, soon, quickly.

**proposición**, *f.*, proposition, proposal.

**propósito**, *m.*, purpose, plan, proposition.

**prosperidad**, *f.*, prosperity.

**proteger**, to protect.

**proverbio**, *m.*, proverb.

**próximo**, -*a*, next; — **pasado**, last month, *ultimo*.

**proyecto**, *m.*, plan.

**prueba**, *f.*, proof.

**público**, -*a*, public.

**pueblo**, *m.*, people, town.

**puente**, *m.*, bridge.

**puerta**, *f.*, door, gate; **Puerta del Sol**, *f.*, Gate of the Sun (*name of the chief square in Madrid*).

**pues**, well, why.

**puesto**, *m.*, situation, position.

**punto**, *m.*, point, element; **á — de**, on the point of.

**puro**, -*a*, pure.

**que**, **el (la, las, los, las)** —, who, which, that; **lo** —, that which, what.

**qué**, *interrog. and exclam.*, what.

**que**, *conj.*, that, for, than, as; **tener** —, to have to, must; **de** —, of the fact that.

**qué**, *exclam.*, what a!

**quebrado**, *m.*, fraction.

**quebrar**, to break.

**quedar**, to remain; *refl.*, to remain, stay.

**quejarse (de)**, to complain (of).

**querer**, to wish, want, like, try; — **á**, to love, like; — **decir**, to mean, signify.

**querido**, -*a*, dear.

**queso**, *m.*, cheese.

**quien**, who, whom, he who, him who;

**quien . . . quien**, some . . . some (the) one . . . (the) other.

**quién**, *interrog.*, who, whom.

**Quijote**, Quixote.

**quince**, fifteen.

**quince-avo**, fifteenth.

**quinientos**, -*as*, five hundred.

**quinto**, -*a*, fifth.

**quinzavo**, fifteenth.

- quitar** (á), to take (from or off of). | **reñir**, to quarrel.  
**quizás**, perhaps. | **repasar**, to recite, repeat.  
**raro**, -a, strange, odd, queer. | **resfriado**, *m.*, cold.  
**raudal**, *m.*, stream, torrent, lot. | **resistir**, to resist.  
**rayo**, *m.*, ray, beam. | **respetar**, to respect.  
**raza**, *f.*, race. | **responder**, to respond, answer; — **de**,  
to answer for, be responsible for.  
**razón**, *f.*, reason, right; **tener** —, | **resto**, *m.*, remnant.  
to be right. | **resultado**, *m.*, result, outcome.  
**real**, royal, real. | **resultar**, to result.  
**real**, *m.*, silver coin worth about five | **retirarse**, to retire, retreat.  
cents. | **retrato**, *m.*, portrait, picture.  
**rece**, *pres. subj. 3d sing. of rezar*. | **reunido**, -a, united, gathered, as-  
**recepción**, *f.*, reception. | assembled.  
**recibir**, to receive. | **rey**, *m.*, king.  
**recibo**, *m.*, receipt. | **reyezuelo** (*fr. rey*), *m.*, petty king.  
**recomendar**, to recommend. | **rezar**, to pray.  
**recordar**, to recall, remind. | **rico**, -a, rich.  
**recuerdo**, *m.*, recollection; *pl.*, com- | **río**, *m.*, river.  
pliments, regards. | **rodilla**, *f.*, knee.  
**redondo**, -a, round. | **rogar**, to ask, entreat.  
**referir**, to relate, utter. | **rojo**, -a, red.  
**reforma**, *f.*, reform. | **Roma**, *f.*, Rome.  
**refrán**, *m.*, refrain, proverb. | **Romano**, -a, *m. and f.*, Roman.  
**regalar**, to give, present. | **romano**, -a, Roman, Romanic, Ro-  
**regalo**, *m.*, present, gift. | mance.  
**regreso**, *m.*, return. | **ropa**, *f.*, clothing, clothes.  
**reina**, *f.*, queen. | **roto**, -a, broken.  
**reír**, to laugh; **reírse** (**de**), to laugh | **ruido**, *m.*, noise.  
(at). | **Ruso**, -a, *m. and f.*, Russian.  
**relación**, *f.*, account. | **S. S. Q. B. S. M. (P.)** = **seguro** (-a)  
**relacionarse** (**con**), to be related (to). | **servidor** (-ora) **que besa sus**  
**religioso**, -a, religious. | **manos** (**pies**).  
**reloj**, *m.*, watch, clock. | **sábado**, *m.*, Saturday.  
**relojería**, *f.*, watch-making. | **saber**, to know, know how, learn,  
**relucir**, to shine, glisten, gleam. | be able; — **á**, to taste of.  
**remangado**, -a, turned up, snub. | **sacar**, to take out.  
**remendar**, to mend, repair.

## S

- sacerdote**, *m.*, priest.  
**sacrificio**, *m.*, sacrifice.  
**sacudir**, to shake off.  
**sala**, *f.*, room.  
**salida**, *f.*, going out, departure;  
     — **del sol**, sunrise.  
**salir**, come out, go out, issue, leave.  
**salud**, *f.*, health; **bien de** —, in  
     good health.  
**saludar**, to salute.  
**sanar**, to cure, heal.  
**santo**, -*a*, holy, saint.  
**saque**, *pres. subj. 3d sing. of sacar*.  
**sastre**, *m.*, tailor.  
**se**, himself, herself, itself, one's self,  
     yourself, themselves, yourselves;  
     (= **le, les**), to him, to her, to it,  
     to them, to you.  
**secante**, drying, blotting.  
**sed**, *f.*, thirst; **tener** —, to be thirsty.  
**seda**, *f.*, silk.  
**seguir**, to follow, succeed.  
**según**, *prep.*, according to; *conj.*,  
     according as, as.  
**segundo**, *m.*, second.  
**seguridad**, *f.*, security, safety.  
**seguro**, -*a*, secure, sure, firm.  
**seis**, six.  
**seiscientos**, -*as*, six hundred.  
**semana**, *f.*, week; **la — que viene**,  
     next week.  
**semejante**, such a.  
**semejanza**, *f.*, resemblance.  
**senador**, *m.*, senator.  
**sencillo**, -*a*, simple, unmixed, un-  
     qualified.  
**sentar**, to set, seat; to fit, suit; *refl.*,  
     to sit down, be seated.  
**sentimiento**, *m.*, feeling, grief, sor-  
     row.  
**sentir**, to feel, regret; *refl.*, be sorry,  
     feel.  
**Señor**, *m.*, Lord.  
**señor**, *m.*, sir, gentleman, Mr.  
**señora**, *f.*, madam, lady, wife, Mrs.  
**señorita**, *f.*, young lady, miss.  
**se(p)tiembre**, *m.*, September.  
**sé(p)timo**, -*a*, seventh.  
**ser**, to be.  
**servidor**, -*ora*, *m. and f.*, servant.  
**servir**, to serve; **servirse de**, to  
     make use of; **sírvase Vd.**, please,  
     be kind enough.  
**sesenta**, sixty.  
**setecientos**, -*as*, seven hundred.  
**setenta**, seventy.  
**severo**, -*a*, strict, severe.  
**Sevilla**, *f.*, Seville.  
**sexto**, -*a*, sixth.  
**si**, if; whether (*in indirect ques-*  
     *tion*); indeed (*in exclamations*).  
**sí**, yes.  
**sí**, himself, herself, itself, yourself,  
     one's self, themselves, yourselves.  
**siempre**, always, ever, still.  
**siete**, seven.  
**siglo**, *m.*, century.  
**significar**, to signify, mean.  
**siguiente**, following.  
**silencio**, *m.*, silence.  
**Silvestre**, *m.*, Silvester.  
**silla**, *f.*, chair, saddle.  
**sin**, without.  
**singular**, *m.*, singular.  
**sino**, but; **no . . . —**, only.  
**sistema**, *m.*, system.

S T

- sobre, above; — **todo**, above all, especially.  
**sobre**, *m.*, envelope.  
**sobresaliente**, excellent, surpassing.  
**sobrinito**, -a (*fr. sobrino*), *m. and f.*, little nephew, niece.  
**sobrino**, -a, *m. and f.*, nephew, niece.  
**sol**, *m.*, sun.  
**soldado**, *m.*, soldier.  
**soldadote** (*fr. soldado*), *m.*, big, rough soldier.  
**solo**, -a, alone, solitary.  
**sólo**, *adv.*, only, merely.  
**sombrero**, *m.*, hat.  
**son**, *see ser*.  
**sonreírse**, to smile.  
**sopa**, *f.*, soup.  
**sordo**, -a, deaf.  
**sorprender**, to surprise.  
**sortija**, *f.*, ring.  
**Sr.**, **Sor.** = **señor**.  
**Sra.**, **Sora.** = **señora**.  
**Srta.** = **señorita**.  
**su**, his, her, its, their, your, one's; — . . . **de Vd.**, your.  
**suavidad**, *f.*, suavity, gentleness; *pl.*, soft words *or* acts.  
**subir**, to go up, take up.  
**su(b)scribir**, to subscribe; *refl.*, to sign one's self.  
**subjuntivo**, *m.*, subjunctive.  
**subrayar**, to underscore, underline.  
**suceder**, to happen, follow (in order).  
**sueño**, *m.*, sleep, **tener** —, to be sleepy.  
**sufrir**, to suffer.  
**suplicar**, to beg, entreat.  
**suponer**, to suppose.
- suyo**, -a, your, yours; **el** (la, lo, los, las) **suyo** (-a, -o, -os, -as), yours; **los suyos**, his men.
- tabaco**, *m.*, tobacco.  
**tal**, such, such a; **un** —, a certain; **con** — **que**, provided that; — **vez**, perhaps; **qué** —, how.  
**talentazo**, *m.* (*fr. talento*), great talent.  
**talento**, *m.*, talent.  
**también**, also, too.  
**tampoco**, as little, neither, nor . . . either; **ni** . . . —, not . . . either, nor . . . either.  
**tan**, so, as; *idiomatic in exclamations*.  
**tantico**, -a (*fr. tanto*); **un** —, a little bit, somewhat.  
**tanto**, -a, as much, so much; **tantos**, -as, as many, so many; — . . . **como**, as (so) much . . . as; **por lo** —, therefore.  
**tanto**, *adv.*, so much, so.  
**tardar**, to delay; **no tardará en venir**, it will not be long before he comes.  
**tarde**, *f.*, evening, afternoon.  
**tarde**, late.  
**tarea**, *f.*, task.  
**tarjeta**, *f.*, card; — **de visita**, visiting card.  
**té**, *m.*, tea.  
**te**, you, thee.  
**teatro**, *m.*, theatre.  
**tejado**, *m.*, roof.  
**tela**, *f.*, cloth, fabric.  
**tema**, *m.*, theme, exercise.  
**temer**, to fear.

- templar, to temper, soften.  
 temprano, early.  
 tener, to have, hold; — *que*, to have to.  
 teoría, *f.*, theory.  
 tercer(o), -a, third.  
 tercio, -a, third.  
 terminar, to finish, end.  
 terquedad, *f.*, stubbornness, obstinacy.  
 tertuliano, -a, *m. and f.*, guest, person present at a party.  
 ti, you, thee.  
 tía, *f.*, aunt.  
 tiempo, *m.*, time, weather; ¿cuánto — *hace*? how long is it?  
 tienda, *f.*, shop, store.  
 tienen, *pres. indic. 3d pl. of tener*.  
 tierra, *f.*, earth, land.  
 tinta, *f.*, ink.  
 tío, -a, *m. and f.*, uncle, aunt.  
 tirano, *m.*, tyrant.  
 tocar, to touch, play (*a musical instrument*); knock (*on a door*); be one's turn.  
 todavía, still, yet.  
 todito, -a (*fr. todo*); toditos los días, almost every day.  
 todo, -a, all, every; *n.*, all, everything; — *el día*, all day; *todas las noches*, every night.  
 tomar, to take.  
 tonelada, *f.*, ton.  
 tonto, -a, *m. and f.*, fool; *hacerse el* —, to play the fool.  
 torno, *m.*, turn; *en — de*, around.  
 toro, *m.*, bull; *corrida de toros*, bull-fight.  
 tortuoso, -a, crooked.  
 torre, *f.*, tower.  
 trabajar, to work.  
 trabajo, *m.*, work.  
 traer, to bring.  
 traidor, -ora, *m. and f.*, traitor; *adj.*, treacherous.  
 traje, *m.*, suit, costume.  
 trajeron, *pret. indic. 3d pl. of traer*.  
 tranvía, *m.*, tramway, street car.  
 tratar, to treat, have dealings (with).  
 trece, thirteen.  
 treinta, thirty.  
 tren, *m.*, train.  
 tres, three.  
 trescientos, -as, three hundred.  
 tribu, *f.*, tribe.  
 triste, sad, gloomy, dismal.  
 tronar, to thunder; *por lo que pudiese tronar*, for a rainy day, against contingencies.  
 tropa, *f.*, troop.  
 tú, thou, you.  
 tu, thy, your.  
 turista, *m. and f.*, tourist.  
 tuyo, -a, thine, yours; *el tuyo*, etc., thine, yours.  
 ú, or.  
 último, -a, last.  
 uniforme, *m.*, uniform.  
 uniformemente, uniformly.  
 universidad, *f.*, university.  
 uno, -a, one; unos, -as, some, any about; *á la una*, at one o'clock.  
 usted (*pl. ustedes*), you.  
 útil, useful.



<b>V.</b> (= usted), you;	<b>VV.</b> , <i>pl.</i> (= ustedes), you.	<b>viajar</b> , to travel.
<b>vaca</b> , <i>f.</i> , cow.	[better.	<b>viaje</b> , <i>m.</i> , journey, travel.
<b>valer</b> , to be worth; <b>más vale</b> , it is		<b>vicioso</b> , -a, vicious.
<b>valor</b> , <i>m.</i> , valor, courage; <b>con</b> —,	courageously.	<b>vida</b> , <i>f.</i> , life, living.
	[ceited.	<b>viejo</b> , -a, old.
<b>vanaglorioso</b> , -a, boastful, con-		<b>viento</b> , <i>m.</i> , wind.
<b>vanidad</b> , <i>f.</i> , vanity.		<b>viernes</b> , <i>m.</i> , Friday.
<b>vara</b> , <i>f.</i> , yard.		<b>vino</b> , <i>m.</i> , wine.
<b>variar</b> , to vary, change.	[several.	<b>visita</b> , <i>f.</i> , visit.
<b>vario</b> , -a, various, different; <i>pl.</i> ,		<b>visitar</b> , to visit.
<b>varón</b> , <i>m.</i> , male.		<b>vista</b> , <i>f.</i> , sight, view.
<b>Vd.</b> (= usted), you; <b>Vds.</b> (=		<b>visto</b> , -a, <i>p. p. of ver</i> , to see.
ustedes), you.		<b>viudo</b> , -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , widower, widow.
<b>vecino</b> , -a, <i>m. and f.</i> , neighbor.		<b>vivir</b> , to live.
<b>veinte</b> , twenty.		<b>volar</b> , to fly.
<b>vela</b> , <i>f.</i> , candle.	[ <i>painter</i> ).	<b>volumen</b> , <i>m.</i> , volume.
<b>Velázquez</b> , Velazquez ( <i>Spanish</i>		<b>voluntad</b> , <i>f.</i> , will.
<b>velocidad</b> , <i>f.</i> , speed.		<b>volver</b> , to turn, return, come back;
<b>vencer</b> , to conquer, win.		— <b>á</b> , again; <i>refl.</i> , to turn around.
<b>vencido</b> , -a, conquered.		<b>vos</b> , you.
<b>vender</b> , to sell.		<b>vosotros</b> , -as, you, ye.
<b>veneno</b> , <i>m.</i> , poison, venom.		<b>voy</b> , <i>1st pers. sing. pres. indic. of ir</i> ,
<b>venerable</b> , venerable.		to go.
<b>venir</b> , to come, happen.		<b>vuelta</b> , <i>f.</i> , turn, return; <b>á</b> — <b>de</b>
<b>ventana</b> , <i>f.</i> , window.		<b>correo</b> , by return mail; <b>estar de</b>
<b>venzan</b> , <i>pres. subj. 3d pl. of vencer</i> .		—, to be back, have returned.
<b>ver</b> , to see.	[it so?	<b>vuestro</b> , -a, your, yours.
<b>verdad</b> , <i>f.</i> , truth; ¿ <b>no es</b> —?	isn't	<b>y</b> , and.
<b>verdadero</b> , -a, true, real.		<b>ya</b> , already, now; — <b>no</b> , no longer,
<b>verde</b> , green.		no more.
<b>verter</b> , to pour forth, shed.		<b>yerro</b> , <i>pres. indic. 1st sing. of errar</i> .
<b>vestido</b> , <i>m.</i> , garment, clothes, suit.		<b>yo</b> , I.
<b>vestir</b> , to dress, clothe; <i>refl.</i> , to		<b>yugo</b> , <i>m.</i> , yoke.
dress (one's self).		
<b>vez</b> , <i>f.</i> , time; <b>otra</b> —, again; <b>una</b>		<b>zapato</b> , <i>m.</i> , shoe.
—, once; <b>dos veces</b> , twice; <b>en</b>		<b>Zurbarán</b> , Zurbaran ( <i>Spanish</i>
— <b>de</b> , instead of.		<i>painter</i> ).

# VOCABULARY

## ENGLISH-SPANISH

NOTE. — Not all the words used in the Exercises will be found in the English-Spanish part of the General Vocabulary. If an English-Spanish exercise involves the use of Spanish words already employed in the preceding Spanish-English exercise of the same lesson, as occurs especially in the second half of the Grammar, those words are often not included in the English-Spanish part of the Vocabulary. In such cases the student needs no help, provided he translate properly the Spanish-English sentences of the particular lesson.

<b>a, an, un, una.</b>	agreeable, agradable.
<b>about, (= approximately) cerca de, aproximadamente, (= of) de, (= with regard to) respecto de.</b>	agree (to), convenir (en), (= get along together) entenderse.
<b>absent, ausente.</b>	<b>Alfred, Alfredo, m.</b>
<b>accompany, acompañar.</b>	<b>all, todo, -a; — day, todo el día.</b>
<b>according to, según.</b>	<b>almost, casi.</b>
<b>acknowledge, reconocer; — the receipt (of), acusar recibo (de).</b>	<b>aloud, alto, en voz alta.</b>
<b>act, hecho, m.</b>	<b>Alphonsus, Alfonso, m.</b>
<b>admire, admirar.</b>	<b>already, ya.</b>
<b>advise, aconsejar (á).</b>	<b>also, también.</b>
<b>affectionate, cariñoso, -a; very (most) —, afectísimo, -a, afmo, -a.</b>	<b>although, aunque.</b>
<b>afoot, á pie.</b>	<b>always, siempre.</b>
<b>afraid: be — (of), tener miedo (de).</b>	<b>a. m., de la mañana.</b>
<b>after, prep., después de; conj., después que.</b>	<b>America, América, f.; North —, América del Norte.</b>
<b>again, otra vez, de nuevo, volver á.</b>	<b>American, Americano, -a, m. and f.</b>
<b>age, edad, f.; Middle —s, Edad Media.</b>	<b>American, adj., americano, -a, norteamericano, -a.</b>
<b>ago: a long time —, hace mucho tiempo, mucho tiempo ha.</b>	<b>and, y, é (bef. i- or hi-).</b>
	<b>angry, enojado, -a, irritado, -a, enfadado, -a; be —, enojarse, irritarse, enfadarse.</b>
	<b>animal, animal, m.</b>

**Anna, Ana, f.**

**another, otro, -a; one —, los unos**  
(á) los otros.

**answer, responder, (to a letter) con-**  
testar.

**Anthony, Antonio, m.**

**any (one), alguno, -a; not any**  
(one), no . . . ninguno, -a, no  
. . . alguno, -a (*aft. noun*);  
**not . . . in any way, no . . .**  
en nada.

**anything, algo, alguna cosa; not —,**  
no . . . nada.

**appear, aparecer, (= seem) parecer.**

**apple, manzana, f.; — tree, man-**  
zano, *m.*; — **orchard, manzana-**  
nar, *m.*

**approach, acercarse á.**

**April, abril, m.**

**argue, argüir.**

**arise, levantarse.**

**arithmetic, aritmética, f.**

**arm, brazo, m.**

**army, ejército, m.**

**arrive (at, in), llegar (á).**

**as, como; as . . . as, tan . . .**  
como; — **soon —, luego que, tan**  
pronto como.

**ascertain, averiguar.**

**Asia, Asia, f.**

**ask, (= question) preguntar; (= beg,**  
*request*) pedir, rogar; — **of,**  
pedir á; — **for, pedir.**

**at, á, (= in) en.**

**attack, acometer.**

**August, agosto, m.**

**aunt, tía, f.**

**Australia, Australia, f.**

**autumn, otoño, m.**

**avoid, evitar.**

**awake, despertarse, (lit. 'to arouse**  
*one's self')*.

**back, (of person) espalda, f.; (of**  
*animal*) lomo, *m.*; (*of chair*)  
respaldo, *m.*

**bad, malo, -a; — cold, fuerte res-**  
friado; **it's too —! es lástima!**

**badly, mal.**

**ball, pelota, f.; play —, jugar á la**  
pelota.

**barber, barbero, m.**

**bark, ladrar.**

**be, (permanently or inherently) ser;**  
(*temporarily; position*) estar;  
— **cold, tener frío (of a person or**  
*animal*); estar frío (*of an inani-*  
*mate object*); hacer frío (*of the*  
*weather*).

**beard, barba, f.**

**beautiful, bello, -a, (= handsome)**  
hermoso, -a.

**because, porque.**

**bed, cama, f.; go to —, acostarse.**

**beer, cerveza, f.**

**before, (position) ante, delante de;**  
(*time*) antes de; (= *formerly,*  
*beforehand*) antes; *conj.* antes  
que.

**beg, mendigar; (= request) pedir,**  
rogar.

**behavior, conducta, f.**

**believe, creer.**

**beloved, amado, -a; querido, -a.**

**best, mejor.**

**better, mejor.**

between, entre.

bible, biblia, *f*.

bicycle, bicicleta, *f*.

bill, (= *account*) cuenta, *f*.; (= *poster*) cartel, *m*.; (= *bird's* —) pico, *m*.; (= *bank-note*) billete, *m*.

bird, pájaro, *m*.; ave, *f*.

birthday, día de cumpleaños, cumpleaños, *m*.

black, negro, -a.

blind, ciego, -a.

blotting-paper, papel secante, *m*.

blow, soplar; the wind —s, hace (hay) viento.

blue, azul.

book, libro, *m*.

borrow, pedir (tomar) prestado, -a.

boy, muchacho, *m*.; (= *young boy*) niño, *m*.

brandy, aguardiente, *m*.; coñac, *m*.

bread, pan, *m*.

bride, novia, *f*.

bring, traer; — down, bajar.

broken, roto, -a.

brother, hermano, *m*.; — in-law, cuñado, *m*.

brush, cepillo, *m*.; *vb.*, acepillar.

build, construir.

building, edificio, *m*.

burn, quemar; *intr.*, arder; — up (or down), quemarse.

burnish, bruñir.

busy, ocupado, -a.

but, pero, mas, sino (*ast. negative*).

butter, mantequilla, *f*.

buy, comprar.

by, (*with passive verbs*) por, de; (= *near*) junto á, cerca de, al lado de; — day, de día; — my watch, en mi reloj.

call, llamar.

can, poder; (= *know how*) saber.

candle, vela., *f*.

cap, gorra, *f*.

captain, capitán, *m*.

care, cuidado, *m*.

carriage, coche, *m*.; carruage, *m*.

carry off, llevar, llevarse.

case, caso, *m*.; in —, en caso que.

Catalan, Catalán, -ana, *m. and f*.

Catalonia, Cataluña, *f*.

catch, coger; (= *take*) tomar, (= *tie, fasten*) amarrar; — cold, coger un resfriado (resfrío), tomar catarro, resfriarse.

cause, causa, *f*.; motivo, *m*.

cent, centavo, *m*.

centime, céntimo, *m*.

certain, a certain, cierto, -a.

chair, silla, *f*.

change, cambiar.

Charles, Carlos, *m*.

child, niño, -a, *m. and f*.; children, niños, *m. pl.*; (= *sons and daughters*) hijos, *m. pl.*

chin, barba, *f*.

city, ciudad, *f*.

clean, limpiar.

clock, reloj (*de pared, de mesa*); at six o'clock, á las seis; what o'clock is it? ¿qué hora es?

clothes, ropa, *f*.

Co. (*company*), Cía.

coalition, coalición, *f.*

coat, levita, *f.*; (= *boy's* —) chaqueta, *f.*; (= "*sack*" —) "saco," *m.*; (= *evening* or "*dress*" —) frac, *m.*; (*of uniform*) casaca, *f.*

coffee, café, *m.*

cold, *noun*, frío, *m.*; (= *illness*) resfriado, *m.*, resfrío, *m.*, catarro, *m.*; catch —, coger un resfriado (resfrío), resfriarse.

cold, *adj.*, frío, -a; be —, *see* be.

collar, cuello, *m.*

collection, colección, *f.*

color, color, *m.*

comb, peine, *m.*; *vb.*, peinar.

come, venir; — out, salir.

comfortable, cómodo, -a.

command, mandar.

company, compañía, *f.*; Co., Cía.

conquer, vencer.

consequently, por consiguiente.

content, contented, contento, -a, satisfecho, -a.

contentedly, tranquilamente, contentamente.

continent, continente, *m.*

continue, continuar.

copy, copia, *f.*; (*of a work*) ejemplar, *m.*

cordially, cordialmente.

correct, corregir.

correctly, correctamente.

costly, costoso, -a.

country, país, *m.*; (= *native land*) patria, *f.*; (*as distinguished from the city*) campo, *m.*; — house, casa de campo.

cousin, primo, -a, *m. and f.*

cow, vaca, *f.*

crack, partir.

cravat, corbata, *f.*

cry, gritar, dar voces; (= *weep*) llorar.

Cuba, Cuba, *f.*

Cuban, Cubano, -a, *m. and f.*

Cuban, *adj.*, cubano, -a.

cuff, puño, *m.*

cup, taza, *f.*; (= *wine cup*) copa, *f.*

cure, sanar.

cut, cortar.

daily, diariamente, todos los días, cada día.

danger, peligro, *m.*

date, fecha, *f.*; *vb.*, fechar.

daughter, hija, *f.*

day, día, *m.*; good —, buenos días.

deal; a great — of, mucho, -a.

dear, (= *beloved*) querido, -a, caro, -a; (= *expensive*) caro, -a, costoso, -a; — Sir, muy Señor mío; — Madam, muy Señora mía.

dearly, (= *expensively*) caramente, costosamente; (= *affectionately*) tiernamente, cariñosamente.

death, muerte, *f.*

December, diciembre, *m.*

decide, resolver (á.)

deed, hecho, *m.*

defend, defender.

desire, desear.

destroy, destruir.

die, morir.

difficult, difícil.

discharge, despedir.

distinguish, distinguir.  
do, hacer.  
dog, perro, *m.*  
dollar, (*in Spain*) duro, *m.*; (*in America*) peso, *m.*  
door, puerta, *f.*  
doubt, duda, *f.*; *vb.*, dudar.  
dozen, docena, *f.*  
draft, giro, *m.*  
draw, sacar.  
drawing, dibujo, *m.*  
dress, vestir; *intr.*, vestirse.  
drink, beber.  
drop, (= *let go of*) soltar, (= *let fall*) dejar caer.  
dry, secar, (= *wipe*) enjugar.  
  
each, cada; — other, el uno (al) otro.  
ear, oreja, *f.*; (= *inner ear, or hearing*) oído, *m.*  
early, temprano.  
earn, ganar.  
easy, fácil.  
eat, comer.  
egg, huevo, *m.*  
eight, ocho.  
eighteen, diez y ocho.  
eighth, octavo, -a.  
eighty, ochenta.  
elevated, elevado, -a.  
else, something —, otra cosa.  
embrace, abrazar.  
employ, emplear.  
employee, empleado, -a, *m. and f.*  
end, extremidad, *f.*; extremo, *m.*  
enemy, enemigo, -a, *m. and f.*  
England, Inglaterra, *f.*

English, Inglés, -esa, *m. and f.*; *adj.*, inglés, -esa.  
enough, bastante, suficiente.  
enter, entrar (*en*).  
envelope, sobre, *m.*  
err, errar.  
Europe, Europa, *f.*  
even, *adv.*, aun; — if, aunque.  
evening, tarde, *f.*; good —, buenas noches.  
ever, (= *always*) siempre; (*in a question*) jamás, alguna vez; not —, no . . . nunca, no . . . jamás.  
every (one), todo, -a; cada (uno, -a); — body, todos (*pl.*), todo el mundo, *m.*; — night, todas las noches; — time, cada vez.  
exercise, ejercicio, *m.*  
expensive, costoso, -a, caro, -a.  
eye, ojo, *m.*  
  
face, cara, *f.*  
faithful, fiel.  
fall, caer; — down, caerse.  
false, falso, -a.  
family, familia, *f.*  
far, lejos; as — as, hasta.  
fast, (= *firm*) firme, seguro, -a; (= *swift*) veloz, ligero, -a; be — (*as a watch*), adelantar, estar adelantado.  
fast, *adv.*, (= *firmly*) fuertemente, firmemente; (= *rapidly*) aprisa, de prisa.  
fatal, fatal.  
father, padre, *m.*, papá, *m.*  
fault, culpa, *f.*

favor, favor, *m.*

fear, temer.

February, febrero, *m.*

feel, sentir; *intr.*, sentirse.

feeling, sentimiento, *m.*

few, a few, pocos, -as; unos (-as)  
cuantos (-as).

fifteen, quince.

fifth, quinto, -a.

fifty, cincuenta.

find, hallar, (= *meet*) encontrar.

fine, bueno, -a.

finger, dedo, *m.*; — nail, uña (de  
dedo), *f.*

fire, (*in the abstract*) fuego, *m.*;  
(= *burning wood or coal*)  
lumbre, *f.*, candela (*e.g. in*  
*Cuba*), *f.*; (= *conflagration*) in-  
cendio, *m.*

firm, casa, *f.*, (= *firm name*) firma, *f.*

first, primer(o) -a; (*in compound*  
*ordinals*) primo, -a.

fist, puño, *m.*

fit, sentar, caer, estar.

five, cinco; — hundred, quinientos,  
-as.

floor, suelo, *m.*, (= *story*) piso, *m.*

flower, flor, *f.*

fog, neblina, *f.*; niebla, *f.*

foggy; it is —, hay neblina.

food, alimento, *m.*

foolish, bobo, -a.

foot, pie, *m.*

for, (= *for the sake of, in ex-*  
*change for*) por; (= *destination*)  
para.

forbid, prohibir.

forehead, frente, *f.*

forest, monte, *m.*; bosque, *m.*

fork, tenedor, *m.*

forty, cuarenta.

four, cuatro.

fourteen, catorce.

fourth, cuarto, -a.

fragrant, oloroso, -a, fragante.

Frances, Francisca, *f.*

French, francés, -esa.

Frenchman, Francés, *m.*; French-  
woman, Francesa, *f.*

Friday, viernes, *m.*

friend, amigo, -a, *m. and f.*

frighten, espantar, asustar; be  
frightened, asustarse.

from, de, desde; — ... to, de ...  
á, desde ... hasta.

furniture, muebles, *m. pl.*

garlic, ajo, *m.*

gentleman, señor, *m.*; caballero, *m.*

geography, geografía, *f.*

George, Jorge, *m.*

German, Alemán, -ana, *m. and f.*;  
*adj.*, alemán, -ana.

get, (= *obtain*) conseguir, obtener;  
(= *go after*) ir á buscar; go and  
—, ir á buscar; (= *become*)  
ponerse.

gift, regalo, *m.*

girl, muchacha, *f.*; niña, *f.*

give, dar.

glad, alegre, contento, -a; I am —  
(to), me alegro de, me da gusto  
(placer) de, tengo mucho gusto  
(placer) en.

glass, vaso, *m.*

glove, guante, *m.*



- go, ir; — out, salir; — up, subir; — into, entrar (*en*); (*of a watch*) andar.
- god, dios, *m.*
- gold, oro, *m.*
- good, bueno, -a; be — for nothing, no valer nada, no servir para nada.
- good-bye, adiós; — for a while, hasta luego; — until we see each other again, hasta la vista.
- goodness, bondad, *f.*; (lo) bueno, *n.*
- grammar, gramática, *f.*
- granddaughter, nieta, *f.*
- grandfather, abuelo, *m.*
- grandparents, abuelos, *m., pl.*
- grandson, nieto, *m.*
- grant, otorgar, conceder.
- great, gran(de); a — deal, mucho, -a.
- Greek, griego, -a.
- guide, guía; *vb.*, guiar.
- hair, cabello, *m.*, pelo, *m.*; — of the head, cabellos, *m. pl.*
- half, mitad, *f.*; *adj.*, medio, -a; a —, or — a, medio, -a.
- hand, mano, *f.*; come to —, venir á (mis) manos.
- handkerchief, pañuelo, *m.*
- handsome, hermoso, -a.
- happen, acontecer, suceder.
- happily, felizmente.
- happy, feliz.
- hard, duro, -a; (= *difficult*) difícil; *adv.*, diligentemente, mucho.
- harm, mal, *m.*; (= *damage*) daño, *m.*
- hat, sombrero, *m.*
- hate, odiar, aborrecer.
- have, *aux. vb.*, haber; (= *possess*, *hold*) tener; — to, tener que, haber de.
- he, él; — who, el que, quien.
- head, cabeza, *f.*
- health, salud, *f.*; be in good (better) —, estar bien (mejor) de salud.
- healthful, saludable.
- healthy, sano, -a.
- heaven, cielo, *m.*
- help, ayudar.
- Henry, Enrique, *m.*
- here, aquí, acá.
- heroic, heroico, -a.
- high, alto, -a, elevado, -a.
- him, él, le, lo.
- himself, se.
- his, su, sus; el (la, lo, los, las) suyo (-a, -o, -os, -as); el (la, lo, los, las) . . . de él.
- historian, historiador, *m.*
- holy, santo, -a.
- home, (= *to one's* —) á casa; at —, en casa.
- hope, esperar.
- horse, caballo, *m.*
- horseback; on —, á caballo.
- hot, caliente.
- hour, hora, *f.*
- house, casa, *f.*
- how, como; *interrog.*, cómo; — much (many), cuánto, -a (-os, -as).
- hundred, one —, cien(to).
- hunger, hambre, *f.*
- hungry, hambriento, -a; be —, tener hambre.

H  
G  
HH  
I  
N  
D  
I  
A

**hurry**, *prisa, f.*; **be in a —**, tener prisa.

**if**, *si*.

**ill**, *enfermo, -a, malo, -a*.

**illness**, *enfermedad, f.*

**in**, *en*; (= *within*) **dentro de**; (*after a comparative*) **de**.

**independent**, *independiente*.

**Indian**, *indio, -a*.

**indispensable**, *indispensable*.

**influence**, *influencia, f.*

**ink**, *tinta, f.*

**instant**, *instante, m.*; (= *present month*) **del corriente**, *del presente*.

**instead of**, *en lugar (vez) de*.

**intend**, *pensar, tener la intención de*.

**interesting**, *interesante*.

**iron**, *hierro, m.*

**is**, *see ser, to be, or estar, to be*.

**island**, *isla, f.*

**it**, *él, ella, ello, lo*.

**Italian**, *italiano, -a*.

**January**, *enero, m.*

**John**, *Juan, m.*

**judge**, *juez, m.*

**July**, *julio, m.*

**June**, *junio, m.*

**just**, *adv.*, *justamente, exactamente*; **to have —**, *acabar de*.

**keep**, *guardar*.

**kind**, *clase, f., especie, f.*; *adj.*, *bondadoso, -a*; *apreciable or atenta (carta)*; **be — enough**, *tener la bondad (de), servirse*.

**kindness**, *bondad, f.*

**kiss**, *besar*.

**kitchen**, *cocina, f.*

**knife**, *cuchillo, m.*; (= *claspknife*), *navaja, f.*; (= *penknife*) *cortaplumas, m.*

**know**, (= *be acquainted with*) *conocer*, (= *be aware of, know how, be able*) *saber*; **I —**, *conozco or sé*; **let them —**, *conozcan or sepan*.

**lady**, *señora, f.*

**lamp**, *lámpara, f.*

**language**, *lengua, f., idioma, m.*; (= *style of language*) *lenguaje, m.*

**large**, *gran(de)*.

**last**, *durar*.

**last**, *último, -a, postrer(o), -a*; **— week**, *la semana pasada*.

**late**, *tarde*.

**Latin**, *latín, m. (the language)*; *latino -a, adj.*

**laugh**, *reír*; **— at**, *reírse de*.

**laundress**, *lavandera, f.*

**lawyer**, *abogado, m.*

**lazy**, *perezoso, -a, haragán, -ana*.

**leap year**, *año bisiesto, m.*

**learn**, *aprender (á)*.

**least**, *menos*; **at —**, *á (por) lo menos*.

**leave**, *dejar, abandonar*; (= *depart*) *partir*, (= *go out*) *salir*.

**leg**, *pierna, f.*

**lend**, *prestar*.

**less**, *menos*.

**lesson**, *lección, f.*

**let**, (= *leave*) *dejar*; (= *permit*) *permitir*; (= *rent*) *alquilar, arrendar*; (*sometimes que with the pres subj. of the main verb*).

**letter**, carta, *f.*  
**library**, biblioteca, *f.*  
**lie**, mentir.  
**lie (down)**, acostarse.  
**life**, vida, *f.*  
**light**, alumbrar, iluminar; (= *kindle*) encender.  
**lighten**, relampaguear.  
**like**, querer (á), gustar (de); **I —**, me gusta (*lit., it pleases me*).  
**lily**, lirio, *m.*  
**line**, línea, *f.*  
**listen**, escuchar.  
**little**, poco, -a; (= *small*) pequeño, -a, chico, -a.  
**live**, vivir.  
**living**, vida, *f.*  
**London**, Londres, *m.*  
**long**, largo, -a; **a — time**, mucho tiempo; (*see tardar*); **as — as**, mientras, mientras que.  
**look (at)**, mirar; — **for**, buscar; (= *appear*) parecer; — **like**, parecerse á.  
**lose**, perder.  
**lot**, porción, *f.*; **a — of**, mucho, -a, gran número; **a — of tears**, un raudal de lágrimas.  
**Louise**, Luisa, *f.*  
**love**, amar, querer (á).  
**low**, bajo, -a.  
**madam**, señora, *f.*  
**make**, hacer; (= *earn*) ganar.  
**man**, hombre, *m.*; **his men**, los suyos.  
**many**, muchos, -as.  
**marble**, mármol, *m.*; (*in game of*) bola, *f.*; bolita, *f.*

**March**, marzo, *m.*  
**march**, marchar.  
**Mary**, María, *f.*  
**match**, fósforo, *m.*; *vb.*, caer bien con.  
**mathematics**, matemáticas, *f. pl.*  
**matter**, *vb.*, importar.  
**may**, poder, tener permiso (de).  
**May**, mayo, *m.*  
**me**, to —, me.  
**mean**, (= *to intend*) pensar; (= *to signify*) significar or querer decir.  
**meat**, carne, *f.*  
**medicine**, (= *science of*) medicina, *f.*; (= *drug*) medicamento, *m.*  
**meet**, encontrar.  
**melancholy**, melancolía, *f.*  
**mend**, remendar, componer, reparar.  
**merchant**, comerciante, *m.*  
**metal**, metal, *m.*  
**Mexican**, Mejicano, -a, *m. and f.*; *adj.*, mejicano, -a.  
**Mexico**, Méjico, *m.*  
**middle**, medio, -a.  
**milk**, leche, *f.*  
**million**, millón, *m.*  
**mine**, mío, -a, -os, -as; el (la, lo, los, las), mío (-a, -o, -os, -as).  
**minute**, minuto, *m.*  
**miser**, avariento, -a, *m. and f.*  
**Miss**, (la) señorita; (*bef. given names*), doña.  
**mistake**, error, *m.*, falta, *f.*  
**moment**, momento, *m.*  
**Monday**, lunes, *m.*  
**money**, dinero, *m.*  
**month**, mes, *m.*  
**more**, más.

I  
J  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z

moreover, además.

morning, mañana, *f.*; tomorrow

—, mañana por la mañana.

most, más; (= *very*) muy.

mother, madre, *f.*

mouth, boca, *f.*

Mr., (el) señor, *m.*; (*bef. given names*) don.

Mrs., (la) señora; (*bef. given names*) doña.

much, mucho, -a; very —, muchísimo -a; so (as) — as, tanto, -a, como.

mud, lodo, *m.*; (= *mire, slime*) fango, *m.*

mule, mulo, -a, *m. and f.* (*the fem. form is generally used*).

music, música, *f.*

must, tener que, haber de; (= *moral obligation*) deber.

mustache(s), bigotes, *m. pl.*

my, mi, mis; mío (-a, -os, -as).

nail, clavo, *m.*; finger —, uña (de dedo), *f.*

name, nombre, *m.*; (= *surname*) apellido, *m.*; my — is, me llamo.

napkin, servilleta, *f.*

native, natural, *m. and f.*

near, cerca de, junto á.

nearly, casi.

necessary, necesario, -a; be —, ser necesario, preciso, menester.

neck, cuello, *m.*, pescuezo, *m.*

necktie, corbata, *f.*

need, necesidad, *f.*

need, necesitar.

negro, negro, -a, *m. and f.*

neighbor, vecino, -a, *m. and f.*

never, nunca, jamás.

new, nuevo, -a

news, noticia, *f.*, noticias, *f. pl.*

next, próximo, -a, siguiente; —

month, el próximo mes, el mes que viene (entra); the — page, la página siguiente.

niece, sobrina, *f.*

night, noche, *f.*; last —, anoche.

nine, nueve.

nineteen, diez y nueve.

ninety, noventa.

ninth, noveno, -a; (*in compound ordinals*) nono, -a.

no, no.

no, no one, none, ningun(o), -a.

nobody, nadie.

nor, ni.

north, norte, *m.*; *adj.*, norte.

North-American, Norte-Americano, -a, *m. and f.*; *adj.*, norte-americano, -a.

nose, nariz, *f.*

not, no; — . . . either, ni . . . tampoco.

note, notar; be noted, notarse.

nothing, nada.

November, noviembre, *m.*

now, ahora.

nut, nuez, *f.*

oblige, obligar.

observe, (= *to keep*) guardar.

o'clock; at six —, á las seis.

October, octubre, *m.*

of, de; (*with pensar*) en; (*with verb of separation*) á.

- offer**, ofrir.  
**often**, muchas veces, á menudo.  
**old**, viejo, -a, anciano, -a; (= *ant*) antiguo, -a; **older** (*of persons*), mayor; **be ten years** —, tener diez años.  
**on**, en; (= *on top of*) sobre, encima de; — **time**, á tiempo.  
**once**, una vez; **at** —, en seguida.  
**one**, un(o), -a; — **or another**, uno (-a) ú otro (-a), alguno (-a) que otro (-a); **that one**, aquel, etc.  
**only**, sólo, solamente, no . . . **más** que, no . . . sino.  
**open**, abrir.  
**or**, ó, ú (*bef. o- or ho-*); **not** . . . —, no . . . ni.  
**orange**, naranja, *f*.  
**order**, (= *command*) orden, *f*.; (= *orderliness*) orden, *m*.; **in** — **to**, para; **in** — **that**, para que.  
**original**, original.  
**other**, another, otro, -a; (= *the rest*) demás.  
**ought**, deber.  
**our**, nuestro, -a.  
**ours**, nuestro (-a, -os, -as); **el** (la, los, las, lo) **nuestro** (-a, -os, -as, -o).  
**out**, fuera; (= *outside*) afuera; **go** —, salir.  
**outdoors**, afuera.  
**over**, (= *upon*) sobre; (= *above*), encima de; (= *to the other side of*) al otro lado de; — **there**, por allí.  
**overcoat**, sobretodo, *m*., abrigo, *m*.; (= *cloak*) capote, *m*.  
**own**, propio, -a, mismo, -a.  
**owner**, dueño, -a, *m. and f*.  
**package**, paquete, *m*.  
**page**, página, *f*.  
**pale**, pálido, -a.  
**paper**, papel, *m*.; (= *newspaper*) periódico, *m*.  
**pardon**, perdón, *m*.; *vb.*, perdonar.  
**parents**, padres, *m. pl.*  
**Paris**, París.  
**parrot**, loro, *m*., cotorra (*species of small* —), *f*.  
**part**, parte, *f*.  
**pass**, pasar.  
**past** (lo) pasado, *n*.  
**past**, *adj.*, pasado, -a; **at half** — **one o'clock**, á la una y media.  
**pastry**, pasteles, *m. pl.*  
**Paul**, Pablo, *m*.  
**pay**, pagar.  
**peace**, paz, *f*.  
**peach**, melocotón, *m*., durazno, *m*.  
 (= *a common variety of small peach*).  
**pen**, pluma, *f*.  
**pencil**, lápiz, *m*.  
**penknife**, cortaplumas, *m*.  
**people**, pueblo, *m*.; (= *persons*) gente, *f*.  
**pepper**, pimienta, *f*.  
**perhaps**, tal vez, quizás.  
**permit**, permitir.  
**person**, persona, *f*.  
**personage**, personaje, *m*.  
**Peter**, Pedro, *m*.  
**Philippines**, Filipinas, *f. pl.*; **in the** —, en Filipinas.

NON

HIZO

- philosophy**, filosofía, *f.*  
**physician**, médico, *m.*  
**piano**, piano, *m.*  
**picture**, cuadro, *m.*; (= *portrait*) retrato, *m.*; (= *engraving*) grabado, *m.*, lámina, *f.*  
**piece**, pedazo, *m.*; (*of music, etc.*) pieza, *f.*; (*— of furniture*) mueble, *m.*  
**pity**, piedad, *f.*, misericordia, *f.*, lástima, *f.*; **it is a —**, es lástima.  
**plan**, plan, *m.*  
**plate**, plato, *m.*  
**play**, jugar, (*on a musical instrument*) tocar.  
**please**, gustar, agradar; (= *be kind enough*), ¡hágame Vd. el favor (de), tenga Vd. la bondad (de)!  
**pleasure**, gusto, *m.*, placer, *m.*  
**p. m.**, (*till dark*) de la tarde; (*aft. dark*) de la noche.  
**pocket**, bolsillo, *m.*, faltriquera, *f.*  
**poem**, poesía, *f.*  
**porter**, portero, *m.*  
**possess**, poseer.  
**possible**, posible.  
**post-office**, correo, *m.*, casa (administración) de correos, *f.*  
**potato**, patata, *f.*, (*in most parts of Spanish America*) papa, *f.*  
**pour**, echar.  
**praise**, alabar.  
**pray**, rezar.  
**prefer**, preferir.  
**present**, regalo, *m.*, presente, *m.*; *vó.*, presentar.  
**prettily**, lindamente, bonitamente.  
**pretty**, bonito, -a, lindo, -a.  
**print**, imprimir.  
**probably**, probablemente.  
**promise**, prometer.  
**prove**, probar.  
**publish**, publicar; **be published**, publicarse, salir á luz.  
**punish**, castigar.  
**pupil**, discípulo, -a., *m. and f.*  
**pure**, puro, -a.  
**purse**, bolsa, *f.*, bolsillo, *m.*  
**put**, poner; **— out** (*a fire or light*), apagar.  
**quarter**, cuarto, *m.*, **at a — past one o'clock**, á la una y cuarto.  
**rain**, llover.  
**raise**, levantar.  
**rare**, raro, -a.  
**rarely**, raramente.  
**reach**, alcanzar; (= *touch*) tocar; (= *extend*) tender, extender; (= *arrive at*) llegar á.  
**read**, leer.  
**ready**, listo, -a.  
**reason**, razón, *f.*  
**recall**, recordar.  
**receipt**, recibo, *m.*  
**receive**, recibir.  
**red**, rojo, -a; (= *bright red*) encarnado, -a; (= *dark red, "brick-color"*) colorado, -a.  
**regards**, recuerdos, *m. pl.*  
**regret**, sentir.  
**regular**, regular; **he is a — fool**, es un bobo.

- relate, relacionarse con ; all relating  
 to, cuanto se relaciona con.  
 remain, quedar, quedarse, restar.  
 remember, acordarse (de), recordar.  
 respect, estimación, *f*.  
 rest, descansar.  
 return, volver, regresar.  
 rich, rico, -a.  
 rifle, rifle, *m.* ; fusil, *m*.  
 right, justo, -a ; (*as compared to left*)  
 derecho, -a ; be —, tener razón.  
 ring, sortija, *f.* ; anillo, *m*.  
 rise, levantarse ; (*of sun, moon, etc.*)  
 salir.  
 rogue, pícaro, -a, *m. and f.* ; pillo,  
 -a, *m. and f*.  
 roof, tejado, *m*.  
 room, cuarto, *m.* ; bed —, alcoba,  
*f.* ; bath —, cuarto de baño, *m.* ;  
 class —, aula, *f.*, sala de clase,  
*f.* ; dining —, comedor, *m.* ;  
 state —, camarote, *m.* ; (= *space*)  
 lugar, *m.*, espacio, *m*.  
 run, correr.  
 Russian, Ruso, -a, *m and f*.  
 sacrifice, sacrificio, *m*.  
 sad, triste.  
 saint, san(to), -a, *m. and f.* ; —'s  
 day, día del santo, *m.* ; días, *m.*  
*pl.*  
 sale, venta ; for —, de venta.  
 salt, sal, *f*.  
 Saturday, sábado, *m*.  
 save, salvar.  
 say, decir ; they will say, dirán.  
 scholar, (= *pupil*) discípulo, -a, *m.*  
*and f*.  
 school, escuela, *f*.  
 second, segundo, -a.  
 second, segundo, *m*.  
 see, ver.  
 seek, buscar.  
 seem, parecer, figurarse.  
 self, mismo, -a.  
 sell, vender.  
 send, enviar, mandar ; — for, man-  
 dar á buscar.  
 September, se(p)tiembre, *m*.  
 serious, serio, -a ; (= *dangerous*)  
 grave, peligroso, -a.  
 servant, criado, -a, *m. and f*.  
 serve (as), servir (de).  
 set, sentar ; (*of the sun, moon, etc.*)  
 ponerse ; (*— the table, etc.*) poner.  
 seven, siete.  
 seventeen, diez y siete.  
 seventh, sé(p)timo, -a.  
 seventy, setenta.  
 several, varios, -as.  
 severe, severo, -a.  
 Seville, Sevilla, *f*.  
 shave, afeitar, rasurar ; *intr.*, afei-  
 tarse, rasurarse.  
 shed, verter.  
 shine, lucir, brillar ; the sun —s,  
 hace (hay) sol.  
 shirt, camisa, *f*.  
 shoe, zapato, *m*.  
 short, corto, -a ; a — while (time)  
 ago, poco tiempo ha.  
 should, (= *ought to*) deber.  
 show, enseñar, mostrar.  
 shut, cerrar.  
 side, lado, *m*.  
 silver, plata, *f*.

O.R.S.

H.E.D.M.K.



**since**, desde ; *conj.*, desde que.

**sincere**, sincero, -a.

**sincerely**, sinceramente.

**sir**, señor, *m.* ; caballero, *m.*

**sister**, hermana, *f.*

**sit (down)**, sentarse.

**six**, seis.

**sixteen**, diez y seis.

**sixth**, sexto, -a.

**sixty**, sesenta.

**skilful**, experto, -a, hábil.

**slate**, pizarra, *f.*

**sleep**, sueño, *m.* ; *vb.*, dormir ; go to —, fall a —, dormirse.

**sleepy** : be —, tener sueño.

**slow**, lento, -a, detenido, -a, atrasado, -a ; be — (*as a watch, train, etc.*), atrasar, estar atrasado, -a.

**slowly**, despacio.

**small**, pequeño, -a, chico, -a.

**smell**, oler ; — **of**, oler á ; **it smells**, etc., huele, etc.

**smoke**, humear, echar humo ; — **to** — **bacco**, fumar tabaco.

**snow**, nieve, *f.* ; *verb*, nevar.

**so**, tan ; — **much (many)**, tanto, -a, tantos, -as ; — . . . **as**, tan . . . como ; **he said** —, lo dijo.

**soap**, jabón, *m.*

**soiled**, sucio, -a.

**soldier**, soldado, *m.*

**some**, alguno, -a ; *pl.*, algunos, -as, unos, -as, unos (-as) cuantos (-as).

**somebody**, **some one**, alguien, alguno, -a.

**something**, algo, alguna cosa ; — **else**, otra cosa.

**son**, hijo, *m.*

**soon**, pronto, presto, temprano ; **as**

— **as**, luego que, tan pronto como.

**Sophia**, Sofía, *f.*

**sorry**, afligido, -a, triste ; be —, *am-* tir(lo).

**soul**, alma, *f.*

**soup**, sopa, *f.*

**Spain**, España, *f.*

**Spaniard**, Español, -ola, *m. and f.*

**Spanish**, español, -ola ; (= *the Spanish language*) el castellano, el español, *m.*

**speak**, hablar.

**spend**, gastar.

**splendid**, magnífico, -a, espléndido, -a.

**split**, partir.

**spoon**, cuchara, *f.* ; **tea** —, cucharita, *f.*

**spring**, (= *season*) primavera, *f.*

**squirrel**, ardilla, *f.*

**station (of railway)**, estación, *f.*, paradero, *m.*

**statue**, estatua, *f.*

**stay**, quedar, quedarse ; — **in bed**, guardar cama.

**steal**, robar.

**still**, todavía, aun (*or aún*).

**story**, cuento, *m.*, relación, *f.*

**stove**, (= *cooking* —) fogón, *m.* ; (= *heating* —) estufa, *f.*

**strange**, extraño, -a, particular.

**stranger**, extranjero, -a, *m. and f.* ; (= *unknown*) desconocido, -a, *m. and f.*

**street**, calle, *f.*

**strong**, fuerte.

**study**, estudio, *m.* ; *vb.*, estudiar.

such, *such a*, tal.  
 suffer, sufrir.  
 summer, verano, *m.*  
 sun, sol, *m.*  
 Sunday, domingo, *m.*  
 supper, cena, *f.*; **have** —, cenar.  
 support, mantener.  
 sweet, dulce; **sweets**, dulces,  
*m. pl.*  
 system, sistema, *m.*

table, mesa, *f.*  
 tablecloth, mantel, *m.*  
 tailor, sastre, *m.*  
 take, tomar, (= *carry*) llevar.  
 talk, hablar.  
 tall, alto, -a.  
 taste, gusto, *m.*; *vb.*, gustar; *intr.*,  
 saber á.  
 tea, té, *m.*; — **spoon**, cucharita, *f.*  
 teach, enseñar.  
 teacher, maestro, -a, *m. and f.*  
 tear, lágrima, *f.*  
 tell, decir, contar.  
 ten, diez.  
 tenderly, tiernamente.  
 tenth, décimo, -a.  
 Tetuán, Tetuán.  
 than, que, de (*bef. numerals*), del  
 que, de la que, etc. (*bef. dependent*  
*clauses*).  
 thank, dar (las) gracias (á), agra-  
 decer; **I — you!** ¡gracias!  
 that (*rel.*), que.  
 that (*dem.*), ese, -a, -o; aquel,  
 aquella, aquello.  
 that (*conj.*), que; (= *in order*  
*that*) para que.

that one, aquél, aquélla.  
 the, el, la, los, las, lo.  
 their, su, sus; el (la, los, las) . . .  
 de ellos (ellas).  
 them, los, les, las; ellos, ellas.  
 theme, tema, *m.*  
 then, entonces.  
 there, allí, allá; (*near person ad-*  
*dressed*) ahí; **over** —, por allí;  
 — **is (are)**, hay.  
 therefore, por consiguiente, por  
 esto (eso).  
 they, ellos, ellas.  
 thief, ladrón, -ona, *m. and f.*  
 thing, cosa, *f.*  
 think, pensar; — **of**, pensar en;  
 — **about**, pensar de; (= *believe*),  
 creer, opinar.  
 third, tercer(o), -a; (*in compound*  
*ordinals*) tercio, -a.  
 thirst, sed, *f.*  
 thirsty: be —, tener sed.  
 thirteen, trece.  
 thirty, treinta.  
 this, (*dem.*) este, -a, -os, -as, -o;  
 — **one**, (*prn.*) éste, ésta, etc.  
 those who, los que, etc.  
 thousand, one —, mil.  
 three, tres.  
 throat, garganta, *f.*  
 through, por; — **ticket**, billete  
 (boleto) directo, *m.*  
 throw, echar, arrojar; (— *a ball,*  
*stone, etc.*) tirar; — **away**, botar,  
 arrojar.  
 Thursday, jueves, *m.*  
 ticket, billete, *m.*; boleto, *m.*  
 (*American*).

**time**, tiempo, *m.*, hora, *f.*; **what** — is it? ¿qué hora es? **the first** —, la primera vez; **on** —, á tiempo.

**tired**, cansado, -a.

**to**, á, hasta; (= *in order to*) para.

**tobacco**, tabaco, *m.*

**today**, hoy.

**tomorrow**, mañana; **day after** —, pasado mañana; — **morning**, mañana por la mañana.

**too**, también; — **much**, demasiado, -a; **it's** — **bad**! ; es lástima!

**toothache**: **he has a** —, le duelen los dientes (*lit.* 'the teeth ache to him').

**toward(s)**, hacia.

**towel**, toalla, *f.*

**town**, pueblo, *m.*; ciudad, *f.*

**train**, tren, *m.*

**traitor**, traidor, -ora, *m. and f.*

**travel**, viajar.

**travelling-bag**, maleta, *f.*

**tree**, árbol, *m.*

**tremble (with)**, temblar (de).

**Trinity**, Trinidad, *f.*

**trousers**, pantalones, *m. pl.*

**true**, verdadero, -a; (= *faithful*) fiel; **it is true**, es verdad (cierto).

**trunk**, baúl, *m.*

**truth**, verdad, *f.*

**try**, (= *test*) probar; (= *tempt*) tentar; (= *endeavor*) tratar (de), procurar, esforzarse (á).

**Tuesday**, martes, *m.*

**turn**, (= — *around*) volverse; (= *become*) ponerse, hacerse.

**twelve**, doce.

**twenty**, veinte.

**twice**, dos veces.

**two**, dos; — **hundred**, doscientos, -as.

**typewriter**, máquina de escribir, *f.*

**ugly**, feo, -a.

**umbrella**, paraguas, *m.*

**uncle**, tío, *m.*; **uncle(s) and aunt(s)**, tíos, *m. pl.*

**underscore**, subrayar.

**understand**, entender.

**unfortunate**, desdichado, -a, desgraciado, -a.

**unhappy**, infeliz.

**United States**, Estados Unidos, *m. pl.*

**unless**, á menos que.

**until**, hasta; *conj.*, hasta que.

**us**, nos, nosotros, -as, **to** —, nos.

**use**, usar, emplear, servirse de; **he used to do so**, solía hacerlo, lo hacía.

**useful**, útil.

**usually**, por lo común, por lo general, comúnmente.

**various**, vario, -a.

**vary**, variar.

**very**, muy, mucho.

**vest**, waistcoat, chaleco, *m.*

**village**, aldea, *f.*, pueblecito, *m.*

**visit**, visitar; *noun*, visita, *f.*

**volume**, tomo, *m.*, volumen, *m.*

**waistcoat**, chaleco, *m.*

**wait (for)**, esperar, aguardar.

**wall**, muro, *m.*; (= *inner* — *of house*) pared, *f.*; (*of fortification*) muralla, *f.*

- want**, (= *lack*) carecer de; (= *wish*) querer, desear.
- war**, guerra, *f*.
- warm**, caluroso, -a, cálido, -a; **I am** —, tengo calor; **it is** —, hace calor; — **water**, agua caliente.
- wash**, lavar.
- wash-basin**, jofaina, *f*, palangana, *f*.
- watch**, reloj, *m*.
- water**, agua, *f*.
- way**, camino, *m*, dirección, *f*; (= *manner*) manera, *f*, modo, *m*; **not . . . in any** —, no . . . en nada.
- we**, nosotros, -as.
- wealthy**, rico, -a, opulento, -a.
- weapon**, arma, *f*.
- weather**, tiempo, *m*; **be good** —, hacer buen tiempo.
- Wednesday**, miércoles, *m*.
- week**, semana, *f*; **in a** —, en ocho días; **in two** —s, en quince días.
- weep**, llorar.
- well**, bueno, -a, bien de salud; *adv*, bien.
- wet**, mojado, -a.
- what**, *prn. rel.*, lo que; — **is mine**, lo mío: *interrog.*, qué, (= *which*) cuál.
- when**, cuando; *interrog.*, cuándo.
- whenever**, cuando, cuandoquiera que, siempre que.
- where**, donde; *interrog.*, dónde; (= *whither*) á dónde; (= *wherein*) en donde.
- whether**, si; (*aft. dudar, etc.*) que.
- which**, que, el (la) cual, el (la) que; *interrog.*, cuál.
- while**, (= *time*) tiempo; *conj.*, mientras, mientras que.
- white**, blanco, -a.
- who**, que, el (la) cual, el (la) que, quien; *interrog.*, quién.
- whom**, *rel.*, que, quien, el que, *etc.*, el cual, *etc.*
- whom**, *interrog.*, quién.
- whose**, cuyo, -a; *interrog.*, de quién, cuyo, -a.
- wicked**, malo, -a.
- wickedness**, iniquidad, *f*, (lo) malo, *n*.
- wide**, ancho, -a.
- wife**, mujer, *f*, señora, *f*, esposa, *f*.
- wild**, silvestre.
- will**, (= *be willing*) querer; *otherwise* 'will' denotes *future time*.
- willing**, dispuesto, -a, inclinado, -a; **be** —, querer.
- wind**, viento, *m*.
- window**, ventana, *f*.
- windy**: **it is** —, hace (hay) viento.
- wine**, vino, *m*.
- winter**, invierno, *m*.
- wish**, querer, desear.
- with**, con.
- without**, sin.
- woman**, mujer, *f*; **young** —, j<sup>o</sup>ven, *f*.
- wood**, leña, *f*.
- word**, palabra, *f*.
- work**, trabajo, *m*; (= *literary or artistic production*) obra, *f*; *vb.*, trabajar.
- workshop**, taller, *m*.

**world**, mundo, *m.*

**worry**, molestar; (= *be worried*)

tener cuidado, atormentarse.

**worth**: be —, valer.

**write**, escribir.

**wrong**: be —, no tener razón.

**year**, año, *m.*; **leap** —, año bisiesto.

**yellow**, amarillo, *-a*.

**yes**, sí.

**yesterday**, ayer.

**yet**, todavía, aun (*or aún*).

**young**, joven.

**your**, tu, vuestro, *-a*, su, el (la, los, las) . . . de Vd.

**yours**, tuyo, *-a*, vuestro, *-a*, suyo, *-a*, el (la, los, las) de Vd., el tuyo, etc., el vuestro, etc., el suyo, etc.

# INDEX

**á:** bef. direct obj., 50; with names of countries, 55 (5); *al* (*á la*, etc.) = Eng. 'a,' 57, *c*; bef. infins., 120; with verbs meaning 'take from,' etc., 49, *a*, 182; idioms, 123, 206.

**Abstract Nouns:** used with def. art., 55 (1); plur. of, 81 (3).

**acabar (de),** 184.

**accentuation,** 15; of diphthongs and triphthongs, 16; of monosyllables, 17; of compound words, 18; of *-iar* and *-uar* verbs, 218-219.

**Accusative Case:** see Direct Object and Personal *á*.

**acordarse,** 109, *ð*.

**acostarse,** 109, *ð*.

**Adjectives:** fem., 33; neuter gender, 54; plur., 34; use of plur., 81; position, 60, 61; position of pred. adj., 195 (2); of superlative, 74, *g*; agreement, 62; comparison, 74, 75; *than*, 78; repetition, 61, *d*; 62, *d*; used substantively, 80; of nationality, 33, *a*, 55 (4); adj. for adv., 62, *e*; different meaning with *ser* and *estar*, 46, *c*.

**Adverbs:** position, 196; comparison, 76, 77; *lo* used, 54, *a*, 76, *a*; *aquí*, *acá*, *ahí*, *allí*, *allá*, 176; *mucho*, 177; comparison of *mucho*, 77; *muy*, 177; *ya*, 178; *-mente*, 179; *tan*, 79, 143, *a*; idioms, 184.

**Agreement:** of subj. and verb, 193; of adj., 62.

**ahí, allí, allá:** see Adverbs.

**al** = *á el*, 30, *a*.

**alegrarse,** 109, *ð*.

**alguien, algo, alguno:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**alguno:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns. 'all,' 157, *a*.

'almost,' *poco faltó para que*, 184.

**Alphabetical List of Verbs,** 271.

**ambos:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**andar:** inflection, 240; meaning, 198; in periphrastic progressive tenses, 121, *a*.

**Anomalous Past Participles,** 259-261.

'any,' 151.

**Apocopation of Adjectives,** 66-69.

**Apposition:** noun in, 55 (2), *ð*; art. omitted, 56 (1), 57, *a*; art. aft. noun, 74, *g*.

**aquel:** see Demonstratives.

**aquí, acá:** see Adverbs.

**Articles:** see Indefinite Article and Definite Article.

'ask of': verbs denoting, 49, *a*, 182.

**atreverse,** 109, *ð*.

**Augmentatives:** see Qualifying Suffixes.

**-azo, -acho, -ajo, -ada:** see Qualifying Suffixes.

'be' = *ser* or *estar*, 46.

**bien:** comparison, 77; *más bien*, 77, *a*.

**bonito:** position, 61, *a*.

**bueno:** apocopation, 66; position, 61, *a*; comparison, 75 (1); *buenos días*, etc., 59.

'but,' 190.

**cada:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**caer:** inflection, 253; idioms, 199.

'can': see *poder* and *saber*.

**Capitalization,** 23.

**-car verbs:** orthographic variations of, 214, 214 (1).

**Cardinals:** see Numerals.

**caro:** position and meaning, 61, *c*.

**casa:** idioms, 48, *a*, 206.

**Cases:** see Possessive Case, Indirect Object, and Personal *á*.

**castellano,** 55 (4), and footnote.

**-cer and -cir verbs:** orthographic variations of, 215, 220.

**ciento:** see Numerals.

**cierto:** indef. art. omitted, 57, *ð*; position and meaning, 61, *c*.

**Collectives:** see Numerals.

**color:** adj. of, 54.

**como:** *tan* . . . *como*, 79; used with *saber*, 186, footnote.

**Comparison:** see Adjectives and Adverbs, and 'Than.'

**Compound words:** accent of, 18.

**con:** *conmigo*, etc., 98, *a*, and footnote.

**Conditional Sentences:** see Sentences.

**Conjunctions**, 188-192; *y*, *e*, 188; *ó*, *ú*, 189; *pero*, *mas*, *sino*, 190; *cuando*, 191; *donde*, 192; *porque*, 192. See also *que*, *como*, etc.

**conocer:** inflection, 220; meaning, 54, *a*, footnote, 186.

**Consonants**, 5; labials and labio-dentals, 6; dentals or lingua-dentals, 7; gutturals and palatals, 8; sibilants, 9; aspirates, 10; tongue-trilled, 11; spirant *y*, 12; double, 14.

**cosa:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**countries, cities, etc.:** names of, 55 (5).

**cual, el cual, cuál:** see Relatives and Interrogatives.

**cuando:** see Conjunctions.

**cuanto:** as relative, 138; *cuanto* . . . *tanto* = 'the . . . the,' 74, *d*.

**d:** lost in imperatives, 86, *a*.

**dar:** inflection, 241; idioms, 187.

**Dative Case:** see Indirect Object; ethical dative, 111.

**de:** denotes possession, 48, 125; with names of countries, 55 (5); aft. superlatives = 'in,' 74, *e*; = 'than,' 78, *a*, *c*; bef. infins., 120; = 'by,' 180, *a*, footnote; denotes material, etc., 181; idioms, 206.

**deber** = 'should,' 71, *b*; with dependent infin., 120, *a*.

**Defective Verbs**, 262-270.

**Definite Article:** forms, 30, 54; *el* for *la*, 30, *b*; use, 54, 55; used in place of possessive, 119; with superlatives, 74, *b*, *f*, *g*; with poss. pron., 124; with rel. pron., 135, 137, *b*; with prepositional phrases and relative clauses, 125, 131; with infin., 120 (3), 55 (7); omission, 56; omitted bef. poss. pron., 125, *b*; *lo*, 54; *lo*, with superlative adv., 76, *a*; = Eng. 'a,' 'an,' 57, *c*.

**del** = *de el*, 30, *a*.

**Demonstratives:**

Adjectives, 128; meaning, 44, 129; position, 128, *a*; repetition, 44, *a*.

Pronouns, 130; 'the former,' 'the latter,' 130, *a*; 'that,' 130, *b*; *aquel* bef. phrase and clause, 131, *a*; *en* (*de*, *á*) *ésta* (*ése*), 130, *c*.

**día**, 24 (2), *a*.

**diferente:** position and meaning, 61, *c*.

**Diminutives:** see Qualifying Suffixes.

**Diphthongs:** kinds of, 4; accentuation of, 16.

**Direct Object** (of verbs): with *á*, 50; position of, 195.

**'do':** aux. 'do' not translated into Spanish, 32.

**don, doña:** use, 55 (2), footnote; art. not used, 55 (2), *a*.

**donde:** see Conjunctions; = relative, 140.

**dormirse**, 109, *c*.

**dos:** *los dos*, 159.

**é:** see Conjunctions.

**él, ella, ello, etc.:** see Personal Pronouns.

**el:** see Definite Article.

**Elision of Vowels**, 3.

**en:** with adjectives of nationality, 55 (4); with names of countries, 55 (5); idioms, 206.

**estar:** inflection, 238; meaning, 46; to express position, 46, *a*; in periphrastic progressive tenses, 121, *a*; *estar para* (*por*), 184; idioms, 199.

**este, ese:** see Demonstratives.

**-ete, -ejo:** see Qualifying Suffixes.

**'for,'** 180.

**'former'** ('the former,' 'the latter'), 130, *a*.

**Fractionals:** see Ordinals.

**Future Indicative:** see Tenses.

**Future Subjunctive:** see Hypothetical Subjunctive.

**-gar verbs:** orthographic variations of, 214 (2).

**Gender:** of nouns, 24, 25; of adj., 33; of adj. modifying several nouns, 62; neuter gender of adj., 54; of def. art., 54; of poss. pron., 124, *b*; of demon. pron., 130; of relatives, 135, *c*.

**Genitive Case:** see Possessive Case.

**-ger and -gir verbs:** orthographic variations of, 215.



**grande:** apocopation, 67; position and meaning, 61, *c*, 67, *b*; comparison, 75 (2).

**-guar** verbs: orthographic variations of, 214.

**-guir** verbs: orthographic variations of, 215.

**haber:** inflection, 237; meaning and use, 38; *hay*, 38, *a*, 65 (2); *ha* in temporal clauses, 38, *a*, 73, *a*; *hé*, 92, footnote, 237, *a*; idioms, 38, *a*, 40, 65, 199.

**hacer:** inflection, 246; to express state of weather, 65; time, 72, 73, *a*; idioms, 175; *hacerse*, 109, *b*.

**'have'** = *tener* or *haber*, 38.

**hay:** see *haber*.

**hermoso**, 61, *a*.

**Hypothetical Subjunctives:** see Tenses.

**i** changed to *y* in verbs, 216; omitted, 217.

**-iar** verbs: accentuation of, 218-219.

**Imperative Mood:** see Moods.

**Imperfect Tense:** see Tenses.

**Inceptive Verbs**, 220.

**Indefinite Adjective Pronouns:** *alguien*, *algo*, 150; *alguno*, 151; apocopation of, 66; *unos*, 152; *nadie*, *nada*, 153; *ninguno*, 154; apocopation of, 66; *mucho*, 155; comparison of, 75 (3); *muchísimo*, 155, *a*; *poco*, 156; comparison of, 75 (3); *todo*, 157; *mismo*, 158; in refl. constructions, 109, *a*; *ambos*, 159; *cada*, 160; *otro*, 161; *uno y otro*, etc., 162; *el uno*, *el otro* in reciprocal constructions, 110; *tal*, 163; *cosa*, 164; *la*, *las*, 111, *b*.

**Indefinite Article:** forms, 26; repetition, 26, *a*; *un* for *una*, 26, *b*; omitted, 57; in expressions of measure, 57, *c*.

**Indicative Mood:** see Moods.

**Indirect Object**, 49; with verbs meaning to 'take from,' 'ask of,' etc., 49, *a*, 182; ethical dative, 111.

**Infinitive Mood:** see Moods.

**Interrogative Sentences**, 51.

**Interrogatives**, 142-147; *qué*, 143; *quién*, 144; *quién* in optative expressions, 107; *cuál*, 145; *cuyo*, 146; *cuánto*, 147; *qué cosa*, 164, footnote.

**ir:** inflection, 247; meaning, 198; in periphrastic progress, tenses, 121, *a*; *irse*, 109, *c*; 'go and' = *ir a*, 148, *a*; idioms, 149, 206.

**Irregular Verbs**, 236-258.

**-ísimo**, 74, *b*.

**'it'**, 91.

**-ito, -illo, -ito, -ín, -ino:** see Qualifying Suffixes.

**jamás**, 165.

**'know'** = *conocer* or *saber*, 54, *a*, footnote, 186.

**la, las:** with force of indef. pron., 111, *b*.

**'last'** = *último*, *postrero*, or *pasado*, 66, footnote.

**'latter'** ('the former,' 'the latter'), 130, *a*.

**'let'** and inf. = Span. subj., 87.

**levantarse**, 109, *b*.

**lindo**, 61, *a*.

**lo** (neuter art.), 54; with superlative adv., 76, *a*; idioms, 54, *a*.

**mal:** comparison, 77.

**malo:** apocopation, 66; position, 61, *a*; comparison, 75 (1).

**mano**, 24 (2), *a*.

**mapa**, 24 (2), *a*.

**mas:** see Conjunctions.

**más:** comparative of *poco*, 75 (3), 77; used to form comparatives, 74-77; *más bien*, 77, *a*; *no más . . . que*, 78, *b*, 190, *a*; in exclamations, 143, *a*; idioms, 167.

**mayor**, 75 (2); *la mayor parte de* = 'most,' 170, *a*.

**medio and mitad**, 170, *b*.

**mejor**, 75 (1), 77.

**menor**, 75 (2).

**menos**, 75, (3), 77; idioms, 167.

**-mente:** see Adverbs.

**mientras . . .** = 'the . . . the,' 74, *d*.

**mil:** see Numerals.

**mismo:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns; idioms, 184.

**Moods:**

Infinitive, 'to,' bef. infinitive, 120; with def. art., 120 (3); aft. prepositions, 120 (2); after expressions of 'willing,' 'fearing,' etc., 96, footnotes; after *oir* and *ver*, 187, footnotes; idioms, 123 (2).

Participles: use of pres. part., 121; of past part., 122.

Imperative, 86, 87, *a*.

Subjunctive: difference between ind. and subjunctive moods, 94; subjunctive to express command, 87; in dependent clauses, 94, 95, 96, 100; pres. subjunctive to denote fut

- time, 96, *a*; imp. subjunc. in *-ra* = pret. or piuperf. ind., 99, footnote; choice between imp. subj. in *-se* and *-ra*, 99; imp. and hyp. subjunc. built on pret. 3d pers. stem, 99, *a*, 112 (3); hyp. subjunc., 114; condition "contrary to fact," 106; subjunc. in indirect discourse, 116; idioms, 97, 107.
- morirse**, 109, *c*.
- 'most,'** 74, *h*; 75 (3), *a*.
- mucho**: *pron.*, see Indicative Adjective Pronouns; *adv.*, 177; comparison, 75 (3), 77; = 'very,' 177, *a*.
- Multiplicatives**: see Numerals.
- muy**: see Adverbs; = 'most,' 74, *h*.
- nadie, nada, ninguno**: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.
- Negation**: neg. sentence, 31; neg. prons. and advs., 165.
- Neuter Gender**: see *lo*, 54.
- 'never,'** 165, footnote.
- ni . . . ni**, 165.
- ninguno**: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.
- no**: see Negation; *no más . . . que*, 78, *b*; *que no*, 184.
- nosotros, nos**: see Personal Pronouns.
- Nouns**: gender, 24, 25; plur., 29; use of plur., 81; plur. of abstract nouns, 81 (3); sing. noun to denote something that belongs to every member of group, 81 (2); poss. case, 48, 125, *a*; dative case, 49, 182; accusative case, 50; position of subj. and obj. noun, 194, 195; in predicate, 46, *b*; in apposition, 55 (2), *b*; requiring def. art., 55 (1); used as adj., 61, *e*, 181.
- nuevo**: 61, *c*.
- Number**: of noun, 29; of adj., 34; of adj. modifying several nouns, 62.
- Numerals**:  
 Cardinals, 168; apocopation of *uno*, 66; of *ciento*, 69; used instead of ordinals, 169, *c, d, e*.  
 Ordinals, 169; apocopation of *primero* and *tercero*, 66.  
 Fractionals, 170.  
 Collectives, 171.  
 Multiplicatives, 172.  
 Phrases, 173.  
 Def. art. omitted, 56 (2); denoting hours, 72; denoting days, 72, 169, *e*; after comparatives, 78, *a*.
- nunca**, 165.
- ó**: see Conjunctions.
- oir**: inflection, 254; followed by dependent infin., 187, footnote; idioms, 187.
- ojalá**, 107.
- olvidarse**, 109, *b*.
- on, -ote**: see Qualifying Suffixes.
- 'only'**: 78, *b*.
- Ordinals**: see Numerals.
- Orthographic Variations**, 213-219.
- Orthography**: non-phonetic, 13.
- otro**: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.
- para**, 180, 181; = 'to,' 120, *b*, 180, *b*; with names of countries, 55 (5); idioms, 184.
- parte**: in fractional expressions, 170, *a*.
- Participles**, 39, 121, 122; anomalous past participles, 259-261.
- pasado**, 66, footnote.
- peor**, 75 (1), 77.
- pequeño**: position, 61, *a*; comparison, 75 (2).
- Perfect Tenses**: see Tenses.
- Periphrastic Progressive Tenses**: see Tenses.
- pero**: see Conjunctions.
- Personal á, 50**: omitted, 50, *a, b*; to distinguish object from subject, 50, *c*.
- Personal Pronouns**: as subj. and obj. of verb, 89; *tú* and *usted*, 90; *ello* and *lo*, 91; *se* and *si*, 108, 109; subj. pron. omitted, 89, *a*; position of obj. pron., 89, *b, c, d, e*; of two obj. prons., 102, 103; of refl. *se*, 108, *a*; *se* for *le, les*, 102, *a*; *la, las* for *le, les*, fem., 89, *h*; *le* and *lo* as masc. obj. pron., 89, *i*; refl. prons. of 1st and 2d pers., 109; prepositional forms, 98; poss. case, 125; explicit obj. of verb, 103; *conmigo*, etc., 98, *a*, and footnote.
- Pluperfect Tense**: see Tenses.
- Plural**: of nouns, 29; of adjs., 34; use of, 81.
- pobre**, 61, *c*.
- poco**: *pron.*, see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns; *adv.*, comparison, 75 (3), 77.
- poder**: inflection, 243; idioms, 167.
- poner**: inflection, 249; *ponerse*, 109, *b*; idioms, 199.
- por**, 180; = Eng. 'a' or 'per,' 57, *c*; bef. *el cual (que)*, 135 (2); idioms, 97, 184.
- porque**: see Conjunctions.
- Position**: of nouns, 194, 195; of adjs., 60, 61; of advs., 196.

**Possessives:**

Adjectives, 117; position, 118; def. art. for poss., 119; repetition, 44, *a*; idioms, 123.

Pronouns, 124, 125; explicit forms, 125.

**Possessive Case**, 48, 125, *a*; elliptical for 'at (to, from) the house, etc., of,' 48, *a*.

**postrero**, 66.

**Prefixes in Syllabification**, 21.

**Prepositions:** see *a*, *de*, *en*, *para*, *por*, etc.; preposition retained bef. substantive clause, 183; idioms, 184.

**Present Tense:** see Tenses.

**Preterite Perfect:** see Tenses.

**Preterite Tense:** see Tenses.

**primero:** see Numerals.

**Pronouns:** see Personal Pronouns, Possessives, etc.

**Pronunciation**, 1; table of English equivalents for vowel and consonant sounds, 2.

**Punctuation**, 22.

**Qualifying suffixes**, 200-205; diminutives, 201; their meaning, 202; augmentatives, 203; combinations of diminutive and augmentative endings, 204; *-azo* and *-ada* to denote result of action, 205.

**Quantity of vowels**, 3.

**que and qué:** see Relatives and Interrogatives.

**que (conj.)**: rarely omitted, 96, *b*; = 'than,' 78; *que* for *cuando*, 191, *a*; idioms, 97.

**querer:** inflection, 242; = 'will,' 71, *a*; with dependent infin., 120, *a*; idioms, 107, 167.

**quien and quién:** see Relatives and Interrogatives.

**-quir verbs:** orthographic variations of, 215.

**Radical-changing Verbs**, 221-234.

**Reciprocal Construction**, 110.

**Reflexive Construction**, 108-111.

**Regular Verbs**, 210-219.

**reir:** inflection, 233; *reirse*, 109, *b*.

**Relatives**, 133-140; *que*, 134; *el cual*, *el que*, 135; *quien*, 137; *cuanto*, 138; *cuyo*, 139; *donde*, 140; relative not omitted, 133, *b*; *del que*, etc., after comparatives, 78, *c*; followed by subjunc. mood, 96 (6); *cada cual*, 160.

**s:** lost in imperatives, 87, *b*.

**saber:** inflection, 245; meaning, 54, *a*, footnote, 186; idioms, 187.

**salir:** inflection, 252; idioms, 199.

**santo**, 68.

**se and si:** see Personal Pronouns.

**'self,'** 158; in refl. constructions, 109, *a*.

**sentarse**, 109, *b*.

**Sentences:** negative, 31; interrogative, 51; conditions "contrary to fact," 106; common forms, 115; when the verb of the apodosis is subjunc., 116.

**señor, señora, and señorita**, prefixed to title, 55 (2).

**Sequence of Tenses:** see Tenses.

**ser:** inflection, 236; meaning, 46; with predicate nouns, 46, *b*; periphrastic progressive tenses, 121, *a*; idioms, 47, 199.

**'should'** = cond. ind. or *deber*, 71, *b*.

**si:** followed by cond. ind., = 'whether,' 106, *b*.

**si ('yes'), que sí**, 184.

**sin:** followed by *el cual (que)*, 135 (2).

**sino:** see Conjunctions.

**'some,'** 151, 152.

**Subject (of verb):** position, 51, 194.

**Subjunctive mood:** see Moods.

**Syllabification**, 19-21.

**'take from,'** verbs of, 49, *a*, 182.

**tal:** see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.

**tampoco**, 165.

**tan:** *tan . . . como*, 79; in exclamations, 143, *a*.

**tanto:** *tanto . . . como*, 79; *cuanto . . . tanto* = 'the . . . the,' 74, *d*.

**tener:** inflection, 239; meaning and use, 38; *d* omitted after it, 50, *a*; with nouns denoting bodily characteristics, 55 (6); idioms, 40, 199.

**Tenses:**

Imperf. and pret. ind., use of, 53; perf. ind. for pret., 53, *b*.

Fut. and cond. ind., formation of, 71, footnote; use of, 71; fut. and cond. of probability, 84; cond. ind. with *si*, 106, *b*; Span. pres., imp. and fut. ind. = Eng. perf., pluperf., and fut. perf., 73.

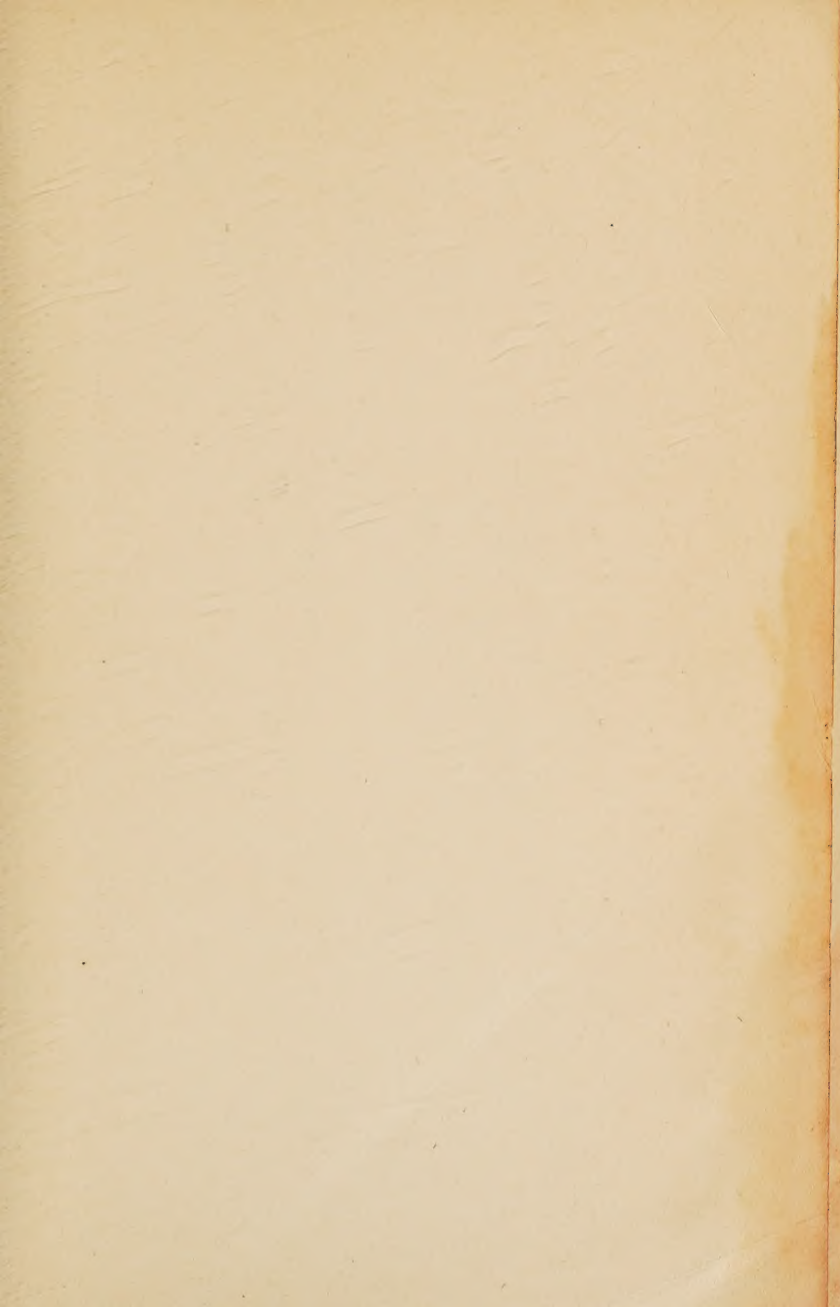
Pluperf. and pret. perf., 64.

Pres. subj. to express fut. time, 96, *a*.

Imperf. and hyp. subj., on pret., 3d pers., stem, 99, *a*, 112 (3); choice bet. forms in *-se* and *-ra*, 99; imp. in *-ra* = pluperf. or pret. ind., 99, footnote.

Hyp. subj., use of, 114.

- Perf. tenses, 211.  
 Periphrastic progress. tenses, 212, 121, *a*.  
 Sequence of, 101, 116.  
 In conditions, 106, 115, 116.
- tercero**: see Numerals.
- 'than,' 78.**
- 'the . . . the'** (*correlative*), 74, *d*.
- 'there,'** expletive, 176, *c*.
- Time**: expressions of, — with art., 55 (3);  
 hours, days, etc., 72, 169, *e*; with *haber*  
 and *hacer*, 73, *a*; with fut. and cond. of  
 probability, 84; 'for,' 180, *c*; idioms, 184,  
 206.
- Titles**: def. art. bef. title, 55 (2).
- 'to'** bef. infin., 120; = *por* or *para*, 180, *b*.
- todo**: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns.
- Triphthongs**: kinds of, 4; accentuation of,  
 16.
- tú**: see Personal Pronouns.
- ú**: see Conjunctions.
- uar verbs**: accentuation of, 218-219.
- uelo, -ucho**: see Qualifying Suffixes.
- uir verbs**, 235.
- último**, 66, footnote.
- un, una**: 26; see Indefinite Article.
- uno**: see Numerals.
- unos, uno y otro**: see Indefinite Adjective  
 Pronouns.
- 'used to'**: expressed by imperf. ind., 53, *a*.
- usted**: see Personal Pronouns.
- valer**: inflection, 251; idioms, 199.
- vario**, 61, *c*.
- venir**: inflection, 248; in periphrastic pro-  
 gressive tenses, 121, *a*; 'come and' =  
*venir a*, 148, *a*; idioms, 149.
- ver**: inflection, 258; followed by dependent  
 infin., 187, footnote.
- Verbs**, 207-271.  
 Principal parts, 209.
- Regular verbs, inflection, 210; perf.  
 tenses, 211; periphrastic progress. tenses,  
 212; orthographic variations, 213-219.
- Inceptive verbs, 220.
- Radical-changing verbs, 221-234.
- 1st class, 223-228.
- 2d class, 229.
- 3d class, 230-234.
- uir verbs**, 235.
- Irregular verbs, 236-258.
- Anomalous past participles, 259-261.
- Defective verbs, 262-270.
- Alphabetical list, 271.
- Refl. construction, 108, 109, 111.
- Recip. construction, 110.
- Followed by infin. with or without *d* or  
*de*, 120.
- Position of subj., 194; of obj., 195 (1);  
 of pred. adj., 195 (2); of adv., 196.
- Agreement with subj., 193.
- 'very,'** 177, *a*.
- viejo**, 61, *a*.
- Voices**: *refl.* for passive voice, 109, *d*, *e*.
- volver** (*á*), 184.
- vosotros**: see Personal Pronouns.
- Vowels**: pronunciation of, 3; elision of, 3;  
 quantity of, 3.
- weather**: idioms, 65.
- 'will'**: as independent verb or auxiliary,  
 71, *a*.
- Word Order**, 194.
- 'would'**: expressed by imperf. indic.,  
 53, *a*.
- y**: see Conjunctions.
- ya**: see Adverbs.
- yo**: see Personal Pronouns.
- 'you,'** 90.
- zar verbs**, orthographic variations of, 214.



Andar a tientas, o a ciegas.  
to grope in the dark.

Reading & Gr.

Gr. — R.

Comp. Conversation  
editions

Mar 18

Wed.

Tue Thru



